Basic

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

# Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

www.hellooteacher.ir

Basic

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

# Oxford Word Skills

OXFORD

www.hellooteacher.ir

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP
Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in
Oxford New York
Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto
With offices in
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam
OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008
The moral rights of the author have been asserted
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008
2012 2011 2010 2009 2008
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

**No unauthorized photocopying**
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above
You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462000 0

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
Alamy Images pp 55 (airplane/Mint Photography), 65 (leg of lamb/Jeff Morgan, tuna steak/Maximillian Weinzierl), 67 (raw peas/foodfolio, cooked peas/Paul Bradforth), 72 (grilled fish/Images of Birmingham), 140 (TV/Tony Cordoza, radio/Mark Bolton Photography, Mini/National Motor Museum)

Cephas Picture Library p 65 (squid/Tim Hill)

Corbis pp 16 (blooming trees/Bloomimage, beach in summer/Randy Faris, winter/image100), 38 (couple/Tim Pannell), 72 (fried eggs/J. Riou), 72 (roast chicken/David Thomas/PictureArts), 140 (oscar red carpet/Chris Pizzello/Reuters, Olympic flag/Duomo), 164 (broken pencil/Jose Luis Pelaez/Blend Images)

Epson p 55 (printer)

Getty Images pp 37 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 39 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 50 (tights/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 96 (bazaar/Scott R. Barbour/Image Bank), 133 (orchestra/Oliver Benn/Stone, Vanessa Mae/George Chin/WireImage), 159 (two girls in library/John Cumming/Iconica)

Lebrecht Music & Arts Photo Library p 133 (Sir Simon Rattle/Wladimir Polak, Cecilia Bartoli/Laurie Lewis, Yo Yo Ma/T. Martinot)

Mark Mason Studios pp 10, 12 (covercard)

Music Pictures p 132 (Arctic Monkeys/Rob Verhost/Redferns)

OUP pp 11 (pencil/Photodisc), 50 (Hemera), 52 (clothes shopping), 65 (ham slices/Hemera), 66 (tin/Hemera), 69 (wine bottle, can/Hemera), 82 (young man/Image Source), 86 (bell/Hemera), 103 (soap, toothbrush, electric razor, hairbrush, comb, tissues, perfume/Hemera), 111 (young man/Image Source), 112 (young man/Image Source), 127 (young man/Image Source), 140 (newspapers, Journal), 153 (handshake/Hemera)

Photolibrary.com p 16 (autumn/Mark Barrett/Index Stock Imagery)

Pierre d'Alancaisez pp 55 (wine bottle), 65 (bacon, sausages, salmon steak, tuna steak, prawns, fillet steak, pork chop, salmon fillet, bacon), 67 (frozen peas), 69 (juice carton, biscuits and rice, jars, tin, chocolates and matches), 103 (toothpaste, shampoo, razor, make-up)

Punchstock pp 72 (boiled rice/Digital Vision), 131 (woman shooting/Photodisc)

Press Association p 140 (Iraq demonstration/Dima Gavrysh/Associated Press)

Ronald Grant Archive p135 (Rumor Has It poster/Warner Bros. Pictures)

StockFood pp65 (crab/Peter Rees, mussels/Eising, chicken/Foodcollection); 72 (rare steak/Eising, well done steak/Foodcollection)

Illustrations by Stephane Gamain/NB Illustration, Willie Ryan/Illustration, Oxford Designers and Illustrators

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

www.hellooteacher.ir

# Contents


Acknowledgements 7

Introduction 8

## Starter unit

How to use a unit 10
How to learn new words 11
How to do the exercises 12
Abbreviations and symbols 13

## Basic English

1 I can understand and say numbers 14
2 I can tell the time 15
3 I can say days and dates 16
4 I can say countries and nationalities 18
5 I can use classroom vocabulary 20
6 I can use English language words 21
7 I can ask and answer questions about language 22

Review 23

## People

8 I can give personal information 26
9 I can fill in a form 27
10 I can talk about my family 28
11 I can describe physical actions 30
12 I can name parts of the body 32
13 I can describe people 33
14 I can talk about character 36
15 I can describe relationships 38
16 I can say how I feel 40

Review 42




www.hellooteacher.ir

## Everyday life


17 I can describe my routine 46
18 I can talk about clothes 49
19 I can buy clothes 51
20 I can talk about money 54
21 I can talk about the weather 56
22 I can talk about illness 58
23 I can get help at the chemist's 60

Review 61


## Food and drink


24 I can name meat and fish 65
25 I can name fruit and vegetables 66
26 I can buy food in a shop 68
27 I can order in a café 71
28 I can order in a restaurant 72

Review 75


## Getting around


29 I can get around on buses 78
30 I can get around on trains 80
31 I can ask for and give directions 82
32 I can talk about roads and traffic 84
33 I can understand signs and notices 86

Review 87


## Places


34 I can talk about my country 90
35 I can talk about my town 91
36 I can describe the countryside 94
37 I can talk about shops 96
38 I can talk about my home 98
39 I can describe a kitchen 100
40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom 102
41 I can describe a living room 104

Review 105




www.hellooteacher.ir

## Study and work


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 42 | I can talk about my school | 109 |
| 43 | I can talk about university | 112 |
| 44 | I can name jobs | 114 |
| 45 | I can describe a job | 116 |
| 46 | I can talk about using a computer | 118 |
| 47 | I can use email and the internet | 120 |
| | Review | 122 |


## Hobbies and interests


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 48 | I can say what I like | 126 |
| 49 | I can talk about sport | 128 |
| 50 | I can talk about my free time | 130 |
| 51 | I can talk about music | 132 |
| 52 | I can talk about films | 134 |
| 53 | I can talk about the media | 136 |
| | Review | 138 |


## Holidays


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 54 | I can arrange a holiday | 141 |
| 55 | I can book a hotel room | 142 |
| 56 | I can communicate in an airport | 144 |
| 57 | I can describe a beach holiday | 146 |
| 58 | I can describe a sightseeing holiday | 147 |
| 59 | I can use the bank and post office | 148 |
| | Review | 150 |


## Social English


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 60 | I can meet and greet people | 153 |
| 61 | I can use special greetings | 155 |
| 62 | I can ask for information | 156 |
| 63 | I can ask for things | 158 |
| 64 | I can invite people | 160 |
| 65 | I can make suggestions | 161 |
| 66 | I can offer, accept, and refuse | 162 |
| 67 | I can say sorry and respond | 164 |


www.hellooteacher.ir

68 I can express my opinion 165
69 I can use the phone 166

Review 168

## Language

70 I can use common adjectives 172
71 I can use common adverbs 174
72 I can use irregular verbs 176
73 I can use phrasal verbs 178
74 I can use prepositions of time 180
75 I can use time words and phrases 181
76 I can use prepositions of place and movement 183
77 I can use link words (1) 186
78 I can use link words (2) 188
79 I can use 'have' and 'have got' 190
80 I can use 'get' 192

Review 193

Vocabulary building tables 199

Common irregular verbs 202

Answer key 203

Answer key to review units 225

List of spotlight boxes 235

Word list/Index 237



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
English Centre, Valencia, Spain
Tti School of English, London, UK
Bell International, London, UK
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK

Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
Funda Bolat (Turkey)
Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
László Rézműves (Hungary)
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman (UK)
Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)

www.hellooteacher.ir

# Introduction

## What is Oxford Word Skills?

*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Basic:** | elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2) |
| **Intermediate:** | intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2) |
| **Advanced:** | advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2) |

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

## How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

## What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™ which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *at the moment*, *never mind*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *main course* in a restaurant, or *hand luggage* at an airport.


www.hellooteacher.ir

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See *How to learn new words* in the Starter unit for advice.)

## How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

## How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

www.hellooteacher.ir

# Starter

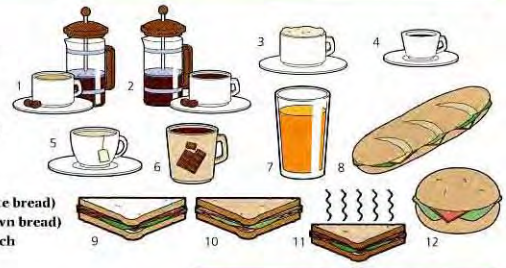
## A How to use a unit

Study the new words. They are usually in **bold type**.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the wordlist (page 235) to find out how to say the words.

### 27 I can order in a café

Do Unit 26 first



1 (white) coffee
2 black coffee
3 cappuccino
4 espresso
5 tea (with milk)
6 hot chocolate
7 orange juice
8 baguette
9 sandwich (white bread)
10 sandwich (brown bread)
11 toasted sandwich
12 roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

W **Yes, please?**
C **I'd like** a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
W Is that to eat here or **take away**?
C To eat here.
W OK. Anything else?
C Yes, **two coffees**, please, and a cappuccino.
W OK. The food will be **a couple of minutes**. **Have a seat.**

**Glossary**

**I'd like** = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want')
**take away** eat in another place (not in the café)
**two coffees** (wo cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.)
**a couple of minutes** two or three minutes
**have a seat** sit down

**spotlight** *Yes, please?* and *Yes, please.*

**Yes, please?** = 'What would you like?'
**Yes, please** is a polite way to say 'yes'.

Sometimes a glossary explains the new words.

A 'spotlight' tells you about important words.

**1** Find the end of each word.

1 You can have a roll baguette sandwich toasted sandwich.
2 You can have a cappuccino tea orange juice espresso black coffee

**2** Complete the phrases.

▶ a ham sandwich
1 brown ____
2 a toasted ____
3 hot ____
4 black ____
5 eat here or ____
6 a ____ of minutes
7 brown or ____ bread?
8 black or ____ coffee?
9 ____ a seat, please.

**3** Add one word in each line of the conversation.

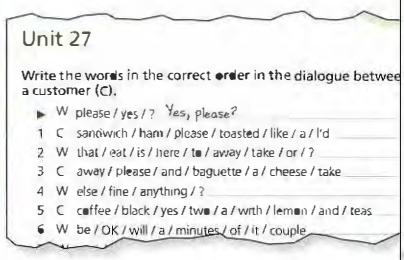
W Please? ▶ Yes, please?
C I like two coffees please. 1 ____
W To drink here or away? 2 ____
C To drink here. And a toasted ham. 3 ____
W OK. It will be a couple minutes 4 ____
Have seat, please. 5 ____

**4** Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).

FOOD AND DRINK 71

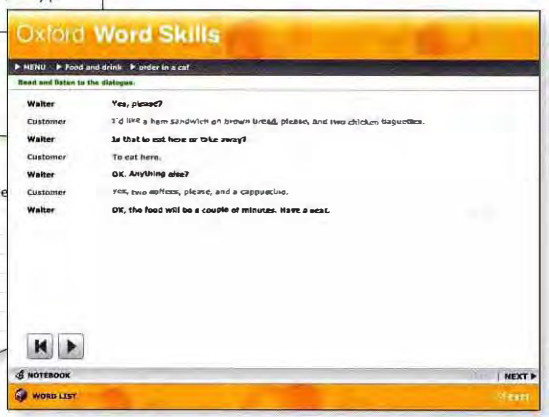
Use the cover card to test yourself.



Unit 27

Write the words in the correct **order** in the dialogue betwee
a customer (C).

▶ W please / yes / ? Yes, please?
1 C sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd ____
2 W that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ? ____
3 C away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take ____
4 W else / fine / anything / ? ____
5 C coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas ____
6 W be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple ____



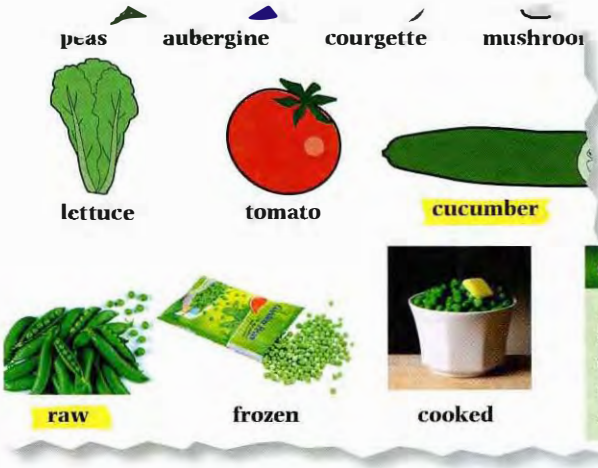

There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.



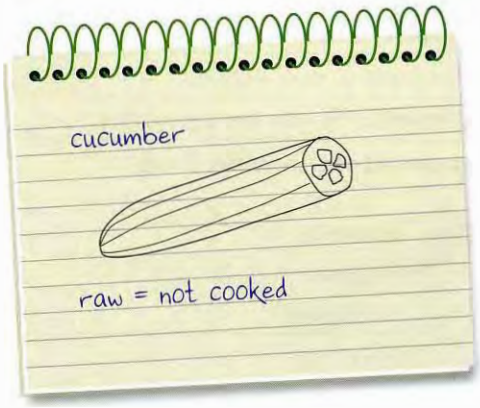
www.hellooteacher.ir

## B How to learn new words

- Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.




- Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.

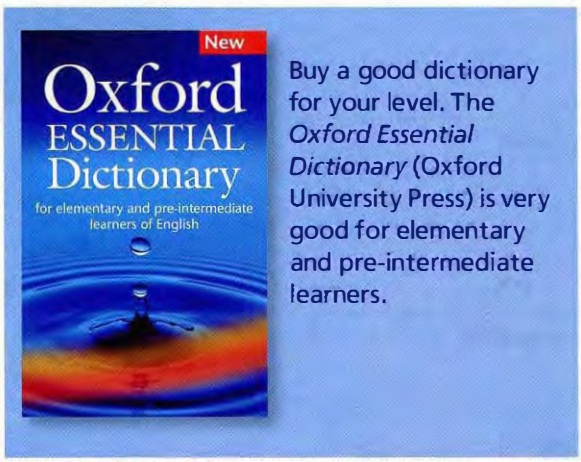



- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.
- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.

**4** Make the names of vegetables from the letters.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ sape peas | | 3 prepep pepper ✓ | |
| 1 ractor carrot ✓ | | 4 gacabeb cabbage ✓ | |
| 2 nonio onion ✓ | | 5 naseb beans ✓ | |

- Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.




Buy a good dictionary for your level. The *Oxford Essential Dictionary* (Oxford University Press) is very good for elementary and pre-intermediate learners.

www.hellooteacher.ir

## C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| **tick** | ✓ |
| **underline** | word |
| **cross out** | ~~word~~ |
| **circle** | (word) |
| **complete** | w o r d OR I like chocolate ice cream. |
| **right** | '2 + 2 = 4' is **right.** |
| **wrong** | '2 + 2 = 5' is **wrong.** |
| **mistake** | If something is a **mistake**, it's wrong.<br>e.g. Inglish (The 'I' is a mistake.) |
| **correct** | Make something right.<br>e.g. ~~Inglish~~(wrong) English (right) |
| **true** | e.g. *London is in England.* That's **true.** |
| **false** | e.g. *Paris is in Italy.* That's **false.** It's in France. |
| **the same** | e.g. *Small* and *little* are **the same.** (*small = little*) |
| **different** | e.g. *Big* and *small* are **different.** (They're not the same.) |
| **match** | Find something that you can put with another thing.<br>e.g.<br>1 I'm from ..b.. — a music<br>2 I can speak ..... — b Japan<br>3 I like ..... — c English |
| **missing** | If something is **missing**, it is not there.<br>e.g. *He comes New York.*<br>The word *from* is **missing.** (*He comes from New York.*) |
| **cover** | Put one thing over another thing.<br> |
| **table** | This is a **table**:<br>Word / Meaning<br>**tick** / ✓<br>**underline** / word |
| **column** | The table has two **columns**: a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'. |

Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning.
Can you remember the meaning?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# D Abbreviations and symbols

OPP **opposite**. *Old* is the **opposite** of *young*.

SYN **synonym**: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. *small = little*

INF **informal**. If a word or phrase is **informal**, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know very well. The opposite is **formal**. If a word or phrase is **formal**, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know very well, or in written English.

etc. You use **etc.** at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.

e.g. for example: *Fruit, **e.g.** apples and bananas.*

U uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can't be used with *a* or *an*.

PT past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb)

PP past participle

## Vowels

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| iː | see | /siː/ |
| i | happy | /ˈhæpi/ |
| ɪ | sit | /sɪt/ |
| e | ten | /ten/ |
| æ | hat | /hæt/ |
| ɑː | father | /ˈfɑːðə(r)/ |
| ɒ | got | /gɒt/ |
| ɔː | saw | /sɔː/ |
| ʊ | put | /pʊt/ |
| u | casual | /ˈkæʒuəl/ |
| uː | too | /tuː/ |
| ʌ | cup | /kʌp/ |
| ɜː | bird | /bɜːd/ |
| ə | about | /əˈbaʊt/ |
| eɪ | say | /seɪ/ |
| əʊ | go | /gəʊ/ |
| aɪ | five | /faɪv/ |
| aʊ | now | /naʊ/ |
| ɔɪ | boy | /bɔɪ/ |
| ɪə | near | /nɪə(r)/ |
| eə | hair | /heə(r)/ |
| ʊə | sure | /ʃʊə(r)/ |

## Consonants

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| p | pen | /pen/ |
| b | bad | /bæd/ |
| t | tea | /tiː/ |
| d | did | /dɪd/ |
| k | cat | /kæt/ |
| g | got | /gɒt/ |
| tʃ | cheap | /tʃiːp/ |
| dʒ | jam | /dʒæm/ |
| f | fall | /fɔːl/ |
| v | verb | /vɜːb/ |
| θ | thin | /θɪn/ |
| ð | this | /ðɪs/ |
| s | so | /səʊ/ |
| z | zero | /zɪərəʊ/ |
| ʃ | shoe | /ʃuː/ |
| ʒ | television | /ˈtelɪvɪʒn, telɪˈvɪʒn/ |
| h | hat | /hæt/ |
| m | map | /mæp/ |
| n | no | /nəʊ/ |
| ŋ | sing | /sɪŋ/ |
| l | leg | /leg/ |
| r | red | /red/ |
| j | yes | /jes/ |
| w | wet | /wet/ |

www.hellooteacher.ir

# 1 I can **understand and say numbers**

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | one | 11 | eleven | 21 | twenty-one | 101 | a/one hundred and one |
| 2 | two | 12 | twelve | 22 | twenty-two | 140 | a/one hundred and forty |
| 3 | three | 13 | thirteen | 30 | thirty | 200 | two hundred NOT ~~two hundreds~~ |
| 4 | four | 14 | fourteen | 40 | forty | 1, 000 | a/one thousand |
| 5 | five | 15 | fifteen | 50 | fifty | 1,050 | a/one thousand and fifty |
| 6 | six | 16 | sixteen | 60 | sixty | 1,250 | a/one thousand two hundred and fifty |
| 7 | seven | 17 | seventeen | 70 | seventy | 2,000 | two thousand |
| 8 | eight | 18 | eighteen | 80 | eighty | 100,000 | a/one hundred thousand |
| 9 | nine | 19 | nineteen | 90 | ninety | 1,000,000 | a/one million |
| 10 | ten | 20 | twenty | 100 | a/one hundred | 2,000,000 | two million NOT ~~two millions~~ |

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

**1** **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ thirty one thirty-one

1 two hundreds _____

2 three hundred forty _____

3 twenty two _____

4 42500 _____

5 one thousand and two hundred _____

6 two thousand three hundred fifty _____

**spotlight** ***about***

***About*** means 'a bit more or a little less than'.
*How many students are there?* ~ ***About*** *20.*
(= 18, 19, 20, 21 or 22)
*How much is it?* ~ *It's* ***about*** *£100.*

**2** **Write the middle number in words.**

▶ 24 twenty-five 26

1 7 _____ 9

2 19 _____ 21

3 66 _____ 68

4 49 _____ 51

5 118 _____ 120

6 243 _____ 245

7 999 _____ 1,001

8 5,055 _____ 5,057

9 11,300 _____ 11,302

**3** **Write the number in words using *about*.**

▶ sixty-eight people about seventy people

1 ninety-seven euros _____

2 nine students _____

3 thirty-one years _____

4 four hundred and ninety _____

5 one thousand nine hundred and ninety _____

6 seventy-eight people _____

7 two hundred and forty-nine thousand _____

8 nine hundred and eighty thousand _____

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 2 I can tell the time Do Unit 1 first

## A Telling the time

**What's the time?**

**What time is it?**

It's **four o'clock.**

t's **quarter past four.**
t's **four fifteen.**

It's **half past four.**
t's **four thirty.**

It's **quarter to five.**
It's **four forty-five.**

It's **five past six.**

t's **twenty past six.**
It's **six twenty.**

t's **twenty to seven.**
It's **six forty.**

It's **three minutes to seven.**
It's **six fifty-seven.**

Use **minutes** with **to** and **past** when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. *three minutes past six* NOT ~~*three past six*~~.

**1** Write the times in words.

▶ 3.10 three ten
1 9.15 .....
2 10.25 .....
3 3.35 .....
4 11.45 .....
5 3.45 .....
6 7.20 .....
7 2.30 .....
8 4.40 .....

**2** Write the times in words. Use *past* and *to*.

▶ 12.30 half past twelve
1 7.15 .....
2 9.30 .....
3 11.35 .....
4 3.50 .....
5 8.25 .....
6 1.03 .....
7 2.45 .....
8 4.17 .....

**3** Test yourself. Look at the clocks. Cover the words and say the times.

## B Giving more information

| | |
|---|---|
| 9 **a.m.** | nine o'clock **in the morning** |
| 12.00 **p.m.** | **midday** |
| 5 p.m. | five o'clock **in the afternoon** |
| 7 p.m. | seven o'clock **in the evening** |
| 7.57 | **nearly/almost** eight o'clock |
| 8.02 | **just after** eight |
| 11.30 p.m. | eleven thirty **at night** |
| 12.00 a.m. | **midnight** |

**4** Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | 8.45 p.m. | 8.45 in the evening | S |
| ▶ | 3.00 p.m. | nearly 3.00 | D |
| 1 | 12.00 at night | midnight | |
| 2 | 4.00 a.m. | 4.00 in the afternoon | |
| 3 | 6.32 | nearly 6.30 | |
| 4 | 11.45 p.m. | 11.45 at night | |
| 5 | 8.43 | nearly quarter to nine | |
| 6 | 2.17 | quarter past two | |
| 7 | 12.03 p.m. | just after midday | |
| 8 | 3.00 a.m. | three o'clock | |

**5** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 When do banks open in your country?
.....
2 Do they close at midday?
.....
3 What time do shops close?
.....
4 What time do bars open?
.....
5 What time do they close?
.....
6 When do post offices open and close?
.....



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 3 I can say days and dates Do Unit 1 first

## A Days, months, and seasons

| | |
|---|---|
| **days** of the **week** | **Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday** |
| **months** of the **year** | **January February March April May June July August September October November December** |
| **seasons** (in Britain) | **spring** (March – May)<br>**summer** (June – August)<br>**autumn** (September – November)<br>**winter** (December – February) |
| **special days** | **Christmas Day** (25 December)<br>**New Year's Day** (1 January)<br>**your birthday** (the day you were born) |

**spotlight Capital letters**

Days and months have a capital letter.
**Monday** NOT ~~monday~~ **January** NOT ~~january~~

**1** Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.

1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ Monday [1] Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐

2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐

3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐ October ☐
April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

**2** Write the next day, month or season.

▶ May June
▶ Sunday Monday
1 Monday _____
2 August _____
3 spring _____
4 November _____
5 Friday _____
6 March _____
7 January _____
8 autumn _____
9 Wednesday _____
10 July _____

**3** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Which month is your birthday? _____
2 Which season do you like best? Why? _____
3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why? _____
4 What do you do on New Year's Day? _____
5 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they? _____

**4** Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.


www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Ordinal numbers and dates

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1st | first | 6th | sixth | 11th | eleventh | 16th | sixteenth | 21st | twenty-first |
| 2nd | second | 7th | seventh | 12th | twelfth | 17th | seventeenth | 22nd | twenty-second |
| 3rd | third | 8th | eighth | 13th | thirteenth | 18th | eighteenth | 23rd | twenty-third |
| 4th | fourth | 9th | ninth | 14th | fourteenth | 19th | nineteenth | 30th | thirtieth |
| 5th | fifth | 10th | tenth | 15th | fifteenth | 20th | twentieth | 31st | thirty-first |

**5** **Complete the words.**

▶ ni<u>n</u>th
1 th_rd
2 twent_eth
3 fi_th
4 f_rst
5 eig_th
6 si_teenth
7 fo_rteenth
8 th_rteenth
9 s_cond

**spotlight** **Saying and writing dates**

We can write the date like this:
**10 March** OR **10th March** OR **3.10.08** OR **3/10/08**
We say the date like this:
***What's the date today?*** ~ *It's* ***March the tenth.***
~ *It's* ***the tenth of March.***
Say the year like this:
1980 **nineteen eighty** 1995 **nineteen ninety-five**
2006 **two thousand and six** 2020 **twenty twenty**

**6** **Look at the calendar.**
**Answer the questions.**
**Write the dates as we say them.**

**March**

| S | M | T | W | T | F | S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |

**April**

| S | M | T | W | T | F | S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 |
| 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 |
| 29 | 30 | | | | | |

When's ...

▶ the first Saturday in March? March the third. OR The third of March.
1 the second Tuesday in April? _____
2 the second Wednesday in April? _____
3 the first Sunday in March? _____
4 the first Friday in April? _____
5 the third Tuesday in April? _____
6 the fifth Saturday in March? _____
7 the third Wednesday in March? _____
8 the fourth Monday in April? _____

**7** **Write the dates or years as we say them.**

▶ 6.9 The sixth of September. OR September the sixth.
1 3.2 _____
2 4.7 _____
3 10.12 _____
4 12.8 _____
5 15.1 _____
6 1989 _____
7 21.5 _____
8 30.11 _____
9 22.4 _____
10 2015 _____
11 Today's date _____
12 The date next Tuesday _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 4 I can say countries and nationalities

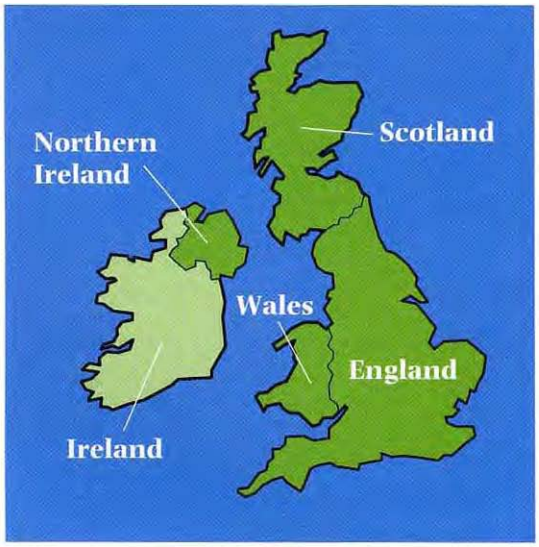
Where are you from? Where do you come from?

I come from ...

I'm ... (I speak ...)

| Area in the world | Country | Nationality (Language) |
|---|---|---|
| Europe | The Czech Republic | Czech |
| | France | French |
| | Germany | German |
| | Greece | Greek |
| | Hungary | Hungarian |
| | Italy | Italian |
| | Poland | Polish |
| | Portugal | Portuguese |
| | Russia | Russian |
| | Spain | Spanish |
| | Switzerland | Swiss (German, French, Italian) |
| | Turkey | Turkish |
| Asia | India | Indian (Hindi) |
| Asia/The Far East | China | Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese) |
| | Japan | Japanese |
| | South Korea | Korean |
| | Thailand | Thai |
| North America | Canada | Canadian (English, French) |
| | The United States | American (English) |
| Central America | Mexico | Mexican (Spanish) |
| South America | Argentina | Argentinian (Spanish) |
| | Brazil | Brazilian (Portuguese) |
| The Middle East | Saudi Arabia | Saudi (Arabic) |
| Africa | Egypt | Egyptian (Arabic) |
| Australasia | Australia | Australian (English) |

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. *Czech* is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are *Mexican*, but they speak *Spanish*. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: *Japan* NOT ~~*japan*~~.




**spotlight** People from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. **Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks**. Some plural forms are irregular: **the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.**

**(Great) Britain** = England, Wales, and Scotland

**The United Kingdom/The UK** = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland
Only people from England are **English**. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are **British**.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**1** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

- ▶ Argentinians speak Spanish. T
- 1 Saudis speak Arabic. _____
- 2 Mexicans speak Spanish. _____
- 3 Thais speak Japanese. _____
- 4 Hungarians speak Hungarian. _____
- 5 Australians speak Australian. _____
- 6 The Chinese speak Chinese. _____
- 7 Brazilians speak Portuguese. _____
- 8 Americans speak English. _____
- 9 Czechs speak Polish. _____

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ China is in The Far East .
- 1 Scotland is in Great _____ .
- 2 Hungary is in _____ .
- 3 Mexico is in _____ America.
- 4 Thailand is in The _____ East.
- 5 Argentina is in _____ America.
- 6 Egypt is in _____ .
- 7 Saudi Arabia is in _____ .
- 8 India is in _____ .
- 9 Australia is in _____ .

**3** **Write the names of the countries and languages.**

- ▶ England , English
- 1 F_____ , _____
- 2 G_____ , _____
- 3 S_____ , _____
- 4 P_____ , _____
- 5 I_____ , _____
- 6 The C_____ , _____
- 7 P_____ , _____
- 8 H_____ , _____
- 9 R_____ , _____
- 10 G_____ , _____
- 11 T_____ , _____

**4** **Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.**

| -ian | -ish | -an |
|---|---|---|
| Italian | | |

**5** **Test yourself. Cover the nationalities and languages in the table on page 18. Look at the countries and say the nationalities and languages.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 5 I can use classroom vocabulary

1 **board**
2 **board pen**
3 **noticeboard**
4 **bag**
5 **desk**
6 **CD player and CD**
7 **pen**
8 **pencil sharpener**
9 **ruler**
10 **pencil**
11 **folder**
12 **piece of paper**
13 **rubber**
14 **notebook**
15 **dictionary**
16 **table**
17 **chair**
18 **cassette player**

**1** Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (✗) by the things you can't.

- ▶ pen ✓
- ▶ board ✗
- 1 desk ☐
- 2 piece of paper ☐
- 3 chair ☐
- 4 rubber ☐
- 5 board pen ☐
- 6 CD ☐
- 7 dictionary ☐
- 8 ruler ☐
- 9 noticeboard ☐
- 10 pencil ☐
- 11 table ☐
- 12 pencil sharpener ☐

**2** Add another word to make a longer word or phrase.

- ▶ notebook
- 1 board _____
- 2 cassette _____
- 3 notice _____
- 4 pencil _____
- 5 piece of _____
- 6 CD _____

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.**

▶ I've got a dictionary. ▶ I haven't got a cassette player.

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 6 I can use English language words

a sentence — An (adjective) old (noun) man (verb) walked (adverb) slowly (preposition) down (definite article) the hill.

indefinite article — plural noun (more than one)

He (pronoun) spoke to a (indefinite article) little girl (singular noun (one)) and two boys. 'Good morning,' (phrase) he said.

- There are eight **words** in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- *Walk* is a **regular** verb; the **past simple** is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an **irregular** verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the **past participle** is *spoken*. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)

## 1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ *A* and *the* are adjectives/articles.

1 *A* and *an* are definite/indefinite articles.
2 *Woman* is a noun/sentence.
3 *Up* is a preposition/pronoun.
4 *Speak* is a regular/an irregular verb.
5 *Spoken* is the past simple/past participle of *speak*.
6 *Books* is singular/plural.
7 *Go* and *do* are verbs/past simple forms.
8 *Slowly* and *quickly* are adverbs/phrases.

## 2 Find the answers for each sentence.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I have three English lessons every week. | ▶ a verb have<br>1 a pronoun ____ | 2 a plural noun ____ |
| There's a young man from Rome in the class. | 3 an adjective ____<br>4 a preposition ____ | 5 an indefinite article ____<br>6 a definite article ____ |
| Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly. | 7 an adverb ____<br>8 an irregular past simple ____ | 9 a regular past simple ____ |
| I think he's in the wrong class. | 10 a singular noun ____ | 11 a sentence ____ |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 7 I can ask and answer questions about language

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| **What does** 'dreadful' **mean?** (NOT ~~What means 'dreadful'?~~) | **I don't know.** = It's a new word for me. OR **It means** 'terrible'. |
| **What's this called in English?** | **I can't remember.** = I knew the word yesterday, but I don't know it today. OR **It's a** stamp. |
| **How do you say** 'pasaporte' **in English?** | Passport. |
| **Could you explain** 'No vacancies'? (NOT ~~Could you explain me ...?~~) | Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms. |
| **What's the difference between** 'hello' and 'hi'? | The **meaning** is the same, but 'hi' is informal. |
| **What's the opposite of** 'large'? | Small. |
| **How do you pronounce** 'May'? | /meɪ/, like 'day'. |
| 'Eight' is pronounced /aɪt/. **Is that right?** OR **Is that correct?** | No, that's **wrong.** OR That's not right. It's pronounced /eɪt/. |
| How do you **spell** 'apple'? | **I'm not sure.** Is it one 'p' or two? OR A-**donble** P-L-E. (double P = two Ps) |

**1** Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ How do you spell your name? c
1 How do you say 'cup' in German? ____
2 What's the opposite of 'closed'? ____
3 What does 'tiny' mean? ____
4 How do you pronounce 'tiny'? ____
5 Could you explain 'How are you?' ____
6 'Question' and 'answer' mean the same. Is that right? ____

a It means 'very small'.
b It's what you say when you meet a friend.
c D-E-double N-I-S. ✓
d /tami/
e No, it's wrong.
f I don't know.
g Open.

**2** Complete the questions.

▶ What does 'awful' mean ? ~ 'Terrible' or 'dreadful'.
1 What's this ____ in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
2 How do you ____ 'tomato'? ~ /təmˈɑːtəʊ/.
3 ____ you spell 'eye'? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
4 What's the difference ____ 'bye' and 'goodbye'? ~ 'Bye' is more informal.
5 'Pen' is the same as 'pencil'. Is that ____ ? ~ No, that's wrong.
6 What's the ____ of 'interesting'? ~ Boring.
7 What ____ 'enormous' mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
8 Could you ____ 'EXIT'? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Basic English

## Unit 1

**Do the maths. Write the answer in words.**

▶ ten plus (+) seven = seventeen
▶ eight minus (–) three = five
1 three plus nine = _____
2 four plus eleven = _____
3 nineteen minus six = _____
4 five plus twenty-nine = _____
5 sixteen minus five = _____
6 eighty-seven minus eight = _____
7 ninety-five plus seventeen = _____
8 thirty-five minus eight = _____
9 a hundred and five plus seventy = _____
10 three hundred minus fourteen = _____
11 twenty-eight plus thirteen = _____
12 one thousand minus forty-seven = _____

## Unit 2

**Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time. Write the new times with *past* or *to*.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| five past eleven | twenty-five past five | ten to eight ✓ | midnight |
| half past six | twenty past two | twenty to two | five to nine |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | 07:50 | +15 | 4 | 02:20 | +15 |
| | ten to eight | five past eight | | | |
| 1 | 13:40 | +15 | 5 | 20:55 | +15 |
| | | | | | |
| 2 | 12:00 | +15 | 6 | 06:30 | +15 |
| | | | | | |
| 3 | 23:05 | +15 | 7 | 11:25 | +15 |
| | | | | | |

## Unit 3

**1 Complete the sentences.**

1 A What's the _____ today?
B The fifth _____ October.
2 A I don't like January.
B Why?
A Because it's the coldest _____ of the _____ .
3 A Which _____ do you like best?
B Summer.
4 A It's my _____ today.
B Really? How old are you?
5 A I'm going to California on New _____ _____ .
B Fantastic!



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Write the answers.**

▶ What's the 1st day of the week? Monday
1 What's the 3rd month of the year? _____
2 What's the 3rd season of the year in Britain? _____
3 What's the 4th day of the week? _____
4 What's the 5th month of the year? _____
5 What's the 6th day of the week? _____
6 What's the 7th month of the year? _____
7 What's the 9th month of the year? _____
8 What's the 11th month of the year? _____

## Unit 4

**1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with capital letters. Then write C for 'country' or N for 'nationality'.**

▶ Saudi N
▶ Britain C
1 ___taly ___
2 ___ungary ___
3 ___exico ___
4 ___wiss ___
5 ___hina ___
6 ___zech ___
7 ___gypt ___
8 ___panish ___
9 ___razil ___
10 ___urkey ___
11 ___reek ___
12 ___rench ___
13 ___ermany ___
14 ___ussia ___
15 ___rgentinian ___
16 ___ortugal ___

**2 Complete the text.**

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ▶ English in London at the moment. I'm from Po_____ (1), and I live with two students: Silvia, who's Br_____ (2), and Irina who's from the Cz_____ Re_____ (3). Irina speaks Cz_____ (4) and Po_____ (5). We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two Ja_____ (6) students, a Ko_____ (7), three Tu_____ (8) women, a young It_____ (9) girl, a Ch_____ (10) boy and four students from Sp_____ (11). Our teacher is Dennis, and he's Au_____ (12).

## Unit 5

**Write your answers.**

▶ You put your things in this. a bag
1 The teacher writes on this in the classroom. _____
2 You use this if you make a mistake. _____
3 You put notices on this. _____
4 You find the meaning of words in this. _____
5 You sharpen pencils with this. _____
6 You write new vocabulary in this. _____
7 You listen to CDs on this. _____
8 You sit on this. _____
9 You sit at one of these. _____ or _____
10 You can put pieces of paper in this. _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 6

**Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.**

| I | S | P | A | S | T | S | I | M | P | L | E |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| V | S | T | A | R | T | I | C | L | E | W | P |
| D | E | U | P | S | I | N | G | U | L | A | R |
| I | N | G | R | E | G | U | L | A | R | D | E |
| R | T | M | O | U | D | Y | L | U | R | J | P |
| R | E | I | N | T | R | O | S | E | K | E | O |
| E | N | L | O | A | D | G | T | P | D | C | S |
| G | C | L | U | K | E | R | U | L | E | T | I |
| U | E | D | N | U | W | E | M | U | I | I | T |
| L | Y | A | D | V | E | R | B | R | M | V | I |
| A | R | O | F | O | P | H | R | A | S | E | O |
| R | U | W | O | R | D | C | O | L | R | P | N |

▶ Walked, went, saw past simple

1 I come from France. _____

2 Quickly, slowly _____

3 In, from, on _____

4 Good afternoon, at school _____

5 Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed) _____

6 A, an, the _____

7 He, I, they _____

8 Table, go, very _____

9 Different, old, big _____

10 Boy (not boys) _____

11 Do (did), go (went) _____

12 Girls (not girl) _____

## Unit 7

**Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

▶ What does *terrible* mean? It means very bad or dreadful.

1 What's the opposite of *correct*? _____

2 What's the difference between *spelling* and *pronunciation*? _____

3 How do you say *hello* in your language? _____

4 How do you pronounce *explain*? _____

5 What does *wrong* mean? _____

6 *Tiny* means the same as *enormous*. Is that right? _____

7 What's this called in English? _____

8 How do you spell ? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 8 I can **give personal information**

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some **information**.

| RECEPTIONIST | SANDRO |
|---|---|
| **What's your family name?** | ~ Bertoli. |
| And **your first name?** | ~ Sandro. |
| **Could I have your address?** | ~ 45 Alfred Road. |
| And the **postcode?** | ~ CB2 4TX. |

Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family.

| | |
|---|---|
| So, Sandro, **where are you from?** (OR **Where do you come from?**) | ~ Italy. |
| **Whereabouts** in Italy? (OR **Where** in Italy **exactly?**) | ~ Pisa. |
| **What do you do** in Pisa? (OR **What's your job?**) | ~ **I'm a** doctor. |
| And **are you married** or **single?** | ~ I'm married. |
| **Have you got any children?** | ~ Yes. A boy and a girl. |
| **How old** are they? | ~ The boy's six and the girl's two. |

**spotlight** *information*

**Information** means facts about people or things, e.g. name, address, etc. **Information** is uncountable; don't say ~~*an information*~~ or ~~*informations*~~.

**1** In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

▶ Are married you? Are you married?
1 What do do you in your country? _____
2 Where do come from you? _____
3 Could I your address have? _____
4 What's your name family? _____
5 What's postcode your? _____
6 How are old your children? _____
7 Have you any children got? _____
8 What's your name first? _____

**2** Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.)

▶ I need some information.

| | | | ABOUT YOU |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | What's your _____ name? | ~ Kovács. | _____ |
| 2 | And your _____ name? | ~ Zsuzsa. | _____ |
| 3 | Where are you _____ ? | ~ Hungary. | _____ |
| 4 | _____ ? | ~ The capital, Budapest. | _____ |
| 5 | And _____ I have your address? | ~ Tarcali utca 27. | _____ |
| 6 | And the _____ ? | ~ 1113. | _____ |
| 7 | And what _____ you do? | ~ I'm an engineer. | _____ |
| 8 | Are you _____ ? | ~ No, I'm still single. | _____ |
| 9 | How _____ are you? | ~ I'm 27. | _____ |

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 9 I can **fill in a form**

| Meaning | Word | Example | ABOUT YOU |
|---|---|---|---|
| single or married man<br>married woman<br>single woman<br>single or married woman | **Mr**<br>**Mrs**<br>**Miss**<br>**Ms** | Miss | |
| family name | **surname** | Rodriguez | |
| first name(s) | **forename(s)** | Maria Helena | |
| day, month, and year you were born | **date of birth** | 12 June 1985 | |
| | nationality | Argentinian | |
| first language | **mother tongue** | Spanish | |
| | home address | California 2000. Piso 12<br>Buenos Aires<br>C1289AAN | |
| phone number during the day | **daytime tel** | [54] 11 4302 8000 | |
| **no** means 'number' | mobile **no** | 0341 241248 | |
| NOT ~~email number~~ | **email address** | malena@latinoa.com.ar | |
| married or single? | **marital status** | single | |
| job | **occupation** | sports teacher | |
| elementary?<br>intermediate? etc.<br>tick = ✓ | **level** of English<br>(please **tick**) | elementary ✓<br>intermediate<br>advanced | elementary<br>intermediate<br>advanced |
| your written name | **signature** | Maria Rodriguez | |

**1** True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

- ▶ Miss = married or single woman F
1. occupation = married or single ___
2. Mrs = married woman ___
3. Mr = single or married man ___
4. surname = first name ___
5. tick = ✓ ___
6. forename = family name ___
7. level = write your name ___
8. marital status = married or single ___
9. mother tongue = mother's name ___
10. email address = where you live ___
11. date of birth = today's date ___
12. daytime tel = phone number during the day ___

**2** ABOUT YOU **Write your information in the table above.**

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 10 I can talk about my family

## A Family tree

Elsie = Alf
Damon's **grandmother** his **grandfather**

Dave = Maggie Paul = Jane
his **father** his **mother** his **uncle** his **aunt**

Luke Damon Karen James Jessica
his **brother** his **sister** his **cousin** his **cousin**

All the people here are Damon's **relatives**.
Luke is Dave and Maggie's **son**.
Karen is Dave and Maggie's **daughter**.
Maggie is Dave's **wife**.
Dave is Maggie's **husband**.
Elsie and Alf are Maggie's **parents** (= mother and father).

Dave is Paul's **brother-in-law**.
Jane is Maggie's **sister-in-law**.
James is Maggie's **nephew**.
Karen is Paul's **niece**.
Luke is Elsie's **grandson**.
Jessica is Elsie's **granddaughter**.

**1** Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's son.
1 Maggie is Elsie's _____
2 Luke is Paul's _____
3 Jessica is Maggie's _____
4 Maggie is Jane's _____
5 Karen is Jessica's _____
6 Paul is Jane's _____
7 Elsie is Jessica's _____
8 Paul is Luke's _____
9 Maggie is Jessica's _____
10 James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon's _____

**2** Complete the table.

| | MALE | FEMALE |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ | father | mother |
| 1 | brother | _____ |
| 2 | husband | _____ |
| 3 | nephew | _____ |
| 4 | relative | _____ |
| 5 | son | _____ |
| 6 | brother-in-law | _____ |
| 7 | grandfather | _____ |
| 8 | grandson | _____ |
| 9 | cousin | _____ |
| 10 | parent | _____ |
| 11 | uncle | _____ |

**3** Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

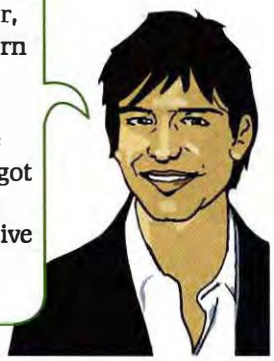
**4** ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and *brother, sister, uncle*, etc.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Family history

My parents **got married** 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, **was born**. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so **there are five of us** in my family. Luke's got a **girlfriend**, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our **mum** and **dad**. We **spend** a lot of **time together**.



### Glossary

**get married** become husband and wife (get **divorced** stop being husband and wife)
**be born** start your life
**have got** have
**there are five of us** NOT ~~we are five~~
**girlfriend/boyfriend** *see picture below*
**mum** INF mother
**dad** INF father
**spend time with someone** be with someone and do things with them
**together** with each other

### spotlight *How old are you?*

*Damon is 22 (years old).* NOT ~~*He has 22 (years).*~~
*His brother is older than him. He's 23.*
*His sister is younger than him. She's 20.*
*Alf's the oldest in the family.*
*Karen's the youngest in the family.*

Use the practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

**5** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. F
1 Damon's parents are divorced. _____
2 Damon was born after Luke. _____
3 Luke is younger than Karen. _____
4 Luke and Sue live together. _____
5 Luke's mum has two sons. _____
6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend. _____
7 There are four in Damon's family. _____
8 Karen is the youngest in the family. _____
9 Damon and Karen are often together. _____

**6** **Write the words in correct sentences.**

▶ his / divorced / are / parents His parents are divorced.
1 born / I / 1989 / in / was _____
2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a _____
3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is _____
4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us _____
5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am _____
6 brother / younger / 've got / sister / an / older / and / a / I _____

**7** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 How many people are there in your family? _____
2 When were you born? _____
3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you? _____
4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with? _____
5 Do you all live together? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 11 I can describe physical actions

## A Using your body

**sit down** PT sat down

**stand up** PT stood up

**ride** PT rode

**jump**

**dance**

**climb**

**fall over** PT fell over

**lie down** PT lay

**run** PT ran

**walk**

**get on** PT got on **get off**

**spotlight** **Irregular verbs**

The verbs **sit**, **stand**, **run**, **fall**, **ride**, **lie** and **get** are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding **ed**. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

**1** **Write the present form of the verbs.**

- ▶ walked walk
- 1 lay down _____
- 2 fell over _____
- 3 rode _____
- 4 climbed _____
- 5 sat down _____
- 6 got on _____
- 7 ran _____
- 8 stood up _____

**2** **Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6 – 9.**

- ▶ I sat _____ down at my desk and worked for two hours.
- 1 The children have to _____ up when the teacher comes into the classroom.
- 2 I often _____ to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
- 3 I want to _____ Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
- 4 Do you often _____ when you go to nightclubs?
- 5 The doctor asked me to _____ down on the bed.
- 6 The boys _____ into the swimming pool.
- 7 She _____ her bike to school this morning.
- 8 I was late, so I _____ to the bus stop, but I _____ over.
- 9 She _____ off the bus, went into the station and _____ a train.

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Using your hands

**push**

**hold** PT **held**

**put** something **down** PT **put**

**touch**

**pull**

**carry**

**pick** something **up**

**turn on**

**give** PT **gave**

**drop**

**break** PT **broke**

**close/shut**
PT **shut** OPP **open**

**4** **Make words from the letters.**

- ▶ ivge give
- 1 rrcay _____
- 2 nurt fof _____
- 3 tpu wond _____
- 4 seloc _____
- 5 thuco _____
- 6 pord _____
- 7 kipc pu _____
- 8 kabre _____
- 9 dloh _____
- 10 uphs _____
- 11 thsu _____
- 12 pnoe _____

**5** **Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.**

- ▶ shut a dictionary 1
- ▶ give someone five dictionaries 2
- 1 touch a bicycle _____ push a bicycle _____
- 2 pick up a TV _____ turn on a TV _____
- 3 break a bottle _____ open a bottle _____
- 4 pull your hair _____ touch your hair _____
- 5 turn off a radio _____ hold a radio _____
- 6 drop a ruler _____ break a ruler _____
- 7 carry a door _____ close a door _____
- 8 pick up a baby _____ hold a baby _____

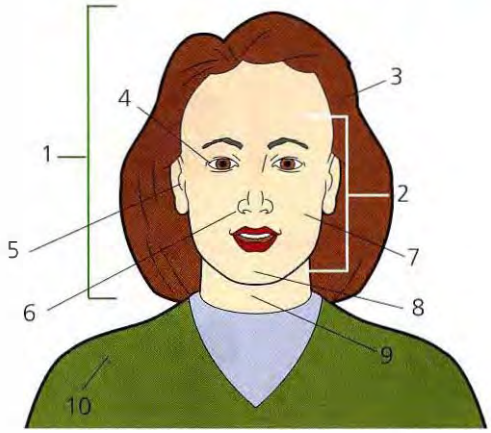
**6** **Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.**



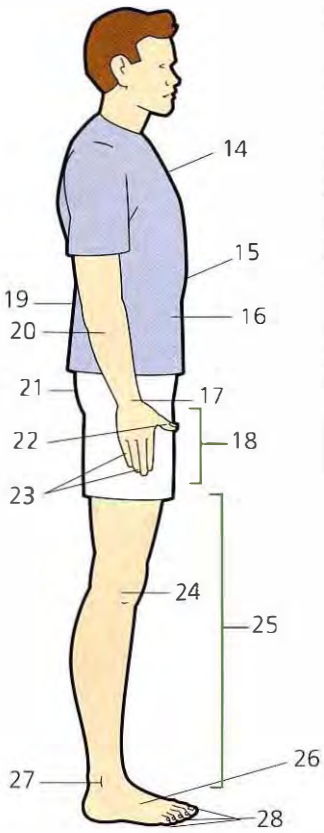
www.hellooteacher.ir

# 12 I can **name parts of the body**

1 **head**
2 **face**
3 **hair**
4 **eye**
5 **ear**
6 **nose**
7 **cheek**
8 **chin**
9 **neck**
10 **shoulder**




11 **mouth**
12 **lip**
13 **tooth** (plural **teeth**)




14 **chest**
15 **stomach**
16 **waist**
17 **wrist**
18 **hand**
19 **back**
20 **arm**
21 **bottom**
22 **thumb**
23 **fingers**
24 **knee**
25 **leg**
26 **foot** (plural **feet**)
27 **ankle**
28 **toes**

**1** True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

I've got two ...

- ▶ eyes T
- ▶ necks F
- 1 noses _____
- 2 lips _____
- 3 ears _____
- 4 waists _____
- 5 knees _____
- 6 shoulders _____
- 7 backs _____
- 8 thumbs _____
- 9 hands _____
- 10 wrists _____
- 11 ankles _____
- 12 heads _____
- 13 arms _____
- 14 mouths _____

**2** Which one is different? Circle it.

- ▶ finger thumb (waist) hand
- 1 foot wrist toe ankle
- 2 arm hand wrist stomach
- 3 neck ears nose lips
- 4 cheeks finger chin hair
- 5 mouth teeth lips shoulder
- 6 eyes legs knees ankle
- 7 shoulder chest neck bottom

**3** Complete the words.

- ▶ h a i r
- 1 c _ _ n
- 2 s _ _ _ _ _ h
- 3 c _ _ _ t
- 4 t _ _ _ h
- 5 b _ _ k
- 6 f _ _ e
- 7 n _ _ e
- 8 b _ _ _ _ m
- 9 wa _ _ t

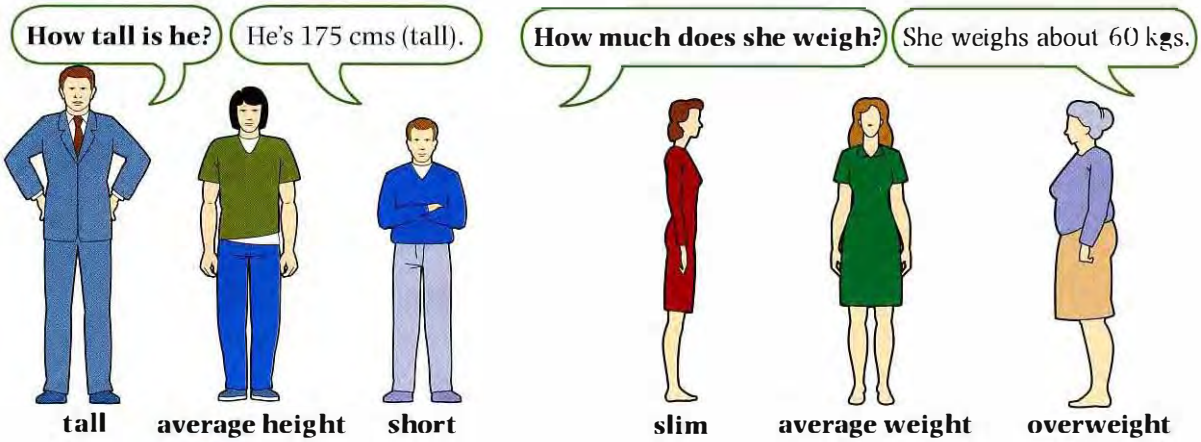
**4** Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 13 I can describe people

## A General description



He's (very) **good-looking.** / (very) **attractive.**

She's **beautiful.** / (very) **attractive.**

He's / She's **not very attractive.**

**1** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ If you are *overweight*, you aren't *slim*. T

1 *Average height* means not tall and not short. _____

2 *Attractive* and *good-looking* mean the same. _____

3 You can say a man is *good-looking* or *beautiful*. _____

4 If someone is *fat*, they are *overweight*. _____

5 The answer to *'How much does he weigh?'* is *'200 cms'*. _____

6 *'How tall are you?'* is correct. _____

7 It is polite to call someone *fat* and *ugly*. _____

8 *Thin* and *slim* mean the same, but *thin* is more positive. _____

**spotlight** ***thin, fat, ugly***

- **Thin** means **slim**, but **slim** is more positive.
- It isn't polite to tell someone they are **fat**. It is more polite to say they are **overweight**.
- The opposite of **beautiful/ good-looking** is **ugly**, but it isn't polite to tell someone they're **ugly**.

**2** **Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in *italics* in your answer.**

▶ Is he *attractive*? ~ Yes, he's good-looking.

1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average _____.

2 Are the two brothers *attractive*? ~ Yes, they're both _____.

3 Is she quite *thin*? ~ Yes, she's very _____.

4 He's about average weight. ~ Yes, he _____ 75 kgs.

5 Is he *overweight*? ~ Yes, he's a bit _____.

6 Is she very *attractive*? ~ Yes, she's _____.

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Hair and eyes

| | How long? | What colour? | What kind? | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| She's got | **short** <br>**medium-length** <br>**long** | **blonde** <br>**light brown** <br>**dark brown** <br>**grey** <br>**black** | **straight** <br>**curly** <br>**wavy** | **hair** |
| He's got | | **brown eyes** <br>**green eyes** <br>**blue eyes** | | |
| | a **beard** | a **moustache** | | |

**4** **Cross out the adjective you don't need.**

- ▶ She's got long, dark brown, ~~black~~ hair. (OR She's got long, ~~dark brown~~, black hair.)
1. I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
2. Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
3. My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
4. My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
5. My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.

**5** **Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)**

ABOUT YOU

- ▶ Is your hair brown? Is it d*ark* brown or l*ight* brown? — No, it's blonde.
1. Is your hair long, m_____-l_____, or s_____ ?
2. What colour is it: bl_____, bl_____, br_____, or g_____ ?
3. Is your hair st_____, w_____, or c_____ ?
4. Have you got a b_____ or a m_____ ?
5. Have you got br_____ eyes?

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.**

I've got long, dark hair and...



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C How old are they?

| Age | Word/phrase |
|---|---|
| → 18 months; before they can walk | **a baby** |
| 2 → 10 or 11 | **a child** plural **children** |
| 13 → about 17 | **a teenager** OR **a young person** plural **young people** |
| 18 → | **an adult** |
| about 45 → 60 | **a middle-aged person** |
| 65 → | **an elderly man** or **woman** (more polite than **old**) |

**spotlight** **Other phrases for age**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| in | his / her | **teens** (13 → about 17) |
| in | my / his / her | **early twenties** (20 → 23) |
| | | **mid-thirties** (34 → 36) |
| | | **late fifties** (57 → 59) |

**7** **Match 1 – 8 with a – i.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | me (45) d | a | elderly |
| 1 | my wife (38) _____ | b | in her late thirties |
| 2 | my son (6 months) _____ | c | a teenager |
| 3 | my daughter (7) _____ | d | in my mid-forties ✓ |
| 4 | my brother (47) _____ | e | a baby |
| 5 | my nephew (14) _____ | f | in her early sixties |
| 6 | my aunt (63) _____ | g | an adult |
| 7 | my father (79) _____ | h | middle-aged |
| 8 | my niece (21) _____ | i | a child |

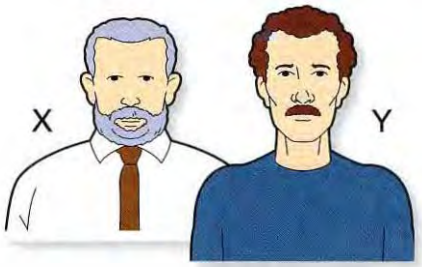
**8** ABOUT YOU **Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | a baby Marcus (my sister's son) | 4 | an elderly woman _____ |
| 1 | a young person _____ | 5 | an elderly man _____ |
| 2 | a middle-aged person _____ | 6 | a baby _____ |
| 3 | someone in his/her twenties _____ | 7 | someone in his/her fifties _____ |

**9** **Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the 'age' column and say the words and phrases.**

**10** **Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?**

> The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.




**11** **Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.**

The other man is _____

_____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 14 I can talk about character

## A What's he/she like?

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **friendly** | *The students in my class are all really **friendly**; it's great.* | happy to meet and talk to other people OPP **unfriendly** |
| **kind** | *He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really **kind**.* | warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people |
| **nice** | *I met Colin on holiday and he's a really **nice** guy.* | kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) SYN **pleasant** OPP **horrible** |
| **fun** | *I love Karen; she's great **fun**.* | something or someone that makes you happy |
| **funny** | *John makes me laugh – he's just a really **funny** man.* | making you **laugh** |
| **relaxed** | *My parents are very **relaxed**: they don't get angry if I'm late.* | calm |
| **clever** | *Tom is very **clever** – the best student in our class.* | able to learn and understand very quickly SYN **intelligent** OPP **stupid** |
| **quiet** | *She's **quiet**, but she can be funny.* | someone who is **quiet** doesn't say very much |
| **serious** | *I like our teacher but she's very **serious**.* | someone who is **serious** thinks a lot and doesn't laugh very much |

**1** Complete the words.

▶ f u n
1 f _ _ _ y
2 q _ _ _ t
3 r _ l _ x _ d
4 n _ _ e
5 cl _ _ _ r
6 f _ _ _ _ _ _ y
7 la _ _ h

**spotlight** ***What's ... like?***

We use this question to find out more about someone or something.
***What's** Jack **like**? ~ He's very nice.*
NOT ~~*He's like very nice.*~~
***What was** the film **like**? ~ Great!*

**2** Answer the questions.

What's...
▶ a synonym for nice? pleasant
1 the opposite of friendly? _____
2 a synonym for clever? _____
3 the opposite of nice? _____
4 the opposite of clever? _____

What do you call someone who...
▶ likes meeting and talking to people? friendly
5 makes you laugh? _____
6 thinks a lot and doesn't laugh a lot? _____
7 is usually calm ? _____
8 always wants to help others? _____

**3** Complete the conversations.

1 What's Alex like ? ~ He's nice, but he's very _____ . He doesn't laugh much.
2 What _____ Ana's parents like? ~ Well, her mother's great _____ ; I like her very much. But her father doesn't like people very much – he's really _____ .
3 _____ was your grandmother like? ~ She was very _____ – she always helped everyone. And she was _____ too. She went to university.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B We like each other

WHY WE LIKE
# each other

Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was **on my own**, and she came up and talked to me; she's like that. What's interesting is that we**'re complete opposites**. She's very happy to meet new people, but I'm really **shy**; she's very **sociable**, I'm quiet; she's **sporty**, and I'm not. But it wasn't important. We became friends and **shared a flat** for two years. I'm very **organized** and did most of the housework. Sophie's not very **tidy**, and she can be **lazy** around the house. But she's a great cook and a really nice person."

### Glossary

**on my own** alone OR without other people
**be complete opposites** be very different
**shy** If you're **shy**, you can't talk easily to people you don't know.
**sociable** friendly and liking to talk to people
**sporty** liking sport and good at it
**share a flat** live in the same flat as another person
**organized** An **organized** person plans things well.
**tidy** A **tidy** person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP **untidy**
**lazy** A **lazy** person doesn't like working. OPP **hardworking**

### spotlight *really*

**Really** is important in spoken English. It means 'very' and you can use it before most adjectives.
*I'm in a **really** nice class.*
*She was **really** horrible to me.*

**4** **Find and write four more examples of *really* + adjective from page 36.**

▶ really kind _____ _____ _____ _____

**5** **Read the text again. Are these statements true or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Sophie likes sport. T

1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. _____
2 Gemma and Sophie are very different. _____
3 Sophie likes meeting new people. _____
4 They lived together at university. _____
5 Gemma's sociable. _____
6 Sophie's very unfriendly. _____
7 Sophie's untidy. _____
8 Gemma doesn't plan things. _____

Listen to the CD-ROM and do the exercises.

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

What are you like? Are you ...

1 sporty or not sporty? _____
2 a very relaxed person? _____
3 usually tidy or untidy? _____
4 lazy or hardworking? _____
5 quiet or very sociable? _____
6 a very organized person? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 15 I can describe relationships

## A Romantic relationships

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've **been together** for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend's** house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **split up** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.

### Glossary

**partner** someone you have a romantic relationship with (your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)
**be together** be in a romantic relationship
**go out with someone** have a romantic relationship with someone
**ex-boyfriend** a person who was your boyfriend in the past (also **ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband**)
**get to know someone** learn about and become friends with someone
**get married** become husband and wife
**have a baby** become a new mother/father
**couple** two people, often in a romantic relationship
**split up** stop having a romantic relationship
**divorced** married in the past but not now

### spotlight *relationship*

You have a **relationship** with someone. It can be good or bad.
*I have a good **relationship** with my flatmate.*
*He has a difficult **relationship** with his father.*
We often talk about romantic relationships with wives, boyfriends, etc.

**1** Write the words in correct sentences.

▶ get / to / they / married / want They want to get married.
1 baby / last / had / a / year / they _____
2 split up / January / they / in _____
3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we _____
4 you / how / her / get to know / did / ? _____
5 three / together / for / they / years / were _____
6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out _____

**2** Complete the sentences.

▶ They have a very good relationship.
1 When did they _____ a baby?
2 My boyfriend and I have been _____ for two months.
3 I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely _____ .
4 She went _____ with him last year, but they split _____ in January.
5 Sonia is his _____ girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're _____ . My father has a new _____ , but I don't think they're going to _____ married.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Friends

WHY WE LIKE

# each other

Sophie: "I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first **met** at university, and then we **became flatmates**. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for **advice** – and she always gives me good advice. We don't **see each other** very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've **known** her for a long time, and she will always be my **closest friend.**"

### Glossary

**get on (well) with someone** have a good relationship with someone
**meet** PT **met** see and speak to someone for the first time
**become flatmates** start to be flatmates (also **become friends**)
**flatmate** person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
**advice** an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You **give advice** or **you give someone advice.**)
**see someone** talk to or visit someone
**know someone** be friends with someone or have met them
**closest friend** most important friend (also **best friend**)

### spotlight *each other*

*Pam and Mike really loved* ***each other****.* (Pam loved Mike. and Mike loved Pam.)
*The two girls never listen to* ***each other****.* (A doesn't listen to B. and B doesn't listen to A.)

**3** **Are the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | We met last year. | I have known her for a year. | S |
| 1 | We live near each other. | We are flatmates. | |
| 2 | We don't get on very well. | We have a very good relationship. | |
| 3 | I see her every Saturday. | I meet her every Saturday. | |
| 4 | She's my best friend. | She's my closest friend. | |
| 5 | We became friends. | We stopped being friends. | |
| 6 | She gives me advice. | She helps me with my problems. | |

**4** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 Who is your closest friend? _____
2 How long have you known him/her? _____
3 Where did you meet? _____
4 How did you get to know him/her? _____
5 How often do you see each other? _____
6 Why do you get on well with him/her? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 16 I can say how I feel

## A Physical feelings

| Word/phrase | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **What's the matter?** | ***What's the matter?*** *~ Nothing.* | What's the problem? |
| **be/feel tired** | *I* ***feel tired****. I'm going to bed.* | want to rest or sleep |
| **be/feel hungry** | *I'm* ***hungry****. Is there anything to eat?* | want something to eat |
| **be/feel thirsty** | *I'm* ***thirsty****. Can I have a juice?* | want something to drink |
| **be/feel boiling** | *I'm* ***boiling****. Can we open a window?* | very, very hot |
| **be/feel freezing** | *Where's my coat? I'm* ***freezing****.* | very, very cold |
| **be/feel nervous** | *Did you* ***feel nervous*** *before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.* | |
| **be/feel ill** | *He* ***felt ill*** *after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.* | |
| **not be/feel well** | *He* ***doesn't feel well****, so I told him to go to bed.* | |

**1** **How do you feel? Write your answers.**

- ▶ You're outside. It's –10 degrees. I'm freezing.
- 1 It's the end of a working day. _____
- 2 It's minutes before an important exam. _____
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours. _____
- 4 You've had nothing to eat for hours. _____
- 5 You're working. It's 35 degrees. _____
- 6 Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees. _____

**2** **Complete the dialogues.**

- ▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 What's the _____ ? ~ I _____ ill.
- 2 Are you _____ ? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- 3 What's the _____ ? ~ I'm _____ . I need a coat.
- 4 It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm _____ .
- 5 Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit _____ .
- 6 _____ the matter? ~ I don't feel _____ .

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meaning. Can you say the words?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Emotions

1 He's **happy**.

2 She's **sad**.
SYN **unhappy**

3 He's **excited**.

4 She's **worried**.

5 He's **angry**.

6 She's **frightened**.
SYN **scared**

7 He 's **embarrassed**.

8 She's **surprised**.

9 He's **in love**.

10 She's **upset**.

**spotlight** ***get* + adjective**

**Get** can mean 'become' or 'start to be'.
*My wife* ***gets worried*** *if I'm late.*
*The children* ***got*** *very* ***excited*** *at the party.*

### 4 Complete the words.

▶ ha p p y
1 ang _ _
2 wor _ _ _ _
3 up _ _ _
4 sca _ _ _
5 sur _ _ _ _ _
6 fri _ _ _ _ _ _ _
7 unh _ _ _ _
8 emb _ _ _ _ _ _ _
9 ex _ _ _ _ _

### 5 Complete the sentences.

▶ I was sad when I heard that her mother was very ill.
1 The teacher got _____ because the children were running round the classroom.
2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very _____.
3 I got very _____ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
4 My brothers get very _____ when they're watching football on TV.
5 I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very _____.
6 My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are _____ because they like him.
7 I was very _____ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
8 My aunt never travels by plane. She's _____ of flying.
9 They met on holiday. I think they're in _____.

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: People

## Unit 8

**Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.**

Helena Costa
Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63
São Paulo
05065 – 002
Brazil
Art teacher
Married; one son, Marco, 7

A Hello there. Now, what's your ▶ family name ?
B Costa.
A Right, and your first (1) _____ ?
B Helena.
A OK, Helena, and where do (2) _____ from?
B I'm (3) _____ Brazil.
A Oh, where in Brazil (4) _____ ?
B São Paulo.
A Right, and could (5) _____ your address?
B It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo.
A And the (6) _____ ?
B It's 05065–002.
A And what do you (7) _____ ?
B I _____ (8) an art teacher.
A Oh, really? And (9) _____ married?
B Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
A Oh, (10) _____ is he?
B He's seven.

## Unit 9

**Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| M | A | R | I | T | A | L | S | T | A | T | U | S |
| O | C | C | U | P | A | T | I | O | N | E | X | U |
| T | D | U | T | I | C | K | G | G | D | L | M | R |
| H | A | E | F | O | R | E | N | A | M | E | I | N |
| E | T | M | A | I | L | W | O | M | R | 0 | S | A |
| R | E | A | P | L | A | D | D | R | E | S | S | M |
| T | O | N | G | U | E | D | A | Y | T | I | M | E |
| Y | F | B | I | R | T | H | S | I | N | G | L | E |

## Unit 10

**1 Find 13 more family words in the word-square.**

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | G | O | R | E | L | A | T | I | V | E | S |
| G | S | J | O | G | Y | W | E | S | G | T | I |
| K | I | D | A | U | G | H | T | E | R | D | O |
| O | S | Y | M | E | F | O | T | N | A | U | M |
| A | T | B | X | H | U | S | B | A | N | D | I |
| U | E | R | I | C | U | N | L | I | D | Q | S |
| N | R | B | R | O | T | H | E | R | F | U | O |
| T | I | P | W | U | N | C | L | E | A | I | N |
| L | N | O | I | S | T | I | C | A | T | M | U |
| O | L | W | F | I | S | N | E | P | H | E | W |
| P | A | R | E | N | T | S | J | O | E | T | I |
| R | W | U | N | I | E | C | E | E | R | F | A |


www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.**

▶ He's eighteen years. He's eighteen.
1 My brother has eighteen years old. _____
2 I born in 1990. _____
3 My sister is younger that me. _____
4 His parents are divorce. _____
5 There are five of we in my family. _____
6 She is more old than her brother. _____
7 We spend together a lot of time. _____
8 Who is the youngest of the family? _____

# Unit 11

**1 Complete the table with the verbs in the box.**

push ✓ walk pick something up stand up hold pull jump carry drop turn something off run ride put something down climb

| Using your hands | Using your feet or legs |
|---|---|
| push | |

**2 Circle the correct word.**

▶ You get on a bus/a house.
1 You can open a door/a light.
2 You can touch a park/a wall.
3 You can turn on a radio/a watch.
4 You can pick up a car/a bicycle.
5 You can ride a car/a bicycle.
6 You can hold a bag/a classroom.
7 You can break some juice/a pencil.
8 You can climb a tree/a bus.
9 You can close a TV/a book.
10 You can sit down on a bed/the sea.

# Unit 12

**1 Above or below the waist? Write A (above) or B (below).**

▶ foot B
▶ head A
1 ears _____
2 ankle _____
3 foot _____
4 chest _____
5 shoulder _____
6 chin _____
7 leg _____
8 knee _____
9 toes _____
10 nose _____
11 bottom _____
12 neck _____
13 mouth _____

**2 Write another part of the body which is between the other two. Look at the example.**

▶ nose mouth chin
1 hand _____ shoulder
2 chest _____ head
3 wrist _____ fingers
4 ankle _____ toes
5 back _____ leg
6 eyes _____ mouth



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 13

**1 Write about the people.**

▶ She's tall, slim and attractive. She's got medium-length, dark brown hair. She's a teenager.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

**2 Put the words in order from young (1) to old (9).**

in your early thirties ☐ | a baby [1] | a child ☐

a teenager ☐ | in your mid-twenties ☐ | in your early sixties ☐

middle-aged ☐ | elderly ☐ | in your late thirties ☐

# Unit 14

**1 Complete the table with words from the box.**

| Positive | Negative | Positive or negative |
|---|---|---|
| friendly | unfriendly | |

funny stupid
quiet clever friendly ✓
horrible kind untidy
sociable organized
serious unfriendly ✓

**2 Complete the dialogues.**

▶ She's nice. ~ Yes, very pleasant.

1 She doesn't do any work. ~ No, she's very _____.

2 Does she meet new people easily? ~ No, she's very _____.

3 Did you live in the same place? ~ Yes, we _____ a flat.

4 I really like being with her. ~ Yes, she's great _____.

5 She's clever, isn't she? ~ Yes, very _____.

6 Were you with other people? ~ No, I was _____.

7 She makes me laugh. ~ I know, she's very _____.

8 She plans everything. ~ Yes, she's very _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 15

**1 Circle the correct word.**

Lucy ▶ met/knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got/went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got (2) marry/married. They have a very good (3) relation/relationship, and they (4) get/go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got/had a baby girl called Paula. They've been (6) together/each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split (7) off/up, or (8) get/go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple/two.

**2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.**

become (x2) is (x2) give get (x2) are✓ see

▶ Are they married?
1 How did you _____ to know Jack?
2 When did you _____ friends with Jana?
3 _____ Elena your closest friend?
4 Do you _____ your ex-boyfriend often?
5 Does your mother _____ you good advice?
6 How did you _____ flatmates?
7 Do you _____ on well with your sister?
8 _____ your cousin divorced?

# Unit 16

**1 Correct the spelling mistakes.**

▶ He's frightend. frightened
1 Why are they exited? _____
2 I'm hangry. _____
3 She was very suprised. _____
4 I think he was embarassed. _____
5 I'm very worrid. _____
6 I feel tierd. _____
7 She's scard of dogs. _____
8 Is he nervos? _____
9 What's the mater? _____
10 She's thursty. _____

**2 Are these feelings positive or negative? Write *P* or *N*.**

▶ She's very sad. N
1 My daughter's excited about the dog. _____
2 She's really unhappy at the moment. _____
3 He was embarrassed about it. _____
4 I don't feel well. _____
5 It's freezing in this room. _____
6 My brother's in love. _____
7 He's scared of her. _____
8 I was very upset about it. _____
9 I felt nervous before I met him. _____
10 They're all happy. _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

# 17 I can describe my routine

## A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

I **usually get up** at 7.00.

I **have a shower.**

I **get dressed.**

I **have breakfast.**

I usually **leave home** at 8.00.

I **get to work** at 8.30.

I **finish work** at 5.00.

I **have dinner** at 8.15.

I **go to bed** at 11.30.

I **sleep** seven hours a night.

What do you do on weekdays?

**spotlight** ***usually*** and ***normally***

***I usually/normally*** *go to work by bus* means that I go to work by bus most days.

**1** **Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | I get up ✓ | work | before breakfast | I get up at 7.30 a.m. |
| 1 | I get | at ✓ | at 11 o'clock | |
| 2 | I have | seven hours | 7.30 a.m. ✓ | |
| 3 | I leave | dressed | at 6 p.m. | |
| 4 | I finish | home | with my family | |
| 5 | I have | dinner | a night | |
| 6 | I go | breakfast | at 8.00 a.m | |
| 7 | I sleep | to bed | at 8.30 a.m. | |

**2** **Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)**

ABOUT YOU

▶ What time do you usually get up in the morning? — I get up at 7.30.

1 Do you _____ dressed before or after breakfast? _____

2 Do you _____ a shower in the morning? _____

3 What time do you _____ home in the morning? _____

4 What time do you _____ to school/university/work? _____

5 Who do you _____ dinner with? _____

6 What time do you normally _____ to bed? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.**

**4** **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.**

## B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday)

What do you do **at the weekend**?

**During the week** I usually **stay in** after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. **Once** or **twice** a week, my boyfriend **comes round** and we have dinner together or **go and see a film**. At the weekend, I **go out** a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually **go shopping** with a friend, or I **go to the gym**, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up **late**. We often **go for a walk**, and in the summer we **play tennis**.

### Glossary

**at the weekend** on Saturday and Sunday
**during the week** from Monday to Friday
**stay in** stay at home
**once a week** one time in every week
**twice a week** two times in every week
**come round** come to my home
**go out** leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc.
**go shopping** go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc. (When you do the shopping you buy food.)
**go to the gym**

**late** after the usual time OPP **early**
**go for a walk** have a short walk to enjoy yourself
**play tennis**

**5** **Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| the | shopping | go | for | a |
| do | week ↑ | or | once | walk |
| during → | the | twice | a | week |
| stay | tennis | go | shopping | at |
| in | play | go | gym | the |
| come | round | to | the | weekend |

**6** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I go to a restaurant once or twice a week.
1 Do you want to _____ shopping?
2 Come _____ to my flat after work.
3 I can't _____ tennis this weekend.
4 Do you want to go _____ on Saturday?
5 _____ the week I usually stay _____.
6 I'm really tired today because I went to bed _____ last night.
7 What are you doing _____ the weekend?
8 I go to the _____ twice a week because I like to exercise.
9 I often _____ the shopping very _____, at 8.00 in the morning.
10 We often go and _____ a film on Sunday.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Frequency words

These adverbs go before the main verb (e.g. *get up*), but after an auxiliary verb (e.g. *do*, *does*, *have*, *can* or *be*).
I **always** get up late on Sundays.
Do you **often** go out in the evening?
We **occasionally** go for a walk.
I'm **hardly ever** ill.

**spotlight** ***every* and *all***

*He goes out* ***every*** *day* means 'he goes out on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday'.
Be careful!
*He works* ***every*** *day* means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'.
*He works* ***all*** *day* means 'he works from 9.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.'

**7** **Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | I always go shopping on Saturdays. | I go shopping every Saturday. | S |
| 1 | I sometimes work at home. | I often work at home. | |
| 2 | She's hardly ever late for work. | She's rarely late for work. | |
| 3 | We often finish classes early. | We finish classes early every day. | |
| 4 | I never eat meat. | I occasionally eat meat. | |
| 5 | She always has a shower in the morning. | She has a shower every morning. | |
| 6 | In August we play tennis every day. | In August we play tennis all day. | |

**8** **Write the sentences using a word from the box.**

every day  always  often ✓  hardly ever  all day  occasionally  never

▶ Hiro goes to restaurants two or three times a week. Hiro often goes to restaurants.
1 Haruko always gets up early. _____
2 Hiro goes to the gym once a year. _____
3 Haruko stays in seven nights a week. _____
4 Hiro studies from 9.00 to 5.00. _____
5 Haruko doesn't have a shower in the morning. _____
6 Hiro goes to the cinema about six times a year. _____

**9** ABOUT YOU **True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.**

▶ I **hardly ever** play tennis. False. I often play tennis.
1 I **always** have a shower before breakfast. _____
2 I **often** go out on Friday evening. _____
3 I **never** listen to music in the evening. _____
4 I **rarely** study on Sunday. _____
5 I **sometimes** watch TV at the weekend. _____
6 I **never** work in the evening. _____
7 I **usually** go shopping on Monday. _____
8 I **occasionally** go to the gym after dinner. _____


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 18 I can talk about clothes

## A Clothes

1 **shirt**
2 **top**
3 **jumper** SYN **sweater**
4 **trousers**
5 **jeans**
6 **skirt**
7 **dress**
8 **T-shirt**
9 **jacket**
10 **suit**
11 **coat**
12 **raincoat**

**1** Complete the words.

▶ s u i t
1 j_____t
2 t_____s
3 j_____r
4 c__t
5 r_____t
6 T-_____t
7 d___s
8 j___s
9 s_____r

**spotlight** *wear*

*I often* ***wear*** *jeans.*
*She isn't* ***wearing*** *a skirt today.*
*I* ***wore*** *a blue shirt yesterday.*

**2** Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

## B Colours

**white** **cream** **yellow** **green** **blue** **purple** **pink**
**brown** **red** **orange** **grey** **black** **dark blue** **pale blue** OR **light blue**

**3** Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ a green sweater T
▶ red trousers F
1 a pale blue shirt _____
2 dark blue jeans _____
3 a light blue coat _____
4 grey trousers _____
5 a black suit _____
6 a brown jacket _____
7 a pale yellow top _____
8 a pink raincoat _____
9 a blue skirt _____
10 an orange and white T-shirt _____
11 a purple dress _____
12 a cream jumper _____

**4** Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Accessories

**5** **One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | trousers | ~~trainers~~ | jeans |
| 1 | trainers | boots | gloves |
| 2 | scarf | umbrella | tie |
| 3 | jeans | socks | shoes |
| 4 | sandals | glasses | hat |
| 5 | glove | watch | hat |
| 6 | scarf | belt | jeans |

**spotlight** **Plural nouns**

**Trousers**, **jeans**, **tights**, **clothes** and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

*These **trousers are** very nice.* NOT ~~*This trouser is very nice.*~~

*My **jeans were** cheap.*

**6** **Make the sentences singular if possible.**

▶ Are these your boots? Is this your boot?

▶ Her glasses are nice. Not possible.

1 Give me the socks. _____

2 Where are my tights? _____

3 I've got two pairs of sandals. _____

4 Do you like my new trousers? _____

5 She's wearing my scarves. _____

6 Where are my gloves? _____

7 The jeans cost €20. _____

8 I don't like these sunglasses. _____

**7** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 What are you wearing today? _____

2 What clothes do you wear at the weekend? _____

3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear? _____

4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why? _____

5 How often do you wear: a hat? a scarf? a watch? _____

**8** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**

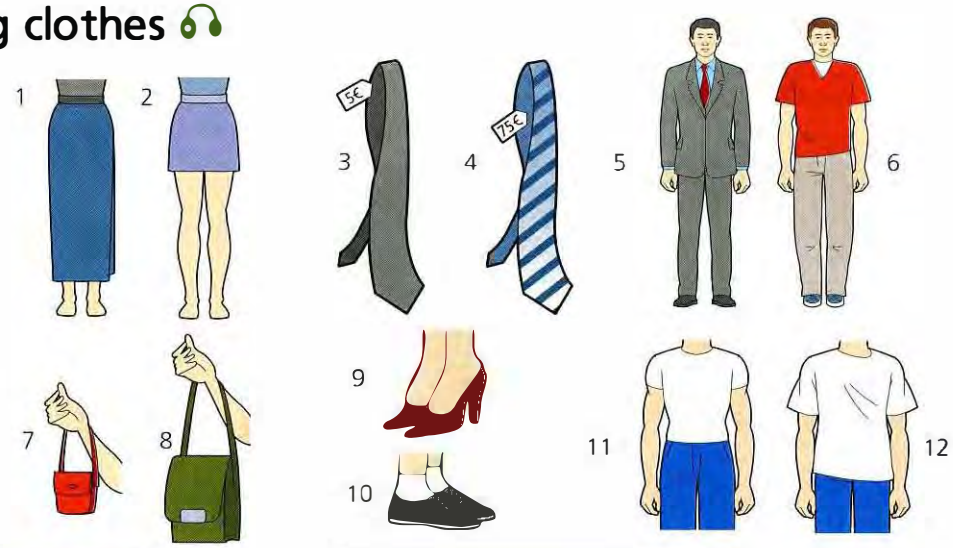


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 19 I can buy clothes Do Unit 18 first

## A Describing clothes

1 **long**
2 **short**
3 **cheap**
4 **expensive**
5 **smart**
6 **casual**
7 **small/little**
8 **large/big**
9 **uncomfortable**
10 **comfortable**
11 **tight**
12 **loose**




I like it – it's really **nice/lovely**.

I don't like it – it's **horrible/awful**.

**1** Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

▶ a cheap tie
1 a s skirt
2 c shoes
3 a s handbag
4 c clothes
5 a l T-shirt
6 an e tie
7 s clothes
8 a l skirt

**2** Circle the correct word.

▶ My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable/uncomfortable.
2 I've got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
3 At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
4 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap/expensive clothes.
5 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
6 You need your long/short coat today; it's really cold.
7 If you are going to the gym, it's better to wear tight/loose clothes.
8 That suit is awful/lovely – you must buy it.

**3** Write the opposite of the underlined word.

▶ You need a large belt. small
1 She's wearing a long coat.
2 Are those boots comfortable?
3 We can wear smart clothes.
4 Was the belt very cheap?
5 She doesn't want tight trousers.
6 Does this look nice?

**4** Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Talking about size

| Questions | Answers | Problems with size |
|---|---|---|
| **What size are you?**<br>**What size do you take?** | **I'm a** (size) 12.<br>**I take size** 40.<br>**small/medium/large** | It's / They're } the **wrong size.**<br>It doesn't / They don't } **fit.** |

It's **too long.**

They're **too big.**

**5** **Complete the sentences.**

1 What ▶ size are you?
~ I'm _____ 14.
2 Is she small, _____, or large?
3 I'm sorry, this shirt is the _____ size.
4 Does this jumper _____?
~ No, it's _____ tight for me.
5 What size do you _____ _____? ~ Small.
6 I like the trousers but they don't _____;
they're _____ long.

**spotlight** ***too* and *very***

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.
*Her coat is **very** long.* (It's OK.)
*Her coat is **too** long.* (It's not OK.)
*These trousers are **very** tight, but I'm going to buy them.*
*These boots are **too** tight; I can't wear them.*

**6** **Look at the pictures. What's the problem?**

▶ The jacket 's too short.

2 _____

1 _____

3 _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C In a shop

A **shop assistant** (SA) and a **customer** (C) are talking.

SA **Do you need any help?**
C Yes, **I'm looking for** a smart, black skirt.
SA What size do you take?
C I'm a 12.

C Oh, this is lovely. Can I **try** it **on**?
SA Yes, sure. The **changing room** is over there.

C Oh, no, it's too tight.
SA Here's a size 14.

SA **That looks** really nice.
C Thanks. Yes, it's fine. I think **I'll take it**. Where do **I pay**?
SA The **cash desk** is at the front.

SA How would you like to pay?
C By **credit card**.
SA That's fine. Thank you.

### Glossary

**Do you need any help?** also Can I help you?
**I'm looking for** = I want
**try something on** put something on to see if the size is right
**changing room** a place where you try something on
**That looks (really nice)** = I think it's (really nice) on you
**pay** give money for something
**cash desk** the place where you pay
**credit card** e.g. Visa, American Express

**spotlight** *I'll take it/I'll leave it*

When you decide to buy something in a shop, you say '**I'll take it/them**'.
NOT ~~*I take it/I buy it.*~~
If you decide not to buy something, you say '(No), **I'll leave it/them**, thanks'.

**7** **Write the words in correct sentences.**

▶ help / can / I / you / ? Can I help you?
1 I / where / pay / do / ? _____
2 thanks / no / I'll / it / leave _____
3 changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ? _____
4 dress / can / on / this / try / I / ? _____
5 pair / I'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a _____
6 help / you / need / do / any / ? _____

**8** **Write the final word in each sentence.**

▶ What size do you take ?
1 Can I try these _____ ?
2 Pay at the cash _____ .
3 I like these. I'll take _____ .
4 I'd like to pay by credit _____ .
5 Excuse me. Where's the changing _____ ?
6 Do you need any _____ ?
7 Oh, that looks _____ . You must buy it.
8 How would you like to _____ ?

**9** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

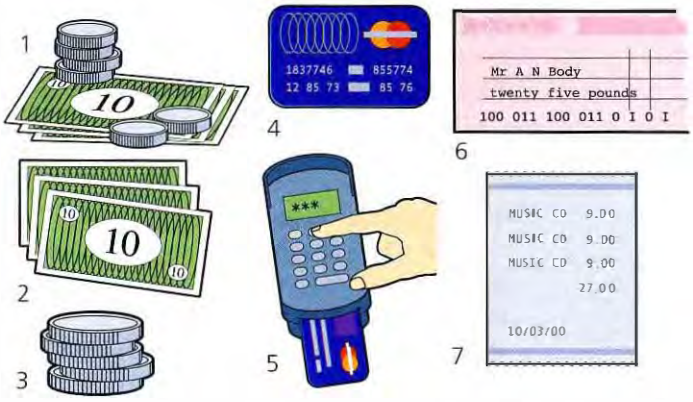
1 Do you like shopping for clothes? _____
2 How often do you buy clothes? _____
3 What was the last thing you bought? _____
4 Do you always know what you're looking for? _____
5 Do you always try clothes on? _____
6 How do you usually pay? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 20 I can talk about money Do Unit 1 first

## A Money in shops




You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They **cost €9 each**, which is €27 **altogether.** You can pay **in cash**[1] (**notes**[2] and **coins**[3]): for example, you give the shop assistant €30, and he gives you **€3 change.** You can also pay by **credit card**[4]. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to **enter**[5] (or **put in**) your **PIN.** You can also pay by **debit card** or **cheque**[6]. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a **receipt**[7].

### Glossary

**cost** PT **cost** How much does it cost? = How much is it?
**€9 each** = €9 for one
**€27 altogether** = €27 for everything
**change** the money you get back if you give the assistant more than something cost
**debit card** If you use a debit card, the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).
**PIN** = Personal Identification Number (also **PIN number**)

### spotlight Money

€5.30 *five euros thirty* OR *five thirty*
NOT ~~*five euros and thirty*~~
£10.99 *ten pounds ninety-nine*
OR *ten ninety-nine*
*a ten pound/euro note* NOT ~~*a ten pounds/euros note*~~

**1** **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ Can I pay for cheque? Can I pay by cheque?
1 The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty. _____
2 Could you put your PIN, please? _____
3 She paid for the dress of cash. _____
4 I've only got a 50 pounds note. _____
5 They're €6 for each. _____
6 Have you got a bank count? _____
7 Three books. That's €42 together. _____
8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.
_____

**2** **Complete the dialogues.**

A I'd like this watch, please.
B Fine. How would you like to pay?
A By debit (▶) card.
B Thanks. Could you (1) _____ your (2) _____, please?... Thank you. Here's your watch and your (3) _____.
A Thank you.

C Hi. How much do these peaches (4) _____?
D They're 50 cents (5) _____.
C I'll have six, please, and a melon.
D Thank you. That's €4.30 (6) _____.
C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50 (7) _____.
D That's OK. I've got lots of (8) _____.


www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Money in adverts

**Sell** your car on esellers.com!

Photo printer **half price**.
Normal price: €120, now €60!

**Spend** €50 **on** Italian wine and get a **free** pizza.

Pay your gas **bill online** and **save** 5%.

Fly to Dublin, **fares** from £16.

**Earn** £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.

Play the **Lottery** and **win** €1,000,000!

### Glossary

**sell** PT **sold** give something to someone who pays you money for it OPP **buy** PT **bought**
**price** the money you have to pay for something (If something is **half price**, you pay 50%.)
**spend money on something** PT **spent** pay money for something
**free** If something is **free**, you don't pay for it.
**bill** a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay
**online** on the internet
**save** If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.
**fare** the money you pay to go by plane, train, etc.
**earn** get money for the work you do
**lottery** game where you buy tickets and can win money
**win** PT **won** get money etc. in a game

**3** Circle the correct answer.

▶ I bought this table online/free.
1 What's the price/bill of these shoes?
2 I don't spend/pay a lot on food.
3 I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
4 I won/earned £100 in the lottery.
5 How much was the train bill/fare?
6 Doctors win/earn a lot of money.
7 I bought/sold my old car and got a new one.
8 She paid the restaurant bill/receipt.

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.**

▶ pay paid
1 buy _____
2 spend _____
3 sell _____
4 earn _____
5 win _____
6 save _____

**5** **Complete the questions with a word from the box. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)**

fares online price earn spend ✓ bill free

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

▶ How much do you spend on food every week? I spend about £20.
1 Do you ever shop _____ ?
2 Is your phone _____ expensive?
3 Is water _____ in restaurants?
4 What's the _____ of a litre of milk?
5 Are train _____ cheap?
6 Do women _____ more than men?

**6** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 21 I can talk about the weather

## A What's the weather like?

| | Adjectives | Verbs | Nouns |
|---|---|---|---|
| | It's **sunny.** | The sun's **shining.** | **sun/sunshine** |
|  | It's **cloudy.** | | **cloud** |
| | It's **wet.** | It's **raining.** | **rain** U |
| | It's **windy.** | The wind's **blowing.**<br>PT **blew** | **wind** |
| | It's **icy.** | | **ice** U |
| | It's **foggy.** | | **fog** U |
| | | It's **snowing.** | **snow** U |

**1** Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | It's ___d___ | a | of cloud today. |
| 1 | It ___ | b | it foggy outside? |
| 2 | The wind ___ | c | isn't raining. |
| 3 | It isn't ___ | d | cold this morning. ✓ |
| 4 | The sun ___ | e | snow on the roads. |
| 5 | Is ___ | f | rain a lot here. |
| 6 | There's a bit ___ | g | the weather like? |
| 7 | There's a lot of ___ | h | very windy. |
| 8 | It doesn't ___ | i | blew my hat off. |
| 9 | What's ___ | j | is shining. |

**spotlight** *a lot (of)/a bit (of)*

**a lot of/a bit of** + noun
*We had **a lot of** rain.*
*There's **a bit of** fog.*

verb + **a lot/a bit**
*It snowed **a lot.***
*It's raining **a bit.***

**a bit** + adjective
*It's **a bit** foggy today.*
*It was **a bit** windy.*

**2** Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ | There was a lot of ice. | It was very icy. |
| 1 | It isn't raining. | There's no ___. |
| 2 | Is the sun shining? | Is it ___? |
| 3 | We often have snow. | It often ___. |
| 4 | She doesn't like fog. | She doesn't like ___ weather. |
| 5 | It was very windy on Friday. | There was a lot of ___ on Friday. |
| 6 | There are no clouds. | It isn't ___. |

**3** **Test yourself.** Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Wet and dry weather

In my country, the weather in spring is very **changeable**. It can be **pleasant** and **dry**, but we often have **showers**. It can get **hot** in the summer for two or three months, and in the cities it is often **humid**, especially before a **storm**. It's **cooler** on the coast, where there is usually a sea **breeze**. In autumn, we get some **heavy rain**, perhaps with **thunder** and **lightning**. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and **freezing**, or grey and **damp**.

### Glossary

**changeable** changing a lot
**pleasant** nice
**dry** OPP **wet**
**shower** a short period of rain
**hot** OPP **cold**
**humid** warm, wet and uncomfortable
**storm** *see picture*
**breeze** a light, pleasant wind
**cool** not hot or warm, but pleasant
**heavy rain** a lot of rain
**thunder** the loud noise of a storm
**lightning** *see picture*
**freezing** very, very cold
**damp** cold and a bit wet

**4** **Circle the correct word.**

► Humid weather is very pleasant/uncomfortable.
1 There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
2 Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
3 The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cool at midday.
4 Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
5 In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
6 By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

**5** **Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.**

► It's wet outside. (rain) It's raining outside.
1 It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was _____
2 It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It _____
3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There _____
4 The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather _____
5 It isn't wet today. (dry) It _____
6 We had heavy rain and thunder. (storm) We had _____

**6** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Make the sentences true for your country.**

► We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
1 We have a lot of showers in the spring. _____
2 In winter it's always freezing at night. _____
3 The weather is always the same in the summer. _____
4 We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours. _____
5 It often snows in the winter. _____
6 Our winters are usually dry. _____
7 We often have thunder and lightning. _____
8 It is usually hot and dry in summer. _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 22 I can talk about illness Do Unit 12 first

## A Common problems

a headache | toothache | stomach-ache | a cold | a cough | a sore throat

flu | a temperature | a pain in my leg also **my leg hurts** | backache | I feel sick

**1** Circle the correct answer.

▶ I'm/I've got a temperature.
1 My back pain/hurts.
2 I feel/'ve got a cold.
3 He doesn't feel/be well.
4 I feel/'ve got toothache.
5 Do you feel/be sick?
6 My knee feels/hurts.
7 He's got flu/a flu?
8 Is/Has she got a temperature?
9 I hurt/'ve got a pain in my eye.
10 Is/Has she got a temperature?
11 She is/'s got a sore throat.
12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.

**spotlight** *be ill/sick*

**Ill** means 'not well'.
*Rafa's not here today; he's* ***ill.***
**Be sick** usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also **vomit**).
If you **feel sick**, you think you are going to **be sick**.

**2** Complete the sentences.

▶ I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache.
1 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad _____.
2 He's got a _____ – look, it's 39 degrees.
3 I walked 20 kilometres today, and my feet _____.
4 What's the _____? You look terrible. ~ I don't feel _____.
5 I ate too much at lunch and now I've got _____.
6 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels _____.
7 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got _____.
8 I can't eat anything; I've got a sore _____.

**3** Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B What should I do?

### Glossary

**go and see** go to, visit
**GP** (General Practitioner) family doctor
**chemist's** shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy)
**lie down**

**for a while** for a short time
**stay in bed** go to bed and not get up
**for a day or two** for a short time (not more than three days)

### spotlight *should* + verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.
*I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed. You **shouldn't** go to work today.*

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

**4** **Cross out one word you don't need in each sentence.**

▶ I don't feel ~~me~~ very well.
1 You should to go to the chemist's.
2 Go and lie you down for a while.
3 Go and see your GP doctor.
4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
6 You should go and to see your doctor.
7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
8 Lie down for the a while.

**5** **Write some advice to people using *should* and the word in brackets.**

▶ I've got a cold. (chemist's) You should go to the chemist's.
1 I've got backache. (lie) _____
2 My ear hurts. (pharmacy) _____
3 I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay) _____
4 I feel sick. (while) _____
5 I've got flu. (GP) _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 23 I can get help at the chemist's

Do Unit 22 first

**In a chemist's shop, a chemist** (Ch) **is talking to a customer** (C).

Ch Can I help you?
C Yes, I **cut**[1] my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
Ch You **need** some **antiseptic cream**[2] for it.
C Right. **Could I have** some **plasters**[3] and some **cotton wool**[4], please?
Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.

Ch Yes?
C **Er, I need something for** a cold.
Ch Right, well, **try** these **tablets**[5] – they're very good.
C OK, and how often do I **take** them?
Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
C Thanks. And I'd like **a box of tissues**[6], please, and some cough **medicine**[7].

## Glossary

**need** If you **need** something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.
**antiseptic** You put **antiseptic** cream on a cut to clean it.
**try** use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps
**take a tablet** eat a tablet (also take **medicine**)

## spotlight Asking for things in a chemist's

You can ask for **something for** a problem or an illness in a chemist's. ***Could I have something for*** *a headache, (please)?* means 'please give me some medicine because I've got a headache.' ***I need something for*** *a cold.*

**1** **Correct the spelling. Be careful: one is correct.**

▶ chimist chemist
1 coton wool _____
2 tissus _____
3 something _____
4 anteseptic _____
5 plastres _____
6 farmacist _____
7 creme _____
8 medicin _____

**2** **Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.**

for toothache, please | help you | a sore throat | some plasters, please | take these tablets | wool | this medicine – it's very good | cream | tablet three times a day | for your finger | a box of ✓

**Customer**

▶ I'd like a box of tissues, please.
1 Have you got something for _____?
2 How often do I _____?
3 I need something _____.
4 I need some cotton _____.
5 Could I have _____?

**Chemist**

6 You need some plasters _____.
7 Try _____.
8 Take one _____.
9 Do you need antiseptic _____?
10 Can I _____?

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Everyday life

## Unit 17

**1 Put the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.**

▶ We often go on Saturday night. (out) We often go out on Saturday night.

1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for) _____

2 Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at) _____

3 I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to) _____

4 She listens music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping. (to) _____

5 On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in) _____

6 I talk my parents every evening. (to) _____

7 My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner together. (round) _____

8 What time do you get work in the morning? (to) _____

**2 Complete Jana's daily routine below using phrases a – k.**

a the shopping
b breakfast together
c up at 6.30 a.m ✓
d to work at about 9.30
e a shave
f work at 6.00 p.m. and go home
g to bed at midnight
h home
i before breakfast
j a shower
k dinner together

My husband, Marco, and I have the same routine every day. I usually get ▶ c and have (1) _____ . I get dressed (2) _____ , and Marco always has a shower and (3) _____ . We have (4) _____ , then Marco and I leave (5) _____ . I go to the town centre and do (6) _____ on my way to work. I get (7) _____ . I finish (8) _____ . We have (9) _____ , and I go (10) _____ .

## Unit 18

**1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.**

tie watch hat socks T-shirt belt jumper tights sandals ✓ gloves boots

▶ You wear them on your feet in summer. sandals

1 You wear them inside your shoes. _____
2 You wear it on your head. _____
3 You wear them on your hands. _____
4 You wear them on your feet. _____
5 You wear it on your wrist. _____
6 You wear it round your neck. _____
7 You wear it over a shirt. _____
8 You wear them over your legs and feet. _____
9 You can wear it under a shirt. _____
10 You wear it round your waist. _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## 2 Label the colours.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

6 _____
7 _____
8 _____
9 _____
10 _____

## 3 Write *a*, *some* or *a pair of*.

▶ a _____ hat
▶ some _____ jumpers
▶ a pair of _____ gloves
1 _____ scarf
2 _____ jeans
3 _____ ties
4 _____ trousers
5 _____ shirts
6 _____ jacket
7 _____ trainers
8 _____ sandals

# Unit 19

## 1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶U | | | | | | | | | |
| N | | | | | | [10]M | | | |
| C | [2]L | [3]C | | [7]P | | | | [14]A | |
| O | | | | | | | [13]C | | [16]N |
| M | | | | | | | | | |
| F | | | [6]C | [8]H | | | | | |
| O | [1]T | | | | [9]C | | | | |
| R | E | [4]S | | | | [11]H | | | |
| T | L | | [5]T | | | | [12]W | | [15]L |
| A | B | | | | | | | | |

▶ Opposite of *comfortable*.
1 OK, I'll ____ it.
2 Opposite of *tight*.
3 Opposite of *expensive*.
4 What ____ are you? ~ I'm a 14.
5 Can I ____ it on?
6 The ____ room is over there.
7 I'd like to ____ in cash.
8 Synonym for *awful*.
9 The place where you pay in a shop is the ____.
10 Small, ____ or large?
11 Can I ____ you?
12 It's the ____ size. It's too small.
13 Opposite of *smart*.
14 A person who works in a shop is a *shop* ____.
15 No, thanks, I'll ____ it. It's too expensive.
16 Do you ____ any help?


www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the conversation between the shop assistant (SA) and the customer (C).**

SA Hello, do you need any ▶ help ?
C Yes, I'm (1) _____ for some brown trousers.
SA Right. What size do you (2) _____ ?
C Oh, size 10, I think.
SA OK, well, how about these?
C Oh, yes, they're very (3) _____. Where can I try them (4) _____ ?
SA The changing (5) _____ is over there.

*Later ...*

SA Hmm, they (6) _____ really nice.
C Yes, but they're (7) _____ small. Can I try on a (8) _____ 12, please?

*Later ...*

C They're (9) _____ ! I'll take (10) _____ . Where do I (11) _____ ?
SA At the (12) _____ desk.

## Unit 20

**1 True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ You pay a receipt. F
1 You can pay for things by cheque or bill. _____
2 You can use a credit card to pay for things you buy online. _____
3 If you pay in cash, you use notes and coins. _____
4 If you buy three things for €60 altogether, they cost €180 each. _____
5 If you use a credit card in a shop, they usually ask you to enter a PIN. _____
6 If you win a car, you don't have to pay for it. It's free. _____

**2 Complete the text.**

Last year, I ▶ won €10,000 on the l_____ (1). I was so excited! The first day, I went out and s_____ (2) my old car and b_____ (3) a new one. It only c_____ (4) €3000 because it was half p_____ (5), and I also s_____ (6) another 5% because I p_____ (7) _____ (8) cash. The next day, I gave my brother some money. He doesn't e_____ (9) very much, so I p_____ (10) his electricity and phone b_____ (11) for him, and then I gave him the plane f_____ (12) to Lisbon so that he could go and see his girlfriend. And I've still got some money in the bank.

## Unit 21

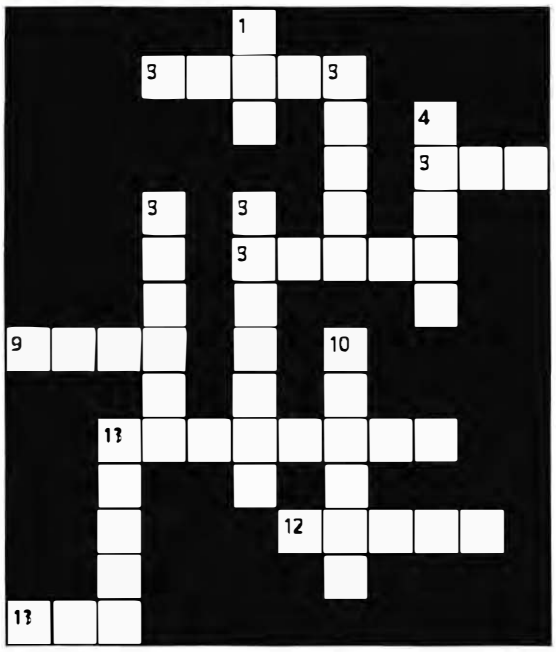
**1 Write *a lot*, *a lot of*, *a bit*, or *a bit of*.**

▶ It rained a lot yesterday – I couldn't go out.
1 It's _____ wet today.
2 There was _____ fog this morning. I couldn't see where I was driving.
3 It snows _____ in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
4 There's _____ rain, but it's not much. You don't need your umbrella.
5 It snowed _____ last night – only two centimetres.
6 We had _____ sun yesterday – from morning to evening. It was lovely.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the crossword.**



Across

2 The wind _____ more in autumn.
5 Noun from *icy*.
8 Warm and damp weather feels _____.
9 You need good _____ for skiing.
11 Very cold.
12 It rained a lot – we had _____ rain.
13 Opposite of *wet*.

Down

1 We had a _____ of rain.
3 Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
4 Adjective from *wind*.
6 Rain for a short time.
7 The noise you hear in storms.
10 The sun _____ more in summer.
11 Adjective from *fog*.

## Unit 22

**Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1 – 9.**

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| T | M | X | E | A | R | Z | H | O | S |
| B | A | C | K | A | C | H | E | J | O |
| Q | S | O | I | D | O | Y | A | M | R |
| R | I | F | L | U | L | Y | D | Z | E |
| U | C | J | A | H | D | E | A | K | T |
| I | K | W | E | S | B | I | C | R | H |
| T | O | O | T | H | A | C | H | E | R |
| A | S | V | E | C | E | G | E | L | O |
| F | H | U | R | T | S | D | E | M | A |
| R | S | K | E | V | W | E | L | L | T |

▶ I've got a cold.
1 I've got a _____
2 I've got a _____
3 I've got _____
4 I've got _____
5 I've got _____
6 I feel _____
7 I don't feel _____
8 My arm _____
9 I've got a pain in my _____

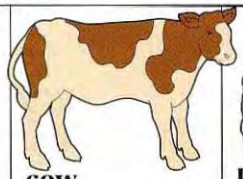
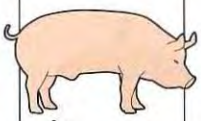
## Unit 23

**Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).**

Ch Good morning, can I ▶ help you?
C I need (1) _____ for a sore throat.
Ch Right. (2) _____ these (3) _____ – they're excellent.
C OK, how (4) _____ do I (5) _____ them?
Ch (6) _____ one now, and then every two hours.
C OK, and (7) _____ I have a (8) _____ of tissues, and some cough (9) _____, please?
Ch Yes, of course.


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 24 I can name meat and fish

| animal |  cow | lamb/sheep |  pig | chicken | duck |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| meat | beef | lamb | pork | chicken | duck |

Do you eat pork or bacon?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

**spotlight** *pig*

From a **pig** we also get:

ham

bacon

sausages

**fish**

salmon

tuna

**seafood**

squid

prawns

crab

mussels

**1** Which one is different? Why?

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ cow sheep salmon pig | Salmon | , because it's a fish. |
| 1 cow pig pork sheep | | , because |
| 2 ham lamb sausages bacon | | , because |
| 3 lamb pork beef tuna | | , because |
| 4 salmon prawns mussels squid | | , because |
| 5 duck cow lamb chicken | | , because |

**2** Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood.

▶ lamb 1 _ee_ 2 _or_ 3 _un_ 4 _uc_ 5 _ra_

**3** Write the word for the meat or fish.

▶ beef

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

▶
1

2

6

3

4

5

**4** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

Do you like:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 bacon? _____ | 4 mussels? _____ | 7 prawns? _____ |
| 2 beef? _____ | 5 crab? _____ | 8 duck? _____ |
| 3 squid? _____ | 6 tuna? _____ | 9 lamb? _____ |

**5** Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 25 I can **name fruit and vegetables**

## A Fruit

banana

orange

peach

apple

pear

lemon

mango

strawberry

cherry

melon

grapes

pineapple

avocado

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **taste** | *This juice **tastes** of orange and lemon.* | = it's like orange and lemon when you drink it |
| **sweet** | *Strawberries are very **sweet**.* | tasting of sugar |
| **bitter** | *Lemons are very **bitter**.* | OPP **sweet** |
| **fresh** | *I eat a lot of **fresh** fruit.* | not old and not from a **tin** |

**1** Find the end of each word.

banana / grapesmelonlemonavocadostrawberrycherrypineapplepearorangepeachapple

**2** Answer the questions.

▶ Are strawberries red or green? red
1 Are peaches sweet or bitter? _____
2 Are lemons sweet or bitter? _____
3 Are cherries red or green? _____
4 Are avocados red or green? _____
5 Are grapes big or small? _____
6 Is fresh fruit good or bad? _____
7 Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter? _____
8 Are melons big or small? _____

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**

Use the cover card to test yourself.

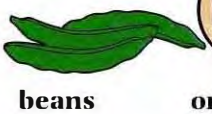
Write down new words in a notebook.



www.hellooteacher.ir

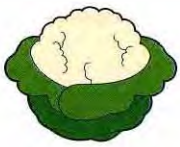
## B Vegetables

potato

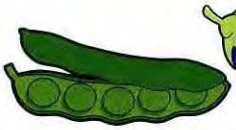

beans

onion

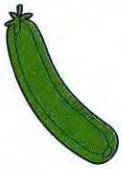
carrot


cauliflower

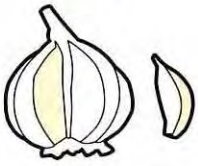
cabbage


peas

aubergine


conrgette

mushroom


garlic (clove)

chilli

lettuce

tomato

cucumber

red and green pepper

raw

frozen

cooked

**spotlight** *salad*

A **salad** can have different raw vegetables in it. It usually has lettuce, and often has tomatoes and cucumber. Red pepper, carrots or onion are also possible.
A **salad** is often part of a meal.

**4** **Make the names of vegetables from the letters.**

▶ sape peas
1 ractor _____
2 nonio _____
3 prepep _____
4 gacabeb _____
5 naseb _____
6 roucteget _____
7 motaot _____
8 ragcil _____

**5** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ Carrots are small and round. F
1 People often eat raw potatoes. _____
2 Chillies make your mouth hot. _____
3 Lettuce is often frozen. _____
4 Cauliflower is white. _____
5 Peas are often frozen. _____
6 You often have tomatoes in a salad. _____
7 Salad is often cooked. _____

**6** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

Do you eat these things in your country? Answer *'Yes, a lot,' 'Yes,' 'Yes, but not much,'* or *'No, we don't.'*

1 raw cabbage _____
2 garlic _____
3 cherries _____
4 frozen carrots _____
5 mushrooms _____
6 aubergine _____
7 cucumber _____
8 avocado _____
9 mangoes _____
10 fresh pineapple _____
11 lettuce _____
12 courgette _____

**7** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**



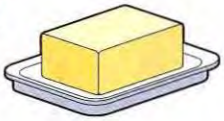
www.hellooteacher.ir

# 26 I can **buy food in a shop**

## A Food

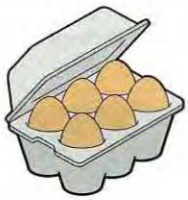
**milk** U

**bread** U



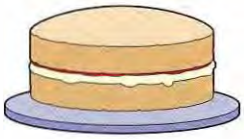
**butter** U

a **piece** of **cheese** U



**eggs**

**sugar** U



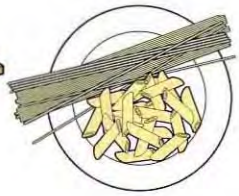
a **cake**

**jam** U

**biscuits**

**olive oil** U

**rice** U



**pasta** U

**olives**

**noodles**

a **bar** of **chocolate** U

**spotlight** **Uncountable nouns**

The nouns with a U are usually uncountable:
***butter*** or ***some butter*** NOT ~~*a butter/butters*~~
*This bread* ***is*** *nice.* NOT ~~*These breads are nice.*~~
We can make uncountable nouns countable:
***a piece of*** *cheese* ***a bar of*** *chocolate*

**1** **Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.**

- ▶ some oil ✓
- ▶ a milk ✗ milk/some milk
- 1 biscuits _____
- 2 a piece of cheese _____
- 3 a butter _____
- 4 cakes _____
- 5 a cheese _____
- 6 some sugar _____
- 7 eggs _____
- 8 a bread _____
- 9 pasta _____
- 10 rices _____
- 11 a jam _____
- 12 olives _____

**2** **Complete the words.**

- ▶ br e a d
- 1 mi _ _
- 2 some ch _ _ _ _
- 3 sug _ _
- 4 bis _ _ _ _ _
- 5 some olive _ _ _
- 6 six e _ _ _
- 7 but _ _ _
- 8 ri _ _
- 9 a large bar of ch _ _ _ _ _ _ _
- 10 noo _ _ _ _

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Containers and quantities

a **carton** of juice

a **packet** of rice and a packet of biscuits

a **jar** of jam and a jar of olives

a **tin** of tomatoes

a **can** of soda

a **bottle** of wine

a **box** of chocolates and a box of **matches**

100 **grams**
100 g

200 grams

**half a kilo**

a kilo
1 kg

half **a litre**
500 ml

a litre
1 l

**spotlight** ***tin* and *can***

We usually say **tin** when there is food inside, and we say **can** when there is something to drink inside.
*A **tin** of tuna.*
*A **can** of beer.*

**4** **Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ There's a jar of jam. T
1 There's a box of chocolates. _____
2 There's a bottle of water. _____
3 There's a packet of sugar. _____
4 There's a can of cola. _____
5 There's a jar of coffee. _____
6 There's a box of matches. _____
7 There's a carton of milk. _____
8 There's a jar of olives. _____
9 There's a tin of peas. _____
10 There's a packet of rice. _____

**5** **Complete the phrases with a suitable word.**

▶ Can you buy a packet of rice at the shops, please?
1 I bought my sister a lovely _____ of chocolates.
2 Can I have a _____ of strawberry jam, please?
3 We need a _____ of olive oil.
4 There's a _____ of orange juice in the fridge.
5 For four people, we'll need a _____ of chicken.
6 Can I open this _____ of chocolate biscuits?
7 I'd like 200 _____ of ham, please.
8 I think there's a _____ of noodles in the cupboard.
9 He drinks half a _____ of milk for breakfast.
10 I went out and bought a _____ of wine.

**6** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.**

www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Buying food

Shop assistant (SA) Customer (C)

C **Could I have** a kilo of onions, **please**?
SA Right.
C And **have you got any** peaches?
SA Yes. **How many** would you like?
C I'd like four, please. Are they **ripe**?
SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?
C No, **that's all, thanks.**

C **I'd like** some cheese, **please.**
SA Sure. What would you like?
C Oh, that Brie looks nice.
SA Yes, it is. **How much** would you like?
C About 200 grams.
SA Right. This piece is **just over.**
C That's fine.
SA OK. **Anything else**?
C No, **that's it, thanks.**

**7** Complete the dialogues.

▶ A Yes?
B I'd like six pears, please.

1 A Have you _____ any apples?
B Yes. How _____ would you like?

2 A I'd like some ham, please.
B How _____ ?
A Oh, about 200 grams.
B Of course. Anything _____ ?
A No, _____ it, thanks.

3 A _____ I have half a kilo of onions?
B Sure. That's _____ under half.
A Yeah, that's fine.

4 A I'd _____ a melon, but these don't look _____ .
B No, they need two or three more days.
A OK.

### Glossary

**Could I have ...?** This is another polite way to say 'I want'.
**Have you got any ...?** = Do you have any... ?
**ripe** If something is ripe, you can eat it now.
**that's it** OR **that's all** = I don't want any more things.
**I'd like** = I would like (This is a polite way to say 'I want'.)
**just over** a little more than OPP **just under**
**Anything else?** = Do you want any more things?

### spotlight *how much* and *how many*

We use **how much** with uncountable nouns and **how many** with countable nouns:
**How much** *butter do you want?*
**How many** *apples do we need?*

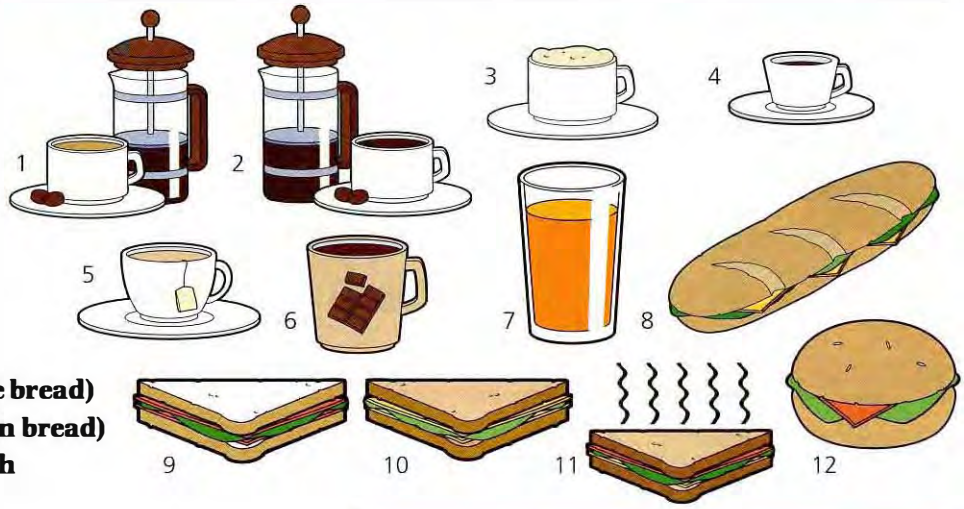
**8** Make sentences from the words.

▶ it / that's / thanks That's it, thanks.
1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I / ? _____
2 please / some / like / I'd / sugar _____
3 got / ham / you / any / have / ? _____
4 much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ? _____
5 that's / kilo / just / half / a / over _____
6 oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ? _____


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 27 I can order in a café Do Unit 26 first

1 **(white) coffee**
2 **black coffee**
3 **cappuccino**
4 **espresso**
5 **tea (with milk)**
6 **hot chocolate**
7 **orange juice**
8 **baguette**
9 **sandwich (white bread)**
10 **sandwich (brown bread)**
11 **toasted sandwich**
12 **roll**



A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

W **Yes, please?**
C **I'd like** a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
W Is that to eat here or **take away**?
C To eat here.
W OK. Anything else?
C Yes, **two coffees**, please, and a cappuccino.
W OK. The food will be **a couple of minutes**. **Have a seat.**

## Glossary

**I'd like** = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want')
**take away** eat in another place (not in the café)
**two coffees** two cups of coffee (also two **teas**, etc.)
**a couple of minutes** two or three minutes
**have a seat** sit down

**spotlight** ***Yes, please?* and *Yes, please.***

**Yes, please?** = 'What would you like?'
**Yes, please** is a polite way to say 'yes'.

**1** **Find the end of each word.**

1 You can have a (roll) baguette sandwich toasted sandwich.
2 You can have a cappuccino tea orange juice espresso black coffee.

**2** **Complete the phrases.**

▶ a ham sandwich
1 brown _____
2 a toasted _____
3 hot _____
4 black _____
5 eat here or _____
6 a _____ of minutes
7 brown or _____ bread?
8 black or _____ coffee?
9 _____ a seat, please.

**3** **Add one word to each line of the conversation.**

W Please? ▶ Yes, please?
C I like two coffees please. 1 _____
W To drink here or away? 2 _____
C To drink here. And a toasted ham. 3 _____
W OK. It will be a couple minutes. 4 _____
Have seat, please. 5 _____

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 28 I can order in a restaurant

Do Units 25, 26, and 27 first

## A The table

1 **glass** of **red wine**
2 **salt** and **(black) pepper**
3 **bottle** of **mineral water**
4 **oil**
5 **vinegar**
6 **glass** of **white wine**
7 **napkin**
8 **bowl**
9 **plate**
10 **fork**
11 **knife**
12 **spoon**

**1** Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a k_ _ fe, (1) f_ _k, and (2) s_ _ _n, and a (3) n_ _ _ _n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p_ _ _ _e and a (5) b_ _l. To drink, there's a (6) b_ _ _ _ _e of (7) m_ _ _ _ _ _l w_ _ _ _r, and two (8) g_ _ _ _ _s of (9) w_ _e: one (10) r_d and the other (11) w_ _ _e. There is also some (12) s_ _ _t and (13) b_ _ _k p_ _ _ _ _r, and little (14) b_ _ _ _ _s of (15) o_l and (16) v_ _ _ _ _r.

**2** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.**

On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have _____

_____

We don't usually have _____

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.**

## B What shall we have?

**boiled** rice

**fried** eggs

**grilled** fish

**roast** chicken

**Steak** can be:

rare → medium → well done

www.hellooteacher.ir

## MENU

### Starters

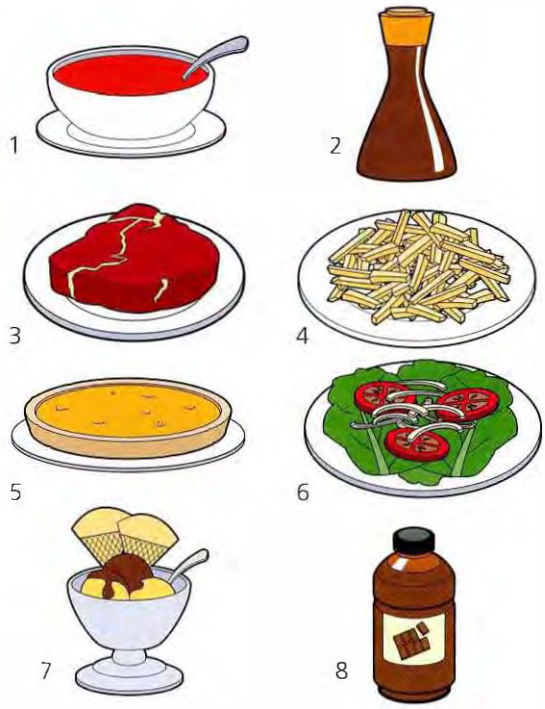
Tomato **soup**[1]
Grilled prawns in **soy sauce**[2]
Mussels in white wine and garlic

### Main courses

Pan fried tuna with green beans
**Fillet steak**[3] with **chips**[4] and mushrooms
Roast duck with cabbage and peas
Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes
Cheese **tart**[5] with **mixed salad**[6]

### Desserts

Apple tart
**Ice cream**[7] with chocolate **sauce**[8]




**4** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ You eat the starter after the main course. F
1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. _____
2 You eat the main course before dessert. _____
3 Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in. _____
4 You eat soup and chips in the same bowl. _____
5 The list of food to eat is called a menu. _____
6 Dessert is the first thing you eat. _____
7 You can roast a chicken or a duck. _____
8 You can boil rice or potatoes. _____
9 Fillet steak comes from a pig. _____
10 You can have cheese tart or apple tart. _____

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

**5** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I'd like roast chicken.
1 I love ice c_____.
2 Could I have fillet s_____?
3 I'd like a mixed s_____.
4 My starter was tomato s_____.
5 What's your main c_____?
6 Pass me the soy s_____.
7 Do you like your steak well d_____?
8 I had chicken with b_____ rice.

**6** ABOUT YOU **Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.**

Which starter would you like? _____
Which main course would you like? _____
Which dessert would you like? _____

**7** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Customer and waiter

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

W **Are you ready to order?**
C Yes, **I'll have** the fillet steak.
W And **how would you like** your steak?
C Rare, please. And I'd like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
W **Still** or **sparkling**?
C Sparkling.
W Fine.

*Later in the **meal** ...*
C Could I have **another** glass of wine?
W Yes, **of course.**
C Oh, and **some more** water, please.
W **Certainly.**
...
W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have **the bill**, please?
W Yes, **sure.**

### Glossary

**Are you ready to order?** = Do you know what you want to eat?
**I'll have steak** = I'd like steak. OR I want steak.
**How would you like your steak?** = Would you like your steak rare, medium or well done?
**still water** water without gas
**sparkling water** water with gas
**meal** Breakfast, lunch and dinner are **meals**.
**of course/sure/certainly** These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem.'
**the bill** a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

**8** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ I like/(I'd like) a coffee.
1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
2 Are you ready order/to order?
3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
5 Yes, course/of course.
6 Could I have a/the bill, please?
7 I/I'll have the prawns, please.
8 Yes, certainly/certain.

**spotlight** ***another* or *some more***

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns, e.g. ***another*** *glass/biscuit/apple.*
Say **some more** with uncountable nouns, e.g. ***some more*** *water/wine/bread.*

**9** **Complete the conversations.**

Conversation 1
W Are you ▶ ready to order?
C Yes, I'll (1) _____ the steak.
W And (2) _____ would you like it?
C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
W Yes, of (3) _____. Still or (4) _____?
C Still, please.

Conversation 2
C Could I have (5) _____ more water, please?
W Certainly. And would you like a (6) _____?
C Yes, I (7) _____ have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) _____?
W Yes, (9) _____.


www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Food and drink

## Unit 24

**Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.**

chicken ✓ squid crab beef duck pig tuna mussels pork
sheep lamb salmon cow prawns ham

| Animal | Meat | Fish | Seafood |
|---|---|---|---|
| chicken | chicken | | |

## Unit 25

**1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.**

| red | yellow | orange | white/cream | green |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ red pepper | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

**2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| T | A | E | L | F | R | E | S | H |
| M | U | S | H | R | O | O | M | C |
| A | B | I | P | O | T | A | T | O |
| N | E | R | I | P | E | M | B | O |
| G | R | A | P | E | S | E | E | K |
| O | G | W | U | N | A | L | A | E |
| T | I | R | L | E | M | O | N | D |
| O | N | I | O | N | A | N | S | E |
| P | E | A | R | S | W | E | E | T |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 26

**1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.**

sugar ✓ orange juice matches water butter olive oil pasta jam
tomatoes wine rice milk olives chocolates biscuits eggs tuna

| Packet | Carton | Box | Bottle | Jar | Tin |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sugar | | | | | |

**2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.**

▶ Yes, we have.
1 Could _____
2 I'd _____
3 Have _____
4 Anything _____
5 That's _____
6 How _____

like
any have
I got it please
some you much
sugar else we
thanks would

# Unit 27

**Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).**

▶ W please / yes / ? Yes, please?
1 C sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd _____
2 W that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ? _____
3 C away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take _____
4 W else / fine / anything / ? _____
5 C coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas _____
6 W be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple _____
7 W seat / a / have _____


www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 28

**1 Complete the sentences.**

▶ Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and dinner.

1 Three things you eat with: knife, _____, and _____.

2 Three parts in a meal: starter, _____, and _____.

3 Three ways to cook food: grilled, _____, and _____.

4 Three ways to cook steak: rare, _____, and _____.

5 Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and _____.

6 Two things you put on salad: oil and _____.

7 Two things people drink: red wine and _____ wine.

8 Two types of mineral water: still and _____.

**2 A waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.**

▶ C Could I see the/please? menu

1 W Are you ready to? _____

C Yes, I have the tomato soup. _____

W Right. And for your course? _____

C Fillet with chips. _____

2 W Do you want red wine or wine? _____

C Red, please. _____

W OK. Is that a or just a glass? _____

3 *At the end of the.* _____

C Could I have the, please? _____

W Yes, of. _____

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

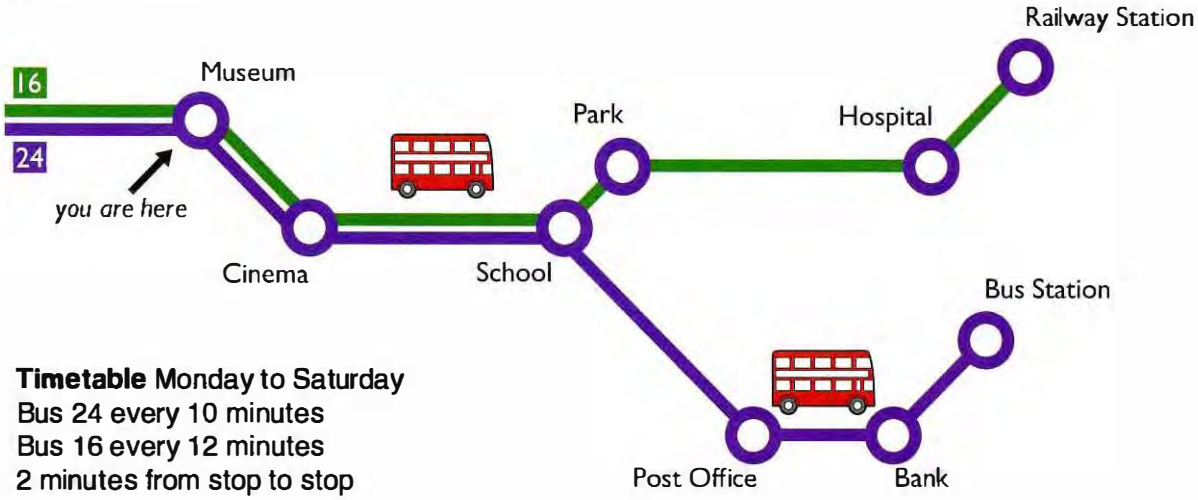
Test yourself, using the cover card.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 29 I can get around on buses

Bus **routes** 24 and 16

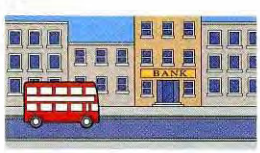



**Timetable** Monday to Saturday
Bus 24 every 10 minutes
Bus 16 every 12 minutes
2 minutes from stop to stop

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| **Excuse me**, which bus do I **get** to the park? | The 16. |
| Does the 24 **go** to the railway station? | No, it doesn't. |
| Does the 24 stop **near** the bank? | Yes, it does. |
| Does the 16 stop **outside** the park? | Yes, it does. |
| How often does the 16 **run**? | **Every** 12 minutes. |
| How many **stops** is it to the park? | Three. |
| Which is the **last stop** for the 24? | The bus station. |
| Where do I **get off** for the cinema? | At the **next stop**. |
| **How long does it take** to the bus station? | **It takes** about ten minutes. |

## Glossary

**excuse me** We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don't know.
**get a bus, train, etc.** travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take)
**go** travel
**near**




**outside**

**run** travel on a route (bus, train)
**every** (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc.
**(bus) stop** the place where you get on or off a bus
**last stop** the bus stop at the end of the route
**get off** leave the bus OPP **get on**
**next stop** the first stop after now

## spotlight *How long does it take?*

**How long?** = How much time?
***How long does it take*** *(to get) to the station?*
~ ***It takes*** *about 10 minutes.*
~ ***It doesn't take long***. = It takes a short time.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**1** **Write the words in the correct order to make questions.**

▶ near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the / ? Does the 24 stop near the bank?

1 stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the / ? _____

2 school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the / ? _____

3 take / long / how / does / to / railway station / it / the / ? _____

4 post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the / ? _____

5 off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the / ? _____

6 park / the 24 / does / to / go / the / ? _____

7 often / run / does / the 24 / how / ? _____

8 which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 / the / ? _____

**2** **Answer the questions in Exercise 1, using the bus information on page 78. Remember, you are at the museum.**

▶ Yes, it does.

1 _____.

2 _____.

3 _____ minutes.

4 _____.

5 _____ stop.

6 _____.

7 _____ minutes.

8 _____.

**3** **Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 78.**

There are two bus ▶ routes : the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first (1) _____ is the museum, and the (2) _____ stop is the cinema; the (3) _____ stop is the bus station, where everybody has to (4) _____ the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it (5) _____ to the railway station. The (6) _____ tells you how often the buses (7) _____. The 24 bus (8) _____ (9) _____ ten minutes. It (10) _____ two minutes to get from the school to the park.

**4** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If yes, where is it exactly? _____

2 Which buses stop there? _____

3 How often do they run? _____

4 Do you often get the bus? If yes, where to? _____

5 How many stops is it? _____

6 How long does it take? _____

**5** **Test yourself. Cover the answers on page 78 and look at the questions and the bus route. Can you answer the questions?**

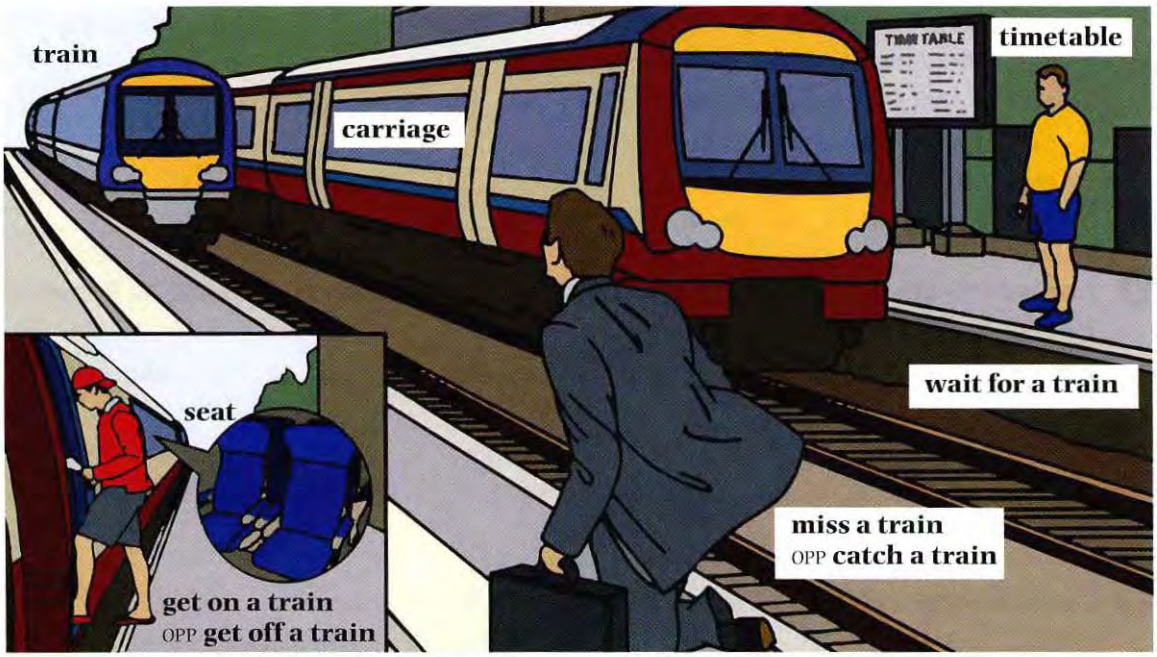
Practise the questions using the CD-ROM.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 30 I can get around on trains Do Unit 29 first

## A Train vocabulary




### Glossary

**get/take a train** travel by train
**the 12 o'clock train** the train that leaves at 12.00
**journey** when you travel from A to B
**fare** money you pay to travel
**a fast train** OPP **a slow train**
**(railway) station** a place where trains stop and people get on and off

### spotlight *last*

**Last** has different meanings:
1 final *The **last** train leaves at 11.30 p.m.*
= There are no trains after 11.30 p.m.
2 most recent *My **last** train journey was two weeks ago.*

**1** Answer the questions.

▶ What's another verb for *get a train*? take a train
1 What's the opposite of *a fast train*? _____
2 What's the opposite of *get on the train*? _____
3 What's the opposite of *miss a train*? _____
4 What's another way of saying *the train that leaves at 7*? _____
5 What do you sit on in a train? _____
6 Where do you catch a train? _____

**2** Complete the sentences.

▶ We can get the 7.45 train.
1 How much was the train _____?
2 Our seats are in the second _____.
3 Sorry I'm late. I _____ the train to Zug.
4 We can _____ a train.
5 The _____ train is at 12.00p.m.
6 We _____ for the train in the café.
7 Have a look at the _____.
I think there's a train to London at 6.15.
8 It's a long _____ from Lisbon to Paris.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** (P) is talking to someone at the **ticket office** (O) at Bristol Station.

P A **single** to Cardiff, please.
O That's £10, please.
P Right, and when's the **next** train?
O There's one at 10.07.
P Fine. Do I have to **change**?
O No, it's **direct**.
P That's good. And when does it **get to** Cardiff?
O 10.56.
P OK. And which **platform** is it?
O Platform 6.
P Right, thanks.

### Glossary

**passenger** a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.
**ticket office** the place where you buy tickets in a station
**single** OR **single ticket** a ticket for a journey from A to B (A **return** is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)
**next** The **next** train is the first one after now.
**change trains** get off one train and get on another
**direct** A journey is **direct** if you don't need to change trains.
**get to** arrive at or in OPP **leave**
**platform** the part of the station where you get on and off the train

### spotlight *book something in advance*

If you **book a seat (in advance)**, you buy a ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. In a hotel, you can **book a room (in advance)**, and in a restaurant you can **book a table**. You can also say **reserve a seat** or **room** or **table**.

**3** **Complete the questions using words from the box.**

direct London office train is it ✓ return advance seat

▶ Which platform is it ?
1 Can I book in _____ ?
2 Do you want a single or _____ ?
3 Is the train _____ ?
4 When do we get to _____ ?
5 Where's the ticket _____ ?
6 When's the next _____ ?
7 Can I reserve a _____ ?

**4** **Look at the timetable and complete the text.**

| Platform | Cheltenham | Kemble | London Paddington |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | 8.35 | ☒ 9.08<br>9.18 | ☒ 10.40 |

I'm going from Cheltenham to London tomorrow. There isn't a ▶ direct train, so I have to (1) _____ at Kemble. The train (2) _____ Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3) _____ 2, and it (4) _____ to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to catch the 9.18, which gets (5) _____ London Paddington at 10.40. A (6) _____ ticket costs £22, but I can get a return for £40 if I book in (7) _____ .

**5** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 When was your last train journey? _____
2 Where did you go, and why? _____
3 What was the fare? _____
4 Did you book in advance? _____
5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 31 I can ask for and give directions

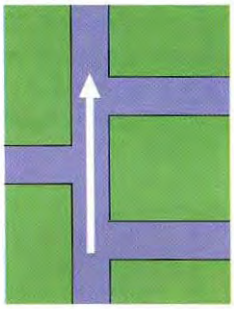
**Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?**

**Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?**

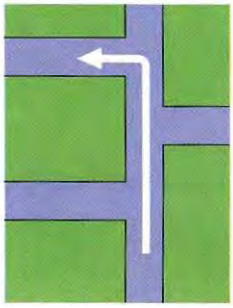
**Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?**

**spotlight** *Excuse me...*

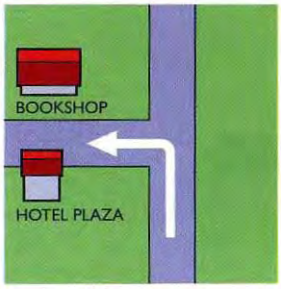
It is polite to say **excuse me** to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.



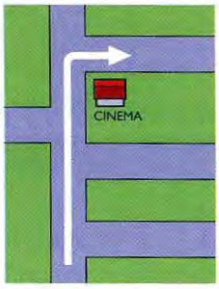
**Go straight on.** OR **Just keep going.**
It's about ten minutes.



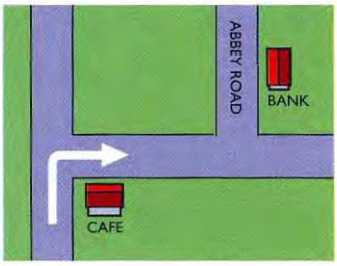
Go along here and **take the second turning on the left.**




**Go along here** and **turn left.**
The bookshop is **opposite** the Hotel Plaza.




It's **the third turning on the right.**
There's a cinema **on the corner.**




**Turn right** at the café, then **left into** Abbey Road, and the bank is **on your right.**

**Thanks very much.**

www.hellooteacher.ir

## 1 Make sentences from the words.

▶ turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.

1 excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how / to / ? _____

2 here / left / along / and / turn / go _____

3 bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here / ? _____

4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third _____

5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you / ? _____

6 left / Road / into / Foster / turn _____

## 2 Complete the phrases.

▶ Turn left or right .

1 Take the second _____ .

2 Thanks very _____ .

3 On the _____ .

4 Excuse _____ .

5 Keep _____ .

6 Go straight _____ .

7 Go along _____ .

8 Do you know the _____ ?

## 3 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

1 A Excuse ▶ me . How do I (1) _____ to the cinema from here?

B OK. Go (2) _____ on, and it's the second... no, the third (3) _____ on the (4) _____ .

A Thanks very (5) _____ .

B You're welcome.

2 A (1) _____ me. Is there a post office (2) _____ here?

B Yes. Go (3) _____ here and (4) _____ the second (5) _____ on the (6) _____ . The post office is (7) _____ the bank.

A (8) _____ very much.

B That's OK. No problem.

3 A Excuse me. Do you know the (1) _____ to the Bonham Hotel?

B No, I'm sorry, I don't.

A OK. Thanks... Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?

C Yes. (2) _____ left (3) _____ Frith Street and the hotel is on the next (4) _____ on your (5) _____ .

A Thanks very much.

B Not at all.

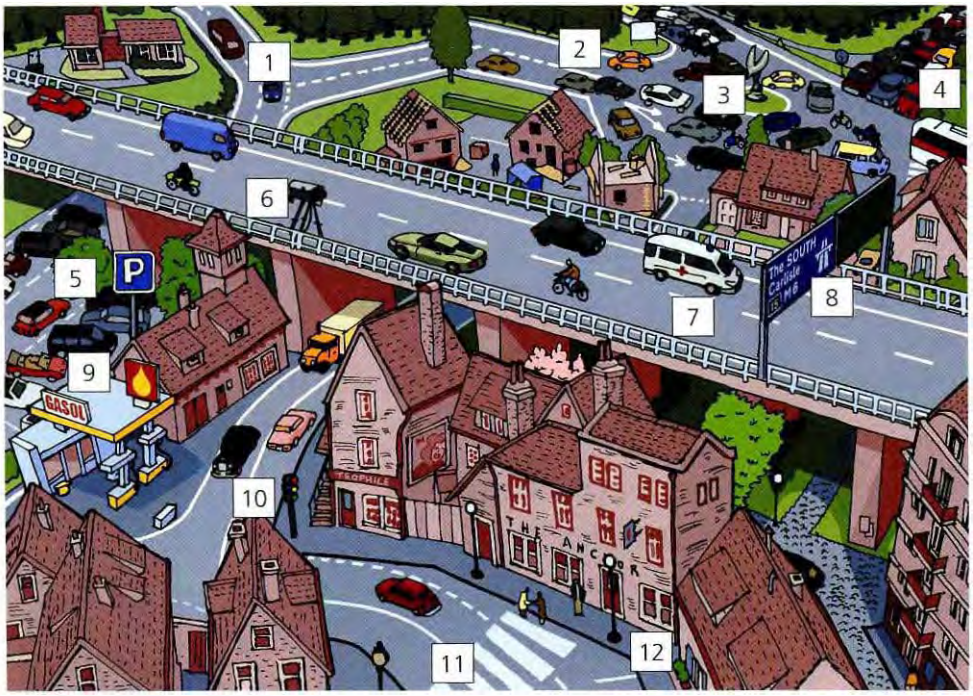
## 4 Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 32 I can talk about roads and traffic

## A In town




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 **junction** | 4 **traffic jam** | 7 **main road** | 10 **traffic light(s)** |
| 2 **traffic** U | 5 **car park** | 8 **road sign** | 11 **pedestrian crossing** |
| 3 **roundabout** | 6 **speed camera** | 9 **petrol station** | 12 **pavement** |

**1** Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ traffic park/(light)
- 1 petrol station/jam
- 2 main sign/road
- 3 speed light/camera
- 4 road camera/sign
- 5 pedestrian crossing/park
- 6 car road/park
- 7 traffic jam/crossing

**2** Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You can go – the traffic light _____ is green.
- 1 Where's the nearest petrol _____ ?
- 2 We live on a noisy _____ road.
- 3 Can you read that road _____ ?
- 4 The car _____ was full, so we parked on the street.
- 5 Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian _____ .
- 6 Be careful! There are _____ cameras on the main road.
- 7 At the _____ , do we go left, right or straight on?
- 8 The _____ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
- 9 Walk on the _____ , not in the road!
- 10 Drive slowly and turn left at the next _____ .

**3** **Test yourself.** Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Out of town

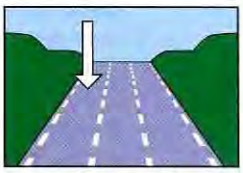
Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

M **How far is it** from London to Bath?
B It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres.
M And what's the best way to get there?
B Right. **Take** the M4 **motorway** from London. At junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
M Thanks. And what's the **speed limit** on motorways here?
B 70 **miles an hour**. That's about 110 **kilometres an hour.**
M OK. And are they very **busy**?
B Yes, and you get traffic jams in the **rush hour** – especially when there's an **accident**.
M But you still use the motorway?
B Yes, because there are three **lanes** on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to **overtake.** Oh, and Marco – remember to **drive** on the left!

### Glossary

**How far is it?** = How many kilometres or miles is it?
**take the M4** go on to and travel on the M4
**motorway** a large, fast road between towns
**speed limit** the fastest speed you are permitted to go
**busy** A busy road has a lot of cars on it. OPP **quiet**
**rush hour** the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work
accident

lane



**overtake** pass another car by going faster
**drive** go somewhere in your car

**4** Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.

▶ The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines. lane
1 A large, fast road between two towns. _____
2 The busy time when people go to work. _____
3 Pass another car by driving faster. _____
4 The fastest speed you are permitted to go. _____
5 When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash. _____
6 The opposite of *a busy road*. _____

**5** Complete the sentences.

▶ You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
1 It's a very _____ road in the rush hour.
2 Go into the fast _____ when you _____ other cars on the motorway.
3 How _____ is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
4 The best way to get to the airport is to _____ the M25. Oh, remember to _____ on the left!

**6** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 How many lanes do motorways have? _____
2 What's the speed limit on motorways? _____
3 Do you have speed cameras on roads? _____
4 Do you drive on the left in your country? _____
5 When's the rush hour? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

# 33 I can understand signs and notices

| Sign or notice | Where? | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **ladies gents toilet** | in a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc. | |
| **entrance** or **way in** | in a car park, museum, cinema, etc. | Go in here. |
| **exit** or **way out** | | Go out or leave here. |
| **no entry** | | You can't go in here. |
| **no exit** | | You can't go out here. |
| **no smoking** | in a cinema, restaurant, etc. | You can't smoke here. |
| **no parking** | in the street, or in front of a garage or entrance | You can't leave your car here. |
| **please do not disturb** | hotel room door | I'm sleeping, so don't come in. |
| **queue here** | at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office | Wait in a line here. |
| **nothing to declare** | at an airport | you have no tax to pay |
| **sale** | in a shop window | period when a shop sells things at a lower price than normal |
| **out of order** | on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc. | This isn't working. OR It's broken. |
| **please ring for attention** | at reception in a hotel, office, etc. | Ring the **bell** and somebody will come. |
| **no vacancies** | in the window of a small hotel | The hotel is full. |

**1** Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

- ▶ No smoking d
- 1 No parking ____
- 2 Toilet ____
- 3 Queue here ____
- 4 Out of order ____
- 5 Please do not disturb ____
- 6 Sale ____
- 7 Entrance ____
- 8 No vacancies ____
- 9 Please ring for attention ____

- a in a hotel reception
- b on a hotel room door
- c on a drinks machine
- d in a café ✓
- e in a shop window
- f in front of a garage
- g in a hotel window
- h at the back of a restaurant
- i at the front door of a museum
- j inside a post office

**2** Complete the signs in different ways.

- ▶ No smoking
- 1 No ____
- 2 Way ____
- 3 Please ____
- 4 No ____
- 5 Way ____
- 6 Please ____
- 7 Nothing to ____

**3** Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Getting around

## Unit 29

**Correct the mistakes.**

▶ Where do I get out the bus for the park? Where do I get off the bus for the park?

1 This bus go to The National Museum? _____

2 How many stopping is it to the railway station? _____

3 Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road? _____

4 How long does it make to get to the centre? _____

5 Does the 31 stop next the post office? _____

6 Does the 9 stop outside from the school? _____

7 The which bus do I get to Queen Street? _____

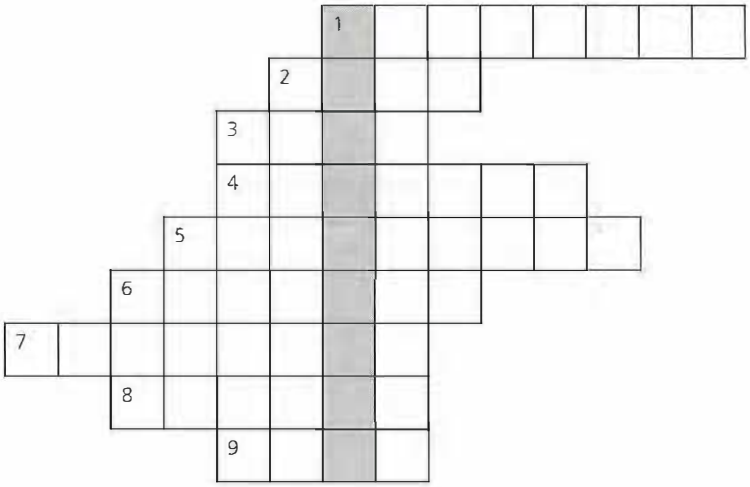
8 Do the buses run all ten minutes? _____

9 How long time does it take to the centre? _____

10 What often do the buses run? _____

## Unit 30

**1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?**




1 The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
2 The opposite of *slow*.
3 If you get to the station late, you could _____ your train.
4 Book (a seat).
5 This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
6 When you travel from one place to another.
7 Part of the train where people sit.
8 A single or return _____ .
9 Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word _____ .



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and the assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.**

Bristol – Manchester (change at Birmingham)
9.58 (platform 4) gets to Birmingham 11.26
train leaves Birmingham 11.48 – arrives Manchester 1.23
single £40, return £75

P ▶ Single _____ to Manchester, please.
A That's £40, please.
P When's the (1) _____ _____ ?
A 9.58.
P Is it (2) _____ _____ ?
A No, you have to (3) _____ _____ at Birmingham.
P OK. And when does the Manchester train (4) _____ _____ ?
A At 11.48.
P And when does it (5) _____ _____ Manchester?
A 1.23 p.m.
P Right, and which (6) _____ is that?
A Four.

## Unit 31

**1 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.**

▶ Take the second turning the left. On _____
1 The bank is on right. _____
2 How do I get the river? _____
3 Go along and turn left. _____
4 Go straight and turn right. _____
5 Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? _____
6 Yes, it's the corner of this street. _____

**2 Cross out one word in each sentence to make the sentences correct.**

▶ Turn right into ~~the~~ Duke Street.
1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep to going.
3 Is there a post office near from here?
4 It's on the your left.
5 Turn to left and go straight on.
6 It's the third turning on the right side.


www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 32

**1 Tick (✓)true or false.**

| | TRUE | FALSE |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ You put money in a traffic light. | | ✓ |
| 1 A motorway is bigger than a main road. | | |
| 2 You walk on a pedestrian crossing. | | |
| 3 You drive your car on the pavement. | | |
| 4 Road signs tell you what to do. | | |
| 5 Roads are quiet in the rush hour. | | |
| 6 You can get a train at a petrol station. | | |
| 7 If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy. | | |
| 8 Motorways have more than one lane. | | |
| 9 It's a good idea to overtake at a junction. | | |
| 10 Cars drive round a circle at a roundabout. | | |

**2 Complete the radio traffic information.**

We are getting reports of an ▶ accident on the M40 m_____ (1) near Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s_____ l_____ (2) lost control when it was trying to o_____ (3) a bus, and hit two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the a_____ (4), and say the fast l_____ (5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will mean long t_____ j_____ (6) during the r_____ h_____ (7), and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible and to t_____ (8) a different route into Oxford.

# Unit 33

**Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Do we pay for things here? ~ I think so. It says 'queue here'.
1 Can I leave my car here? ~ No, the sign says _____.
2 Can we go in here? ~ Yes, that sign says _____.
3 Let's stay in this hotel. ~ We can't. Look, it says _____.
4 Can we clean this bedroom now? ~ No, it's says _____.
5 Is everything cheaper here this week? ~ Yes, look, it says _____ in the window.
6 Can I use that telephone? ~ No, it says it's _____.
7 Can we go out here? ~ No, that sign says _____.
8 Can I have a cigarette? ~ No. It says _____.

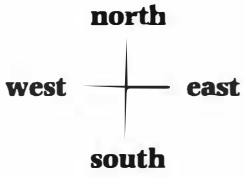
www.hellooteacher.ir

# 34 I can talk about my country

Brazil is **enormous**. The Atlantic **coast**[1] is more than 3,000 **kilometres long**, and **in the north, south**, and **west**, there are **borders**[2] with ten different countries. The longest **river**[3] is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 **metres high**: it's the **highest mountain**[4] in Brazil. The **capital**, Brasilia, is **inland**, but many of the **major** cities are **on the coast**. The most **famous** is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain, Corcovado, and some great **beaches**. It is very **popular** with tourists.

## Glossary

**enormous** very big
**3,000 kilometres long** 3,000 kms from one end to the other
**3,000 metres high** 3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is **high** NOT ~~tall~~.)
**capital** a city where a country has its government
**inland** not near the sea
**major** large and important
**famous** If something is famous, many people know about it. (Rio is famous for Carnival.)
**beach** area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
**popular** If something is popular, many people like it.




**1** **Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.**

▶ The town in the north is Recife.
1 The town in the south is _____.
2 The capital is _____
3 The longest river is the _____
4 The highest mountain is _____
5 In the south, it has a border with _____
6 In the north, it has a border with _____
7 A popular city with tourists is _____
8 It's famous for Sugar Loaf _____.
9 Brasilia isn't near the sea; it's _____
10 Rio is on the _____

**2** **Test yourself. Don't look at Exercise 1. What can you say about these places?**

▶ Recife — It's a town in the north of Brazil.
1 The Amazon
2 Pico da Neblina
3 Brasilia
4 Porto Alegre
5 Argentina
6 Rio de Janeiro

**3** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

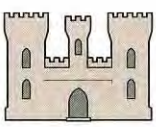
1 What's the capital, and where is it? _____
2 What are some of the other major cities? _____
3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? _____
4 Which places are popular in summer? _____
5 What are the famous places in your capital city? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

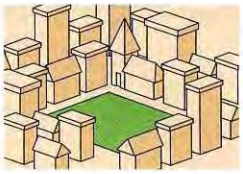
# 35 I can talk about my town Do Unit 34 first

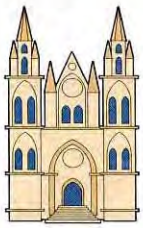
## A Buildings and places in a town


castle

palace

statue


square

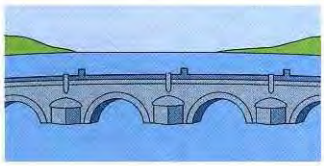

**cathedral** (for Christians)

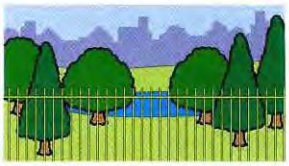
**church** (for Christians)

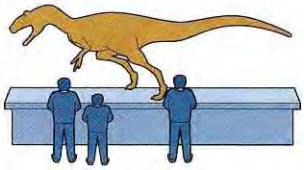
**temple** (e.g. for Hindus and Buddhists)

**mosque** (for Muslims)

**market**


**bridge**


**park**


**museum**

**building** e.g. shop, church, castle NOT square, park, etc.

**1** **Correct the spelling mistakes.**

- ▶ museom . museum .
- 1 brige _____
- 2 scuare _____
- 3 castel _____
- 4 catedral _____
- 5 parque _____
- 6 musque _____
- 7 bilding _____

**spotlight** *place*

We can use **place** as a general word for a town, part of a town, a hotel, etc.
*Prague is **a nice place**.*
*The Ritz is **a great place** to stay.*

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

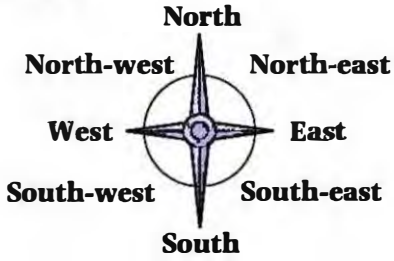
- ▶ My sister got married in our little church .
- 1 I think Buddhists use that _____ .
- 2 The _____ is the best place to see the river.
- 3 The _____ is the cheapest place to buy food.
- 4 You can learn about the history of the town in the local _____ .
- 5 You can see children playing in the _____ from my hotel window.
- 6 There is a _____ of Nelson Mandela in the main _____ .
- 7 The _____ and _____ are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
- 8 The square is a nice _____ to sit and watch people.

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Facts

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **size** | It's a | big/large<br>**medium-sized**<br>small | **city**<br>**town**<br>**village** |
| **location** | It's | **in** the north-east **of** Poland<br>50km west **of** Moscow<br>**on** the coast<br>**on** a river<br>  <br> | |
| **population** | It's | **over**<br>about<br>**just under** } 10,000 | |
| interesting **facts** | It's | famous for its cathedral<br>**modern**<br>**industrial** | |
| | It has | lots of **historic** buildings | |

### Glossary

**fact** a piece of true information
**size** how big or small something is
**city** a very large town, e.g. 2 million people
**town** smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people
**village** smaller than a town, e.g. 1,000 people, and in the countryside.
**location** the place where something is, e.g. 50 kms from Rome
**population** the number of people who live in a place
**over 1 mile** more than 1 mile OPP **under**
**just under** a little under (also **just over**)
**modern** of the present OPP **old**
**industrial** having a lot of industry, e.g. making cars or steel
**historic** important in history

**4** Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east ✓ | on the coast | famous for historic buildings | over two million
an industrial town | just under 50,000 | on the River Duero | a small village
south-west of the capital | about 3,000 | a large city | a medium-sized town

| Size | Location | Population | Interesting facts |
|---|---|---|---|
| | in the north-east | | |

**5** Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large ▶ city , 140 km south-west (1) _____ Milan, (2) _____ the north-west (3) _____ Italy. It is (4) _____ the River Po and three other rivers. The (5) _____ is just (6) _____ one million (in fact, it is 908, 000). It is an (7) _____ city: the car makers, Fiat, are based here, for example, but it also has many (8) _____ buildings, including palaces and castles.

**6** ABOUT YOUR TOWN **Write a similar text about your city/town/village.**

_____

_____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Opinions

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **opinion** | *What's your **opinion of** the new cathedral? ~ I think it's wonderful.* | Your **opinion** is what you think about something; it is not a fact. |
| **busy** | *It's **busy** in the summer when the tourists arrive.* | If a place is **busy**, it is full of people, cars, and activity. OPP **quiet** |
| **crowded** | *The bars get very **crowded** in the evenings.* | full of people or too full of people |
| **polluted**<br>**dirty** | *It's very **polluted** because of all the industry. The buildings are very **dirty**.* | a **polluted** place has **dirty** air, water, etc. OPP **clean** |
| **cosmopolitan** | *London and New York are very **cosmopolitan** cities.* | having people from many different countries living there |
| **there's lots to do** | ***There's lots to do** in the evening – discos, cinemas, and so on.* | = there are many activities and places to visit OPP **there's nothing to do** |
| **nightlife** | *The **nightlife** in my town is very good.* | places to go in the evening: bars, clubs, etc. |
| **safe** | *It's **safe** during the day but can be dangerous at night.* | free from danger. If a town is **safe**, you don't need lots of police. OPP **dangerous** |

**7** Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (✓) yes or no.

| | | YES | NO |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | 'The streets are very dirty.' | | ✓ |
| 1 | 'I think it's very polluted, don't you?' | | |
| 2 | 'There's lots to do during the day.' | | |
| 3 | 'I think the nightlife is great.' | | |
| 4 | 'There's nothing to do at night.' | | |
| 5 | 'It's so clean on the coast.' | | |
| 6 | 'I always feel safe at night.' | | |
| 7 | 'It's a really dangerous city.' | | |

**8** Complete the dialogue.

A What's your ▶ opinion of Walton?
B Well, there are people from all over the world, so it's very (1) _____ – I love that.
A Yes, but is it safe?
B Well, every city is a bit (2) _____ at night, but there's a lot to (3) _____ here, and the (4) _____ is very good – lots of bars and clubs.
A And is it very busy in the centre?
B It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5) _____ at the weekends, with all the tourists. The centre is also quite dirty; the river is (6) _____ because of the industry.

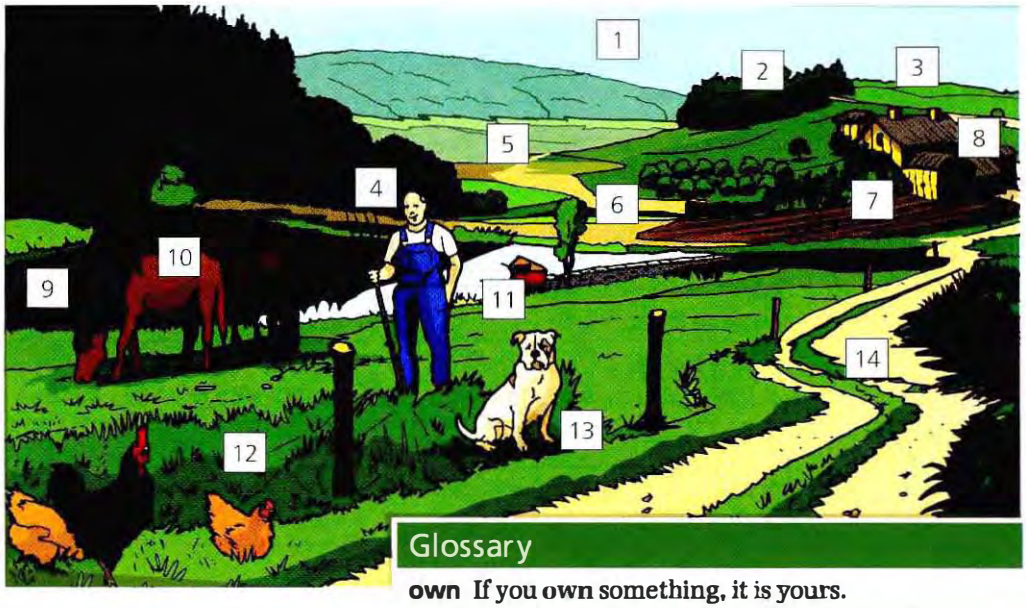
**9** ABOUT YOUR TOWN **Write your opinions, or ask another student.**

1 Is your city/town/village a safe place to live, or is it dangerous? _____
2 What is there to do during the day? _____
3 Is it usually busy or quiet? _____
4 What about the nightlife? _____
5 Is it a very cosmopolitan place? _____
6 Is it a nice place to live? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

# 36 I can describe the countryside

## A On the farm




1 **sky**
2 **wood**
3 **hill**
4 **farmer**
5 **valley**
6 **tree**
7 **field**
8 **farm** (the house and fields)
9 **lake**
10 **horse**
11 **boat**
12 **grass**
13 **dog**
14 **path**

Jack Robson is a farmer. He **owns** Eatwell Farm. He **grows** fruit and **a few** other **crops**.

**Glossary**

**own** If you **own** something, it is yours.
**grow** Farmers **grow** potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.
**a few** some; not a lot
**crop** a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

**1** **Look at the picture and the text. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ There's a lake near the trees. T
1 There is nothing in the field. _____
2 The farmer's in the boat. _____
3 The path goes to the lake. _____
4 The wood is on the hill. _____
5 The dog lives on the farm. _____
6 The horse is eating the grass. _____
7 The sky's grey. _____
8 There are a lot of chickens. _____
9 The farmer grows fruit. _____.

**2** **Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)**

ABOUT YOU

▶ Do you live near a w o o d? Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.
1 Do you live in a v _ ll _ y or on a h _ ll? _____
2 Can you see any gra _ _ where you are now? _____
3 Can you see a f _ w tr _ _ s where you are now? _____
4 Are there any f _ _ _ ds near your home? _____
5 Do you _ wn a d _ g or a h _ rs _ ? _____
6 What cr _ ps do people gr _ w where you live? _____
7 Do you know any f _ r _ e _ s? _____

**3** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.**

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B In the countryside

I live **alone** in a beautiful **area** in **the countryside**. In the mornings, it is so quiet, I sit and listen to the **birds** – it's **wonderful**. I've got a garden with lots of **flowers** and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat **fresh food**, which is very **healthy**. The big problem is that **public transport** is **terrible**, but I've got a **bike** if I need to go to town. And it's a bit **lonely** too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I **look after** his chickens for him.

### Glossary

**area** a part of a town, country or the world
**the countryside** a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities
**bird**
**wonderful** very good OPP **terrible**
**flower**
**fresh food** food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin
**healthy** If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well.
**public transport** system of buses and trains
**bike** (also **bicycle**) you **ride a bike** or go somewhere **by bike**
**look after** If you **look after** an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.

**5** **Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ | We always use public transport/the buses and trains here. | S |
| 1 | These carrots are fresh/clean. | |
| 2 | She's looking at/looking after the dog. | |
| 3 | I think city life is wonderful/terrible. | |
| 4 | Have you got a bike/bicycle? | |
| 5 | Are you alone/lonely at the moment? | |
| 6 | She's healthy/very well. | |
| 7 | He lives in the countryside/on a farm. | |
| 8 | He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike. | |

**spotlight** ***alone* and *lonely***

**Alone** and **lonely** mean 'not with other people'. If you are **lonely**, you aren't happy about it. If you are **alone**, you can be happy or unhappy.
*She likes living **alone**.* NOT ~~*She likes living lonely.*~~
*She's **lonely**.* = She would like to have more friends.

**6** **Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ I sometimes have to look afer children. after — I look after my children every day.
1 I often buy floweres. _____ _____
2 I love the contryside. _____ _____
3 I'm very helthy. _____ _____
4 I see lots of brids in my aerea. _____ _____
5 Our public transporte is wonderfull. _____ _____
6 I'm often alon in the evening. _____ _____
7 I eat fraish fruit every day. _____ _____
8 I never feel lonley. _____ _____

**7** ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 37 I can talk about shops

## A Places to shop

| Places | What they sell |
|---|---|
| **market** ( a number of **stalls**, **outdoors** or **indoors**) | food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers |
| **shopping centre** (a number of shops, usually indoors) | everything |
| **department store** (a large shop) | almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume |
| **supermarket** (a large shop) | food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen |
| **hypermarket** | the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns. |
| **butcher's** | meat |
| **baker's** | bread and cakes |
| **chemist's** | medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo |
| **deli(catessen)** | sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee |
| **paper shop** or **newsagent's** | newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes |

An indoor market

**spotlight** **Noun + *shop***

For many shops, we often use noun + **shop**: **shoe shop**, **clothes shop**, **bookshop**, **music shop** (for CDs and DVDs), **fruit and vegetable shop**, etc.

**1** Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.

▶ I got the vegetables from the... supermarket (baker's) market fruit and vegetable shop

1 I got the bread from the... hypermarket baker's deli butcher's

2 I got the meat from the... supermarket baker's market butcher's

3 I got these jeans from a... market paper shop department store clothes shop

4 I got this shampoo from the... deli chemist's supermarket department store

5 I got the cheese from a... supermarket market stall deli chemist's

6 I got these CDs from the... shopping centre newsagent's department store music shop

**2** Write two things you can buy in each of these places.

▶ department store bed television

1 deli _____ _____

2 chemist's _____ _____

3 market _____ _____

4 newsagent's _____ _____

5 baker's _____ _____

6 music shop _____ _____

**3** Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Shopping habits

Hypermarkets are so **convenient** – you can **get** everything in one place.

I **do the** supermarket **shopping** on Thursdays when it's quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend. I don't like **queueing** at the **checkout**!

You can **choose** from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I **prefer** markets. They're friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I **fill** two **trolleys** every week!

I **get** a lot of things on the internet. They always **deliver** to your home.

### Glossary

**convenient** easy and quick to use
**get** buy
**do (the) shopping** buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap
**queue** wait in a line of people
**checkout** the place in a supermarket where you pay
**choose** decide which thing you want
**prefer** like something or someone more than another
**fill** make something **full** (The trolley in the picture is **full**.)
**trolley**

**basket**

**deliver** take things to a person or a place

**4** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient. T
1 You can't get CDs in a hypermarket. _____
2 You can fill a trolley or a basket. _____
3 You go to clothes shops to do the shopping. _____
4 You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay. _____
5 You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops. _____
6 You pay at the checkout in a supermarket. _____
7 At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket. _____
8 All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home. _____

**5** **Complete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)**

ABOUT YOU

1 When do you or your family usually do the s_____? _____
2 Do you pr_____ supermarkets or small shops? _____
3 Do you often have to q_____ at the checkout? _____
4 Do you think supermarkets are co_____? _____
5 Do supermarkets in your town d_____ things to your home? _____
6 Where do you g_____ your fruit and vegetables? _____

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 38 I can talk about my home

## A Flats

I live in a **block of flats** near the **town centre**, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my **neighbour**, Simon, is very friendly.

1 **(on) the top floor**
2 **(on) the second floor**
3 **(on) the first floor**
4 **(on) the ground floor**
5 **garden**
6 **steps**
7 **(in) the basement**
8 **rubbish** U
9 **front door**
10 **stairs**
11 **lift**
12 **flat**
13 **balcony**

**1** True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ Helen lives on the second floor. T
1 John and Lucy live on the ground floor. _____
2 Miki lives on the top floor. _____
3 Anna lives on the first floor. _____
4 They put their rubbish in the lift. _____
5 Simon lives in the basement. _____
6 Ferdy's flat has got a balcony. _____
7 Rob's flat has got a garden. _____
8 The steps are at the front door. _____
9 Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift. _____

**2** Complete the words.

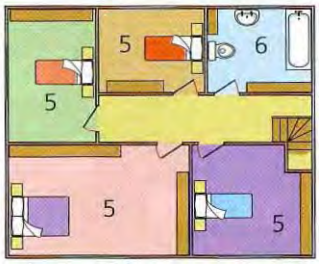
▶ l i f t
1 b _ _ _ _ _ _ t
2 b _ _ _ k of f _ _ _ s
3 g _ _ _ _ d f _ _ _ r
4 f _ _ _ t d _ _ r
5 s _ _ _ _ s
6 g _ _ _ _ n
7 s _ _ _ s
8 n _ _ _ _ _ _ r
9 b _ _ _ _ _ y
10 t _ _ n c _ _ _ _ e

**3** Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Houses




**BATHFORD**

**Modern** family house in this quiet village with lovely **views** of the countryside. Large **living room**[1], **dining room**[2], **study**[3], modern **kitchen**[4] and **utility room**. **Upstairs** there are four good-sized **bedrooms**[5] and a family **bathroom**[6]. **Outside** there is a large garden, a **garage**, and further **parking** for two cars.

### Glossary

**modern** of the present time OPP old
**view** what you see from the house
**utility room** a room where you do the washing, ironing, etc.
**upstairs**

OPP **downstairs**
**outside** not in a house or other building OPP **inside**
**garage** a building where you park your car
**parking** U a place where you can park (leave) your car

### spotlight *flat, house and home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.
A **house** is a building with rooms on two or more floors.
**Home** is where you live (in a flat or a house).

**4** **Find the end of each word.**

(study)viewmodernlivingroomtoiletkitchenhomeparking
diningroomupstairsbedroomutilityroombathroom

**5** **Complete the text.**

I live in a ▶ modern house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) _____ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) _____. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) _____ of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on the street because I don't have a (4) _____, but it's got a small (5) _____, so I can eat (6) _____ when it's warm.

My brother's got a house in a village near me, and from the house he's got fantastic (7) _____ of the countryside. Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large (8) _____ and a (9) _____ where my brother works. (10) _____ there are four (11) _____ and two (12) _____, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also (13) _____ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat (14) _____ all the time.

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 Do you live in a house or a flat? _____
2 If it's a flat, which floor are you on? _____
3 Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it? _____
4 What's the view? Is it nice? _____
5 Have you got parking? _____
6 What rooms have you got in your home? _____

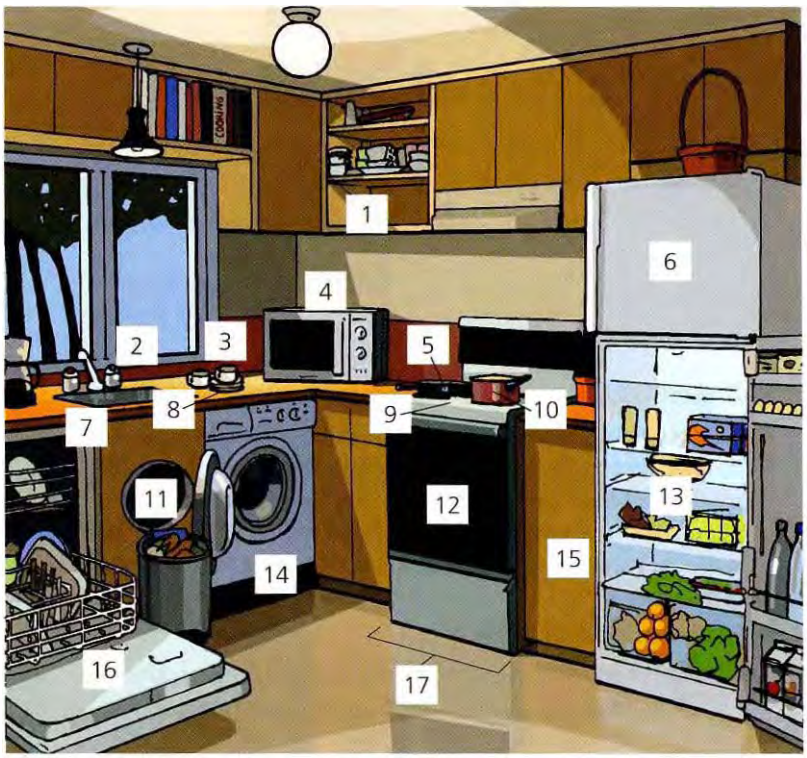


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 39 I can describe a kitchen

## A In the kitchen

1 **shelf** plural **shelves**
2 **tap (turn the tap on/off)**
3 **cup(s)**
4 **microwave**
5 **frying pan**
6 **freezer**
7 **sink**
8 **saucer(s)**
9 **hob**
10 **saucepan**
11 **(rubbish) bin**
The bin is **full** OPP **empty**
12 **oven**
13 **fridge**
14 **washing machine**
15 **cupboard**
16 **dishwasher**
17 **cooker**




**1** **Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.**

▶ Put the milk in the fridge.
1 Put those dirty clothes in the w_____ m_____.
2 Put the dirty plates in the d_____ or the s_____.
3 Put the cups and s_____ in the c_____.
4 Put the books on the s_____.
5 Put the empty packets in the b_____.
6 Put the meat in the o_____.
7 Cook the eggs in the f_____ p_____.
8 Put the ice cream in the f_____.
9 Is the rubbish bin f_____?
10 Heat the soup in the m_____ or on the h_____.
11 Could you turn the t_____ off?
12 Boil the potatoes in that s_____.

**2** ABOUT YOU **Write down anything in the picture you haven't got.**

▶ I haven't got a microwave, and my washing machine isn't in the kitchen.
I haven't got _____

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Using the kitchen

**Housework**

1 **do the shopping**
2 **put** the shopping **away** ( = in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
3 **put** the dirty clothes in the washing machine; **turn it on**
4 **clean** the cooker
5 **take** the washing ( = the clothes) **out** of the washing machine
6 **make** a sandwich
7 **empty** the bin
8 **do the ironing**
9 **cook** lunch for the family
10 **do the washing-up**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**spotlight** *do* + noun

These phrases are very common in spoken English: **do the shopping, do the washing-up, do the housework, do the ironing**
Be careful!
**housework** = cleaning the house
**homework** = work teachers give students to do after class

**4** **Complete the text.**

Saturday is my day for doing the ▶ housework. First, I go to town and do the (1) _____. Then I come back, (2) _____ everything (3) _____ in the cupboards, and (4) _____ the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) _____ it, and then I (6) _____ a cup of tea. My sister usually helps me. She (7) _____ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) _____ the washing out when it's finished. I (9) _____ lunch, but afterwards, we do the (10) _____ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) _____.

**5** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

In your home ...

1 Who does the shopping? _____
2 Who cooks the dinner? _____
3 Who does the washing-up? _____
4 Who cleans the kitchen? _____
5 Who empties the bin? _____
6 Who does the ironing? _____

**6** **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.**



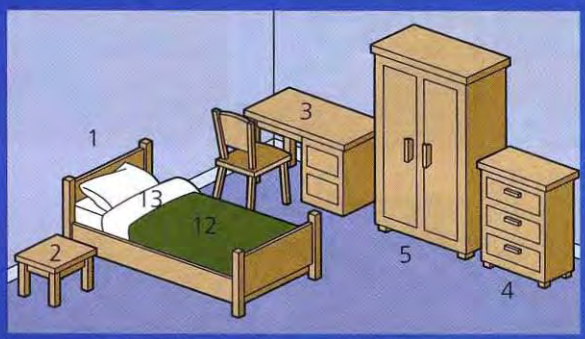
www.hellooteacher.ir

# 40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

## A Bedroom and bathroom

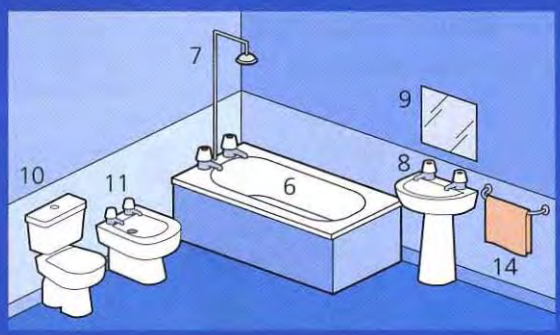
### International student house

Our rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a **single bed**[1], **bedside table**[2], **desk**[3] and chair, **chest of drawers**[4], and **wardrobe**[5].




There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a **bath**[6], **shower**[7], **washbasin**[8], **mirror**[9], **toilet**[10], and **bidet**[11].

We provide **blankets**[12], but students must bring their own **sheets**[13] and **towels**[14].




**1** **One word is different. Which one?**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ | bedside table toilet wardrobe | Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom. |
| 1 | bath shower mirror | _____ is different. You can wash in the other two. |
| 2 | wardrobe desk chest of drawers | _____ is different. You put clothes in the other two. |
| 3 | blanket desk chest of drawers | _____ is different. The other two are pieces of furniture. |
| 4 | bed chest of drawers bidet | _____ is different. The other two are in a bedroom. |
| 5 | wardrobe toilet washbasin | _____ is different. The other two are in a bathroom. |
| 6 | towel blanket sheet | _____ is different. The other two are on a bed. |

**2** **Write in the missing letter.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | dek desk | 5 | wasbasin _____ | 10 | seet _____ |
| 1 | beside table _____ | 6 | tolet _____ | 11 | twel _____ |
| 2 | miror _____ | 7 | wadrobe _____ | 12 | shoer _____ |
| 3 | ath _____ | 8 | bide _____ | | |
| 4 | chest of drawes _____ | 9 | blanke _____ | | |

**3** ABOUT YOU **Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.**

In my bedroom, there's _____

In my bathroom, there's _____

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1–14.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B In the bathroom

Whenyou ...

**have a wash**, you **use** **soap.** U

**clean your teeth**, you use **toothpaste** U and **a toothbrush.**

**wash your hair**, you use **shampoo.** U

**have a shave**, you use **a razor** or **an electric razor.**

**do your hair**, you use **a brush** or **a comb.**

**put on** or **take off make-up**, you use **make-up** U and **tissues.**

You can also **put on** or **wear** **perfume.** U

**5** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ I wash/clean my teeth with toothpaste/a comb.

1 I do/put on my hair with a razor/a brush.
2 Do you have/do a bath every day?
3 She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
4 Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
5 He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
6 When you take off make-up you use tissues/a comb.

**spotlight** *have + noun*

Notice these phrases with **have**:
*I **have a shower** every day.*
*I don't **have a bath** very often.*
*Do you **have a shave** every morning?*
*I **have a wash** after work.*

**6** **Write a, an or nothing (–).**

▶ I don't use ___ make-up.

1 I need ___ new comb.
2 Do you want ___ tissue?
3 I never use ___ perfume.
4 I must buy ___ brush.
5 I buy ___ shampoo every week.
6 Have you got ___ electric razor?
7 I just use ___ soap.
8 I need ___ new toothbrush and ___ toothpaste.

**7** ABOUT YOU **Tick (✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.**

1 a I usually have a bath. ☐
b I usually have a shower. ☐

2 a I clean my teeth before breakfast. ☐
b I clean my teeth after breakfast. ☐

3 a I wash my hair twice a week or less. ☐
b I wash my hair more than twice a week. ☐

4 a I usually use a brush on my hair. ☐
b I usually use a comb on my hair. ☐

5 For women:
a I often wear perfume. ☐
b I don't wear perfume very much. ☐
a I usually wear make-up. ☐
b I don't wear make-up very much. ☐

6 For men:
a I use an electric razor. ☐
b I don't use an electric razor. ☐



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 41 I can describe a living room

1 **window**
2 **light**
3 **ceiling**
4 **wall**
5 **curtains**
6 **TV/television**
7 **picture**
8 **bookshelves**
9 **radiator**

10 **cushion**
11 **DVD player**
12 **lamp**
13 **armchair**
14 **coffee table**
15 **fireplace**
16 **floor**
17 **sofa**
18 **rug**
19 **carpet**

An **armchair**, a **sofa** and a **coffee table** are **furniture** U, or **pieces of furniture**.

**1** **Look at the picture. True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

In the living room, there is only one...

▶ TV T
▶ picture T
1 light _____
2 lamp _____
3 cushion _____
4 carpet _____
5 curtain _____
6 fireplace _____
7 rug _____
8 radiator _____
9 armchair _____
10 sofa _____
11 picture _____
12 wall _____
13 DVD player _____
14 piece of furniture _____

**2** **Complete the words.**

▶ w i n dow
1 ___ or
2 ___ pet
3 ___ hion
4 ___ iator
5 ___ fee ___ le
6 ___ ling
7 _____ ves
8 ___ ht
9 ___ tains
10 ____ hair
11 __ g
12 ____ place

**3** ABOUT YOUR HOME **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 How many windows have you got in your living room? _____
2 Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both? _____
3 What have you got on the floor? _____
4 What's on the walls? _____
5 Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls? _____
6 What furniture have you got? _____

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Places

## Unit 34

**Complete the sentences.**

▶ Moscow is in the west of Russia.
1 Milan is in the _____ of Italy.
2 Bangkok is in the _____ of Thailand.
3 San Francisco is on the west _____ and New York is on the east _____ of the USA.
4 China is an _____ (very big) country.
5 Geneva is near the _____ between Switzerland and France.
6 Paris is the _____ of France.
7 The Nile is the longest _____ in the world.
8 Fujiyama is the highest _____ in Japan.
9 Bondi is a long _____ in Australia.
10 Brazil is _____ for Samba, football, and Carnival.

## Unit 35

**1 Write the opposite.**

▶ north south
1 an old city _____
2 under a million _____
3 south-west _____
4 safe _____
5 there's lots to do _____
6 a busy street _____
7 polluted _____
8 opinion _____

**2 Complete the texts.**

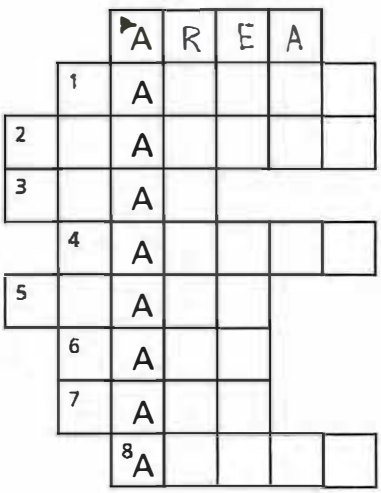
**A** Granada is quite a ▶ large town about 350 km south (1) _____ Madrid. It has a (2) _____ of about 300,000 people. It's an old town with lots of (3) _____ buildings, and a famous (4) _____ called The Alhambra. It's a very popular (5) _____ with tourists.

**B** New York is a big (6) _____, which is (7) _____ the Atlantic coast. It's (8) _____ for a number of things: the (9) _____ of Liberty, Times (10) _____, and Central (11) _____. It is a (12) _____ city, with people of many nationalities.

## Unit 36

**1 Complete the crossword.**

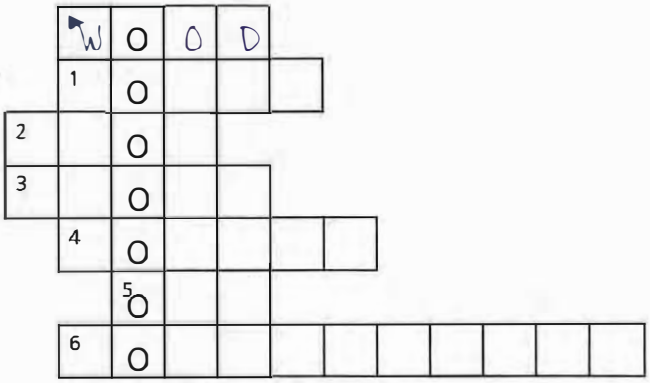
▶ Part of a town, country or the world. area
1 You see this between two hills. _____
2 _____ food is good for you.
3 You go on this on a river. _____
4 A person who grows crops to sell. _____
5 Horses eat this. _____
6 A place where you walk between fields. _____
7 A large area of water with land around it. _____
8 Not with other people. _____






www.hellooteacher.ir

## 2 Complete the crossword.



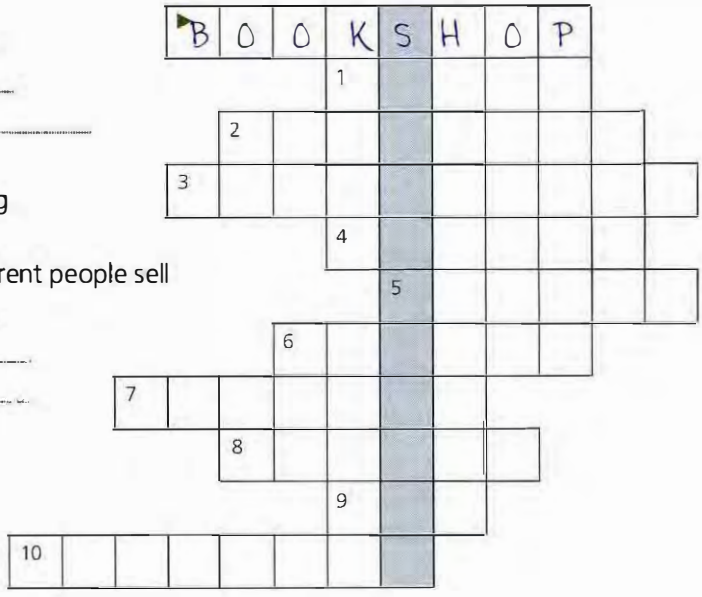
- ▶ A place with a lot of trees. wood
- 1 An animal you can ride. _____
- 2 Farmers _____ potatoes, rice, etc.
- 3 Plants that farmers look after and then sell for food. _____
- 4 Unhappy because you are not with other people. _____
- 5 If you _____ something, it is yours.
- 6 A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside towns and cities. _____

# Unit 37

## 1 Complete the words.

- ▶ A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, bread, etc. is a deli.
- 1 A place with shops which is indoors is a s_____ c_____
- 2 A shop where you buy newspapers, chocolates, etc. is a n_____
- 3 A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, etc. is a c_____
- 4 A large shop which sells food, things for cleaning, etc. is a h_____ or a s_____
- 5 A shop where you get bread and cakes is a b_____
- 6 A place where you buy books is a b_____
- 7 A shop where you buy meat is a b_____
- 8 A large shop where you can buy almost anything: clothes, beds, etc. is a d_____ s_____
- 9 A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. is a m_____ s_____

## 2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?



- ▶ where you buy books bookshop
- 1 wait in a line of people _____
- 2 buy the things you need: do the _____
- 3 easy and quick to use _____
- 4 like something more than another thing _____
- 5 a shopping place outdoors where different people sell you food, books, etc. _____
- 6 you find these in a market _____
- 7 the opposite of 'outdoors' _____
- 8 in a supermarket, you put things in a trolley or a _____
- 9 buy _____
- 10 where you pay for things in a big shop _____

The word in the grey squares is _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 38

**1 Here are some definitions. What are the words?**

▶ The room where you talk and watch TV. living room
1 The room where you wash and have a shower. _____
2 The room where you cook food. _____
3 The room where you sleep. _____
4 The room where you do work/homework. _____
5 The place where you put the car. _____
6 The thing that takes you from one floor to another floor. _____
7 The place outside your house where there are trees and flowers. _____
8 The place where you live (a flat or a house). _____

**2 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | quiet d | a | floor |
| 1 | front _____ | b | views |
| 2 | lovely _____ | c | of flats |
| 3 | ground _____ | d | village ✓ |
| 4 | modern _____ | e | centre |
| 5 | dining _____ | f | door |
| 6 | parking _____ | g | house |
| 7 | block _____ | h | for two cars |
| 8 | town _____ | i | room |

# Unit 39

**1 Write your answers.**

▶ You boil vegetables in this. saucepan
1 You wash plates and cups in this. _____ or _____
2 You wash clothes in this. _____
3 You put rubbish in this. _____
4 You cook food very quickly in this. _____
5 You put clean plates, cups, and saucers here. _____
6 You keep milk and cold drinks in this. _____
7 You put ice cream in this. _____
8 You cook meat slowly in this. _____

**2 Complete the sentences.**

▶ Do _____ the shopping on the way home.
1 Come home and _____ the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
2 _____ the dirty washing in the machine, and _____ it on.
3 Forty minutes later, _____ the machine off and take the washing _____ .
4 _____ the washing-up and _____ the bin.
5 Finally, _____ lunch.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 40

**1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.**

wardrobe towel toilet blanket sheet chest of drawers
shower washbasin single bed desk bath bidet

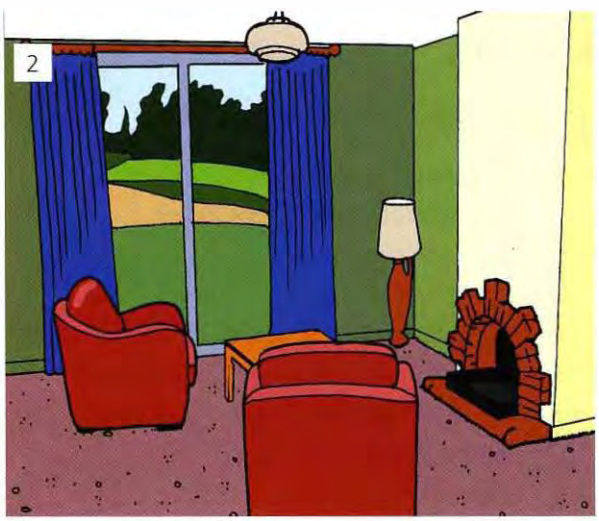
| 1 | 2 |
|---|---|
| | |

**2 Complete the questions, then answer them.**

▶ What do you use when you wash your hair? shampoo
1 What do you use when you ..... make-up? .....
2 What do you use when you ..... a shave? .....
3 What do you use when you ..... your teeth? .....
4 What do you use when you ..... your hair? .....
5 What do use when you ..... a wash? .....

## Unit 41

**Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.**




▶ Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 hasn't.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 42 I can talk about my school

## A School subjects

chemistry

physics

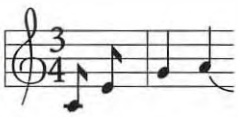
biology

maths

ICT

geography

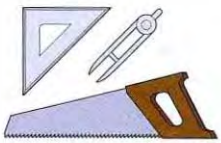
history

literature

music

modern languages

art

PE


design and technology

Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school **subjects**.

ICT = information communication technology
PE = physical education
**RE** = religious education

**spotlight** ***be good at something***

If you are **good at** something, you do it well.
If you are **terrible at** it, you do it very badly.
*I'm (quite) good at languages.*
*I'm terrible at maths.*

**1** **Complete the words.**

▶ a rt
1 h_st_ry
2 g__gr_ph_
3 b__l_g_
4 d_s_gn
5 ph_s_cs
6 m_th_
7 m_s_c
8 l_t_r_t_r_

**2** **Write the name of a school subject.**

▶ Beethoven, jazz, music
1 football, gym _____
2 computers _____
3 Shakespeare _____
4 Spanish, German _____
5 church, mosque, etc. _____
6 $CO_2$, $H_2O$ _____
7 Picasso, Monet _____

**3** ABOUT YOU **Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.**

1 At school, I'm/I was good at _____.
2 I'm/I was quite good at _____.
3 I'm/I was terrible at _____.
4 We don't/didn't study _____.
5 The subject I like/liked most is/was _____.

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.**

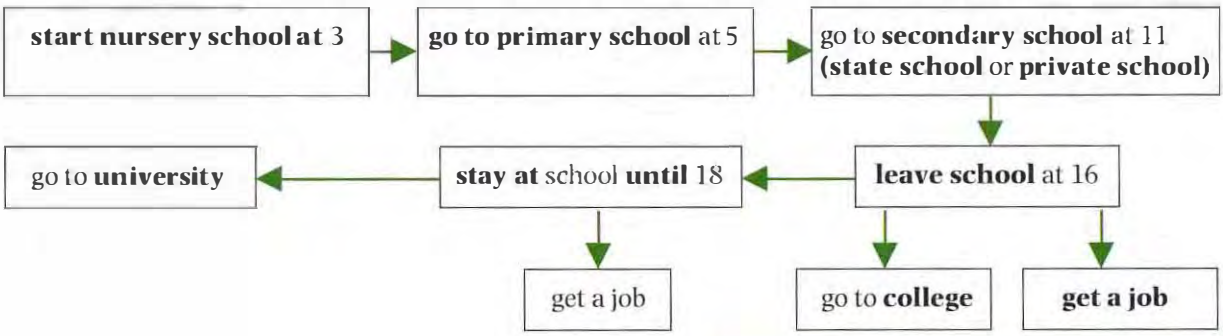


www.hellooteacher.ir

# B The education system

Education in England and Wales

You can ...




Some **pupils** (= schoolchildren up to the age of 16) wear a **uniform**.

**5** **Put the story in order.**

a where he learnt to read and write. ☐
b He stayed there until he was sixteen, ☐
c When Tom was three, [1]
d and then he went to college. ☐
e After that, he went to secondary school. ☐
f He left college when he was 18 ☐
g At the age of five, ☐
h he started nursery school. ☐
i he went to primary school, ☐
j and got a job in a bank. ☐

## Glossary

**start school** go to a new school for the first time
**state school** a school where education is free OPP **private school**
**stay at school** go to school for a period of time (also **continue at school**)
**until** up to that time ('I was there until 3.00.' means 'after 3.00, I went away.')
**college** place where you can study after you leave school
**leave school** stop going to school
**get a job** find a job
**uniform** special clothes that children wear in a school

**spotlight** *at (the age of) ...*

Children go to school **at 5** (OR **at the age of 5**). = Children go to primary school **when they are five** (years old).

**6** **Complete the questions, but don't write answers.**

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

▶ At what age do children go to nursery school?
1 When do they s_____ primary school?
2 Do they usually wear a u_____ at primary school?
3 When do p_____ start s_____ school?
4 When can they l_____ school and g_____ a job?
5 Do they go to st_____ schools, pr_____ schools, or both?

**7** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## C Exams

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the **lessons** and **did** my **homework**, but I didn't **work** very **hard**. So, when I **took exams** at 16, my **results** weren't fantastic. I **passed** six, which was good, but I **failed** maths. My **worst** result was physics – I got a **grade** E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and **did well**. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.

### Glossary

**lesson** a period of time (about an hour) in school when you are learning something
**do homework** U do work the teacher has given you to do at home (NOT ~~homeworks~~)
**work hard** work a lot
**result** what you get in an exam, e.g. 80%, A, or 8/10
**(the) worst** superlative of **bad** OPP (the) **best** superlative of **good**
**grade** you get a grade (e.g. A or B) or a **mark** (e.g. 15/20) in an exam
**do well** be good at something and get better at it OPP **do badly**

### spotlight *exam (examination)*

An **exam** is an important test at the end of a period of study.
**take an exam** = sit down and write your answers in the exam
**pass an exam** = take an exam and do well. e.g. grade A or 85%
**fail an exam** = take an exam and do badly. e.g. grade D or 35%

**8** **Look at Rafael's exam results on the right and answer the questions.**

▶ How many exams did he take? 7
1 Did he take an exam in chemistry? _____
2 How many did he pass? _____
3 How many did he fail? _____
4 What was his best grade? _____
5 What was his worst grade? _____
6 What did he get in English? _____

| Exam | Grade |
|---|---|
| French | B |
| IT | C |
| Geography | D |
| Biology | A |
| English | C |
| History | B |
| Maths | E |

A, B, C – pass
D, E – fail

**9** **Complete the questions.**

▶ Six out of ten isn't a very good mark.
1 I have to _____ an English exam tomorrow.
2 Did you _____ your homework last night?
3 Paula did very _____ in her German exam; she got a _____ A.
4 I got my exam _____ yesterday. I passed all of them.
5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing _____ at school, and last week he _____ an important maths exam.
6 Maths is my _____ subject. I'm terrible at it.

**10** ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions or ask another student.**

1 How long are/were your lessons at school? _____
2 Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time? _____
3 At what age will/did you take important exams? _____
4 How many will/did you take? _____
5 Will/Did you pass all of them? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 43 I can talk about university Do Unit 42 first

## A A university degree

I started university two years ago, when I was nineteen, and I'm **doing a degree in** Spanish and French. The **course lasts** three years, and there are three **terms** a year. I work in the **library** a lot because – like many **undergraduates** – I have to **write** lots of **essays**. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it **again**. I got the result two weeks ago; **fortunately** I passed this time. When I've got my degree – a **BA** – I want to **do research** for a **PhD**.

### Glossary

**do a degree** study at university for three or four years
**course** a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course
**term** a period of study, usually about ten weeks
**library** a place where you can read and borrow books
**undergraduate** a student doing a first degree (A graduate has a degree.)
**write an essay** do a piece of writing on a subject
**again** one more time
**fortunately** We say fortunately when we give good news. OPP **unfortunately**
**BA/BSc** Bachelor of Arts/Science
**MA/MSc** Master of Arts/Science
**do research** study a subject for a long time to learn new information
**PhD** Doctor of Philosophy

**spotlight** ***How long does it last?***

**To last** is to continue for a period of time.
*How long does the film **last**? ~ Two hours.*
*The Masters course **lasts** two years.*

**1 Circle the correct word.**

▶ She did an English course/term.
1 I want to do/make a degree in maths.
2 A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.
3 I've got a BA/BSc in physics.
4 I study a lot in the library/bookshop.
5 A graduate/An undergraduate has a degree.
6 Fortunately/Unfortunately, I failed the exam.
7 You can do research before/after a degree.

**2 Complete the dialogues.**

▶ How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
1 Have you got a _____ ? ~ Yes, a BSc.
2 Did she have to _____ an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
3 Can you _____ research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a _____ .
4 Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes. _____ , he passed.
5 Can he take the exam _____ ? ~ Yes, next summer.
6 How long does the course _____ ? ~ It's only one term.

**3** ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry? _____
2 How long do you need to study for a Masters degree? _____
3 How long does a university term last? _____
4 How long does a school term last? _____
5 If you fail exams, can you always take them again? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B University subjects and people

| | Degree subject | Person |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **medicine** | **a doctor** |
| 2 | **psychology** | **a psychologist** |
| 3 | **economics** | **an economist** |
| 4 | **law** | **a lawyer** |
| 5 | **politics** | **a politician** |
| 6 | **engineering** | **an engineer** |
| 7 | **architecture** | **an architect** |
| 8 | **computer science** | **an IT manager**<br>**a software engineer** |
| 9 | **journalism** | **a journalist**<br>**a reporter** |
| 10 | **business studies** | **a businessman/woman**<br>**a manager** |

**4** Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

▶ He always wanted to be a lawyer.
1 She wants to be a _____.
2 When did he become an _____?
3 She's studying to become an _____.
4 Why does he want to be a _____?
5 She works as an _____.
6 I don't know anyone who wants to be a _____.
7 Is it difficult to become a _____?
8 I knew he'd become a _____.

LAW
MEDICINE
ENGINEERING
ARCHITECTURE
PSYCHOLOGY
ECONOMICS
POLITICS
JOURNALISM
BUSINESS STUDIES

**5** Complete the words. 'Degree subject' or 'person'? Write *DS* or *P*.

▶ jo u rnal i s m DS
1 l _ wy _ r _____
2 ar _ _ it _ ct _ _ _ _____
3 c _ mp _ t _ _ sci _ _ c _ _____
4 s _ _ tw_ r _ e _ g _ ne _ r _____
5 ps _ ch _ l _ g _ _____
6 b _ s _ n _ ss st _ d _ _ s _____
7 p _ l _ t _ c _ _____
8 eng _ n _ _ r _____
9 m _ d _ c _ n _ _____
10 ec _ n _ m _ c _ _____
11 IT m _ n _ g _ r _____
12 r _ p _ rt _ _ _____

**6** Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 44 I can name jobs

What do you do?
What's your job?
I'm ...

**spotlight** ***a/an* with jobs**

We use **a/an** when we say what people's jobs are.
*He's **a builder**.* NOT ~~*He's builder.*~~
*She's **a teacher** and he's **an engineer**.*

a police officer

a shop assistant

a builder

a businessman/ businesswoman

a nurse

a teacher

a secretary

a hairdresser

a chef

a dentist

a soldier

a cleaner

a vet

a pilot

a lorry driver also a train/bus/taxi driver

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **self-employed** | *Are you **self-employed**?* | working for yourself, not for a company |
| **uuemployed** | *I'm **unemployed**, but I'm looking for a job.* | with no job, but wanting to work |
| **retired** | *My grandfather is **retired** now.* | = My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65. |
| **housewife** OR **househusband** | *She's a **housewife** now, but she was a lawyer.* | a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work |
| **boss** | *Who's **the boss** in this company?* | a person who tells people what to do in their jobs |



www.hellooteacher.ir

## 1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ The most important person in the company is the boss/hairdresser.
1 A police officer/vet works with dogs and cats.
2 A shop assistant/dentist sells things.
3 A housewife/nurse works in a hospital.
4 Retired people are usually young/old.
5 An unemployed person has/hasn't got a job.
6 A businesswoman/soldier can be self-employed.
7 A businessman usually has a secretary/househusband.
8 A pilot/dentist looks after people's teeth.
9 A lorry driver/chef works in a kitchen.
10 A builder/cleaner works outdoors a lot.

## 2 Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ teecher teacher
1 bisnessman _____
2 shop asistant _____
3 airdresser _____
4 secretairy _____
5 polis officer _____
6 retaired _____
7 bilder _____
8 lory driver _____
9 cleener _____
10 houswife _____
11 self-emploied _____
12 solder _____

## 3 Complete the sentences.

▶ Does she stay at home with the children? ~ Yes, she's a housewife.
1 Could she cut my hair? ~ Yes, she's _____
2 Does he work for Alitalia? ~ Yes, he's _____
3 Has she got a job? ~ No, she's _____
4 Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's _____
5 She's seventy – has she got a job? ~ No, she's _____
6 Does he work for other people? ~ No, he's _____
7 Does she work with students? ~ Yes, she's _____
8 Does he work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's _____

## 4 ABOUT YOU Think about your family and people you know. Write their names if they do the jobs below.

▶ a nurse my friend Christa
▶ a vet I don't know anyone who's a vet.
▶ a soldier Mr Rosakis
1 a secretary _____
2 a chef _____
3 a hairdresser _____
4 someone who is unemployed _____
5 someone who is retired _____
6 a teacher _____
7 a pilot _____
8 a dentist _____
9 a businessman or woman _____
10 a boss _____

## 5 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 45 I can describe a job Do Unit 44 first

## A Basic information

**Where does he work?**

He **works in** ... **an office** **a factory** **a hospital**

**Who does she work for?**

She **works for**
- a car **company**, e.g. Toyota
- an **airline**, e.g. Cathay Pacific

**What hours does he work?**

He's got
- a **full-time** job, e.g. 40 hours **a week**
- a **part-time** job, e.g. 15 hours a week

He works
- **long hours**, e.g. 12 hours **a day**
- **from** nine **to** five

**How much does she earn?**

She **earns** a lot. Her **salary** is $80,000 **a year**.
He **doesn't earn** very much. He gets **low wages**.

**Glossary**

**earn** receive money for the work that you do
**salary** money you receive every month for the work that you do
**wages** money you receive every week for the work that you do
**low** If you earn **low wages**, you earn less than is normal. OPP **high**

**1** **Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.**

office | an American airline | she work | hours a day | work for | long hours ✓ | earn much | job | ten to six | a factory | does he earn

▶ He works long hours.
1 She works ten _____.
2 I work in _____.
3 He works in an _____?
4 Who do you _____?
5 How much _____?
6 Where does _____?
7 She works for _____.
8 She doesn't _____.
9 It's a full-time _____.
10 I work from _____.

**2** **Complete the text.**

My sister's a nurse in our local ▶ hospital. She only works (1) _____-time – about 15 hours (2) _____ week – and she doesn't (3) _____ much money. Nurses in our country generally get (4) _____ wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he works very long (5) _____ – sometimes 14 hours a (6) _____. He earns about $90,000 a (7) _____ which is a very high (8) _____ in our country.

**3** ABOUT YOU **If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don't, ask someone who has a job.**

1 What's your job? _____
2 Who do you work for? _____
3 Where do you work? _____
4 How many hours do you work? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B What do you have to do?

**Daniel Alessi, architect**

I **design buildings**[1], but I also **have to**:

- **meet**[2] **clients** and **discuss** problems with them
- **go to meetings**[3] with **colleagues**
- write **reports**

I **spend a lot of time** talking to people.

**Eliane Sotano, secretary**

I only work part-time now. I have to:

- **make phone calls**[4]
- **send** letters, faxes and emails
- **organize meetings** for my boss
- **type**[5] reports

I **spend a lot of time answering** the phone!

**spotlight** ***Spend time doing something***

**Spend time** means to do something for a period of time:
*I **spend a lot of time** work**ing** and travel**ling**.*
*I **spent** a week writ**ing** the report.*

**4** **There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.**

▶ I spent a day to ~~meet~~ clients. meeting

1 He does a lot of phone calls. _____

2 I have a meet this afternoon. _____

3 She spends a lot of time type. _____

4 She designs offices. _____

5 Could you organizate a meeting? _____

6 I wrote the report last night. _____

7 We discussed about our problems. _____

8 I answered to the phone. _____

**Glossary**

**have to do something** must do something
**client** a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help
**discuss something** talk about something NOT ~~discuss about something~~
**colleague** a person who works with you
**report** a piece of writing giving information about work you have done
**send** You write a letter, then you **send** it to the person.
**organize** If you **organize a meeting**, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
**answer the phone** pick up the phone when it rings and speak

**5** **Complete the text.**

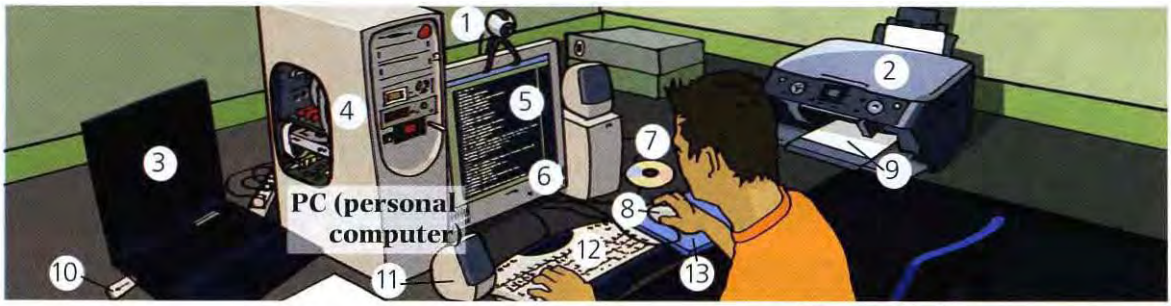
I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a ▶ full-time job and I work from nine to five. I (1) _____ new students when they arrive at the school, and of course, I (2) _____ the phone and (3) _____ letters and emails. I (4) _____ a lot of time (5) _____ phone calls to help students who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) _____ in the office – they're very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) _____ them. I also (8) _____ meetings for my boss with important (9) _____ from other countries. Sometimes, I (10) _____ to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to work.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 46 I can talk about using a computer

## A The computer




| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **webcam** | 6 | **monitor** | 11 | **speaker** |
| 2 | **printer** | 7 | **disk** | 12 | **keyboard** |
| 3 | **laptop** | 8 | **mouse** | 13 | **mouse mat** |
| 4 | **hard drive** | 9 | **hard copy/printout** | | |
| 5 | **screen** | 10 | **memory stick** | | |

**spotlight** *keep*

**Keep** means 'to put something in a place so that you know where it is'. *Where do you **keep** your passport? ~ I **keep** it in a box under the bed.*

**1** **Correct the spelling mistakes.**

- ▶ hard copie hard copy
- 1 screan _____
- 2 maus _____
- 3 personal commuter _____
- 4 memory stik _____
- 5 moniter _____
- 6 keybord _____
- 7 disque _____
- 8 webcame _____

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ You type information using the keyboard .
- 1 You listen to music using the _____ .
- 2 You get _____ using the printer.
- 3 The information in your computer is on the _____ .
- 4 A small computer you can carry is called a _____ .
- 5 You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a _____ or a _____ .
- 6 You move the _____ with your hand.
- 7 You put the mouse on the _____ .
- 8 You read your emails on the _____ .

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? _____
2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it? _____
3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it? _____
4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? _____
5 Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for? _____

**4** **Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.**



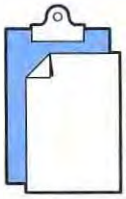
www.hellooteacher.ir

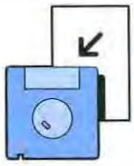
## B Word processing

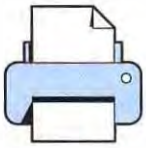
icons

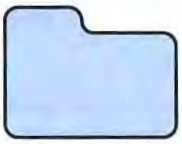
document

cut


paste


save


print


folder

copy

1 I **opened** a new **document** and typed a letter.
2 I **cut** a sentence from the **beginning** of the letter.
3 I **moved it to the end**. (I **clicked on** the '**paste**' **icon.**)
4 I **saved** the document in my 'letters' **folder.**
5 I **printed it out**. OR I **did a printout.**
6 I **made a backup copy** on a disk.

### Glossary

**beginning** the first part of something OPP **end** (The **middle** is between the beginning and the end.)
**move something** take something and put it in another place
**click on something**

**a backup copy** a copy of a document or folder that you can use if you lose the first one (You **make a backup** copy.)

### 5 Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | You type ___d___ | a | a paper copy of your letter. |
| 1 | You open _____ | b | a backup copy. |
| 2 | You print out _____ | c | the letter you typed in a folder. |
| 3 | You cut _____ | d | your letter or report. ✓ |
| 4 | You click on _____ | e | a word or sentence from your document. |
| 5 | You make _____. | f | a sentence to a different place. |
| 6 | You move _____ | g | a new document. |
| 7 | You save _____ | h | an icon. |

### 6 Complete the sentences.

▶ Which folder did you ___save___ the document in?
1 She _____ on the copy icon.
2 You can write 'Hello' at the _____ of an email, and 'best wishes' at the _____.
3 I always _____ a backup copy of my work.
4 I typed a letter to my boss and then I _____ a printout.
5 My letter wasn't very interesting, so I _____ a few sentences.
6 Did you _____ your work in the correct folder?
7 When you _____ a new document, you can start writing.
8 The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the _____ part was terrible.

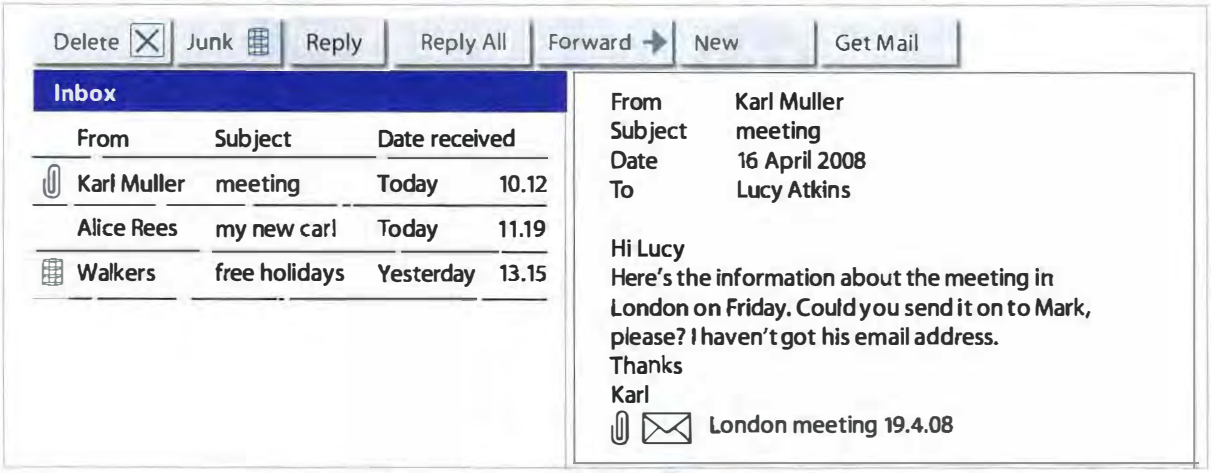
### 7 Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember what the icons mean?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 47 I can use email and the internet

## A Email




JAN Have you **checked your emails** this morning?
LUCY Yes, Karl **sent** me an email with an **attachment**, and I have to **forward** it **to** Mark. And I **got** an email **from** Alice about her new car. I'll **reply to** it later.

**1** True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ There are two messages in Lucy's inbox. F
1 Lucy received two junk mail messages. ____
2 Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark. ____
3 There's an attachment with Alice's email. ____
4 Lucy sent Karl an email. ____
5 Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message. ____
6 Lucy will reply to Walkers' email. ____
7 Lucy got an email from Karl. ____
8 Karl has got Mark's email address. ____

**Glossary**

**check your emails** look and see if you have any email messages
**send** PT **sent** If you send someone **an email**, you write it, and then send it to the person.
**get an email** If someone sends you an email, you **get** it. (also **receive**)
**reply to an email** write an answer to a message and send it

**2** One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

▶ I have to the junk mail. delete
1 I must reply Jean's email. ____
2 Did you my message? ____
3 I received an from Li today. ____
4 Have you checked your? ____
5 Forward the attachment John. ____
6 She Tia an email yesterday. ____

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 How often do you send emails? ____
2 Who do you send them to? ____
3 What kind of junk mail do you receive? ____
4 Do people send you attachments? What's in them? ____
5 Do you always reply to emails quickly? ____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B The internet

| Questions | Answers | ABOUT YOU |
|---|---|---|
| What's your **email address**? | It's louella@yahoo.co.uk | 1 |
| Do you buy things **on the internet**? | Yes, I buy books. | 2 |
| What's a **web address** for news in your country? | It's www.bbc.co.uk/news | 3 |
| Which **websites** do you **visit** most? | eBay and MySpace. | 4 |
| Have you got **broadband**? | Yes, it's very **fast**. | 5 |
| How often do you **go online**? | I **use the internet** every evening. | 6 |
| Do you **visit chatrooms**? | Yes, I often **chat online**. | 7 |
| Do you **dowuload** music onto your computer? | Yes, or I download it onto my **MP3 player**. | 8 |
| Which **search engines** do you **use**? | I use Google and Yahoo. | 9 |

**Glossary**

**on the internet** (NOT ~~on internet~~)
**web address** = internet address
**broadband** With a broadband connection, you can get information from the internet very fast.
**fast** (also **quick**) OPP **slow** (150 kph for cars is **fast**; 20 kph is **slow**.)
**online** on the internet
**chatroom** a place on the internet where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)
**download** If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)
**MP3 player** a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod

**4** Is the meaning the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | online | on the internet | S |
| 1 | web address | email address | |
| 2 | visit a website | go to a website | |
| 3 | a search engine | a website | |
| 4 | fast | quick | |
| 5 | MP3 player | CD player | |
| 6 | download songs | copy songs from the internet | |
| 7 | go online | use the internet | |
| 8 | visit a chatroom | chat online | |
| 9 | broadband | download | |
| 10 | data | computer information | |

**5** Complete the sentences.

▶ Have you got an MP3 player?
1 We use different _____ engines.
2 It's not very expensive to _____ music from the internet.
3 Do you spend a lot of time _____ the internet?
4 I'd like to get _____ because my internet connection is very slow.
5 My favourite _____ is eBay.
6 You can _____ websites or chatrooms.

**6** ABOUT YOU **Complete the 'about you' column in the table, or ask another student the questions.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Study and work

## Unit 42

**1 Complete the names of the school subjects.**

▶ maths

1 b_____
2 h_____
3 l_____
4 p_____
5 m_____
6 a_____
7 g_____
8 c_____
9 d_____ and t_____
10 m_____ l_____

**2 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.**

▶ start c

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | take | a | at PE |
| 2 | be good | b | a uniform |
| 3 | leave | c | secondary school ✓ |
| 4 | go | d | at school until 18 |
| 5 | work | e | to school |
| 6 | wear | f | a job |
| 7 | get | g | university |
| 8 | do | h | homework |
| 9 | stay | i | hard |
| | | j | an exam |

**3 Complete the dialogues with one word.**

▶ Did he stay on at school? ~ No, he left at 16.
1 Did you do well in your exam? ~ No, I did _____.
2 She passed the exam, didn't she? ~ No, she _____ it.
3 Nico didn't go to a private school. ~ That's right, he went to a _____ school.
4 Are you good at chemistry? ~ No, I'm _____ at it!
5 Is Riete's daughter at primary school? ~ No, she's only 4 – she's at _____ school.
6 Is Jao the worst at maths? ~ No! He's the _____! He's very good at it.

## Unit 43

**1 Complete the text with a word in the correct form.**

Last month my sister started university. She's ▶ doing a degree in computer (1) _____. The course (2) _____ three years, and there are three ten-week (3) _____ in every year. She has to (4) _____ a lot of essays and pass exams. If she fails them, she has to take them (5) _____, and then wait for the results. If she passes her final exams, she'll get her (6) _____. If she does well, after that she can do (7) _____ to get a (8) _____.


www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the words in the table.**

| People | Subjects | Phrases |
|---|---|---|
| journalist | medic | do resea |
| undergradu | econom | do a deg |
| engin | architect | write an es |
| law | bus studies | |
| politic | polit | |

## Unit 44

**Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.**

pilot dentist retired nurse businessman/businesswoman builder
police officer unemployed vet soldier hairdresser shop assistant

▶ You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier, a builder, or a shop assistant.

1 You probably have to go to university to be _____
2 You need to be good with your hands to be _____
3 You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be _____
4 You probably have a lot of free time if you are _____
5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are _____
6 You work in an office most of the time if you are _____

## Unit 45

**1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | write b | a | the phone |
| 1 | send _____ | b | reports ✓ |
| 2 | make _____ | c | problems |
| 3 | answer _____ | d | clients |
| 4 | organize _____ | e | buildings |
| 5 | discuss _____ | f | long hours |
| 6 | work for _____ | g | meetings |
| 7 | design _____ | h | phone calls |
| 8 | meet _____ | i | a computer company |
| 9 | work _____ | j | emails |

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the conversation.**

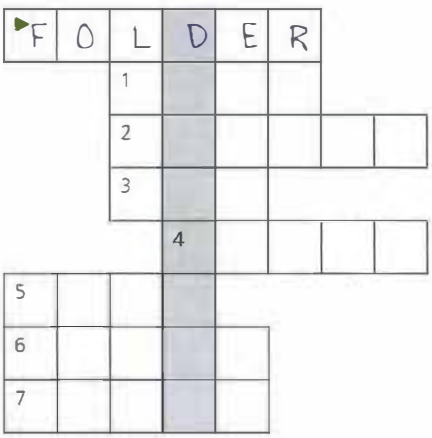
What's your ▶ job ? ~ I work (1) _____ an office.
Do you work long hours? ~ No, it's part-_____ (2).
How many hours is that? ~ Three hours (3) _____ day.
And what do you have to do? ~ I (4) _____ a lot of time sending emails.
Do you get a good salary? ~ No, I don't (5) _____ very much.
What about the people you work with? ~ Oh, my (6) _____ are very nice.

# Unit 46

**1 Complete the words and phrases.**

▶ Do you need hard copy ?
1 Did you bring your lap_____ ?
2 It's a nice key_____ .
3 I need a new mouse _____ .
4 What's a memory_____ ?
5 Did you make a back_____ copy?
6 The information is on the hard _____ .
7 Can you do a print_____ , please?
8 Have you got a _____cam?

**2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?**




The word in the grey squares is _____ .

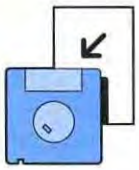
▶

1

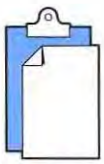
2

3

4

5 

6

7 



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 47

**1 Find eight more words or phrases in the circle.**

chat
broad down
web player ✓ on
band engine in
search box junk
load room line
site mail
MP3 ✓

▶ MP3 player _____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____

**2 Complete the crossword.**

▶ I must reply to her email.
1 Send it as an _____.
2 Did you get my _____?
3 Do you often go _____?
4 I always _____ junk mail.
5 My computer is very _____.
6 How many emails do you _____?
7 Have you got _____?
8 I spend hours on the _____.
9 Did you _____ my email?
10 He doesn't _____ email very much.
11 Do you often _____ chatrooms?

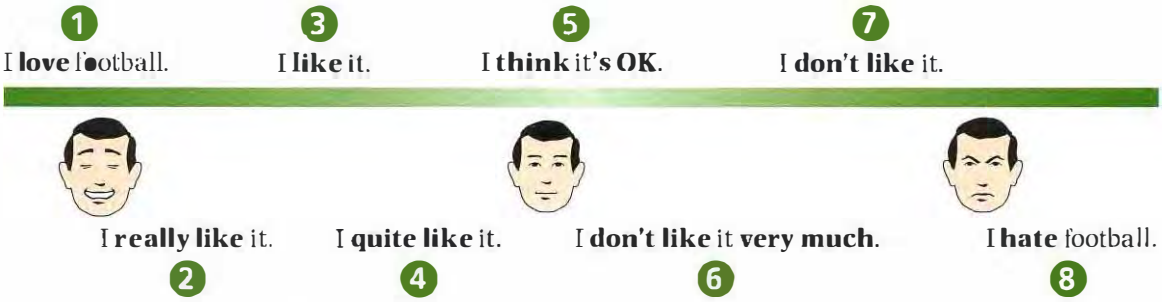
Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 48 I can say what I like

## A Love it or hate it?




**spotlight** *like/love/hate + -ing*

After **like**, **love**, and **hate**, use a noun, a pronoun, or **–ing** form.

*I like/love/hate* { *football.* / *it.* } *I like/love/hate* { *playing football.* / *learning English.* }

**1 Who likes it more? A or B?**

▶ A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee. — B likes coffee more. (A likes coffee less.)

1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK. — _____ likes studying less.
2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate. — _____ likes chocolate more.
3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK. — _____ likes sport more.
4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping. — _____ likes shopping less.
5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much. — _____ likes pop music less.
6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea. — _____ likes tea more.

**2 Correct the mistakes.**

▶ Do you like watch tennis? — Do you like watching tennis?

1 I hate it chocolate.
2 They don't like to doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.
4 I like quite shopping.
5 She doesn't like drive.
6 I think tennis OK.
7 I like really going out with friends.
8 She loves watch sport.

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or tell another student your answers.**

1 I _____ watching TV.
2 I _____ studying English.
3 I _____ driving.
4 I _____ shopping for clothes.
5 I _____ cleaning the house.
6 I _____ writing emails.
7 I _____ talking on the phone.
8 I _____ going to the cinema.


www.hellooteacher.ir

## B It's my favourite thing

**meetpeopleweb.com**

| | |
|---|---|
| Name | Mirko Zitec |
| Work | I work for a TV company. It's a **wonderful** job – I love it. |
| Study | I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good **fun** and my teacher's **fantastic**. |
| Sports | My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also **enjoy** playing football. |
| TV/cinema | I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but I'**m interested** in old films from the 1960s. I **prefer** old films **to** modern ones, in fact. |
| Music | I'**m very keen on** jazz; I go to a club every Friday. |

### Glossary

**wonderful/fantastic** very good
**fun** If something is **fun** it makes you happy.
**favourite** Your favourite thing or person is the one you like most.
**enjoy doing something** If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is **enjoyable**.)
**boring** OPP interesting
**prefer ... to ...** like someone or something more than another person or thing
**be keen on something** like or be interested in something

**spotlight** *interesting/interested*

*I think modern art* ***is interesting*** means 'I'**m interested in** modern art.'
NOT ~~*I'm interesting in modern art.*~~

**4** **Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.**

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | It's ✓ | not interested | boss. | It's a wonderful city. |
| 1 | I | the party | city. ✓ | |
| 2 | I'm | favourite | watching TV. | |
| 3 | My | enjoy | film is 'Tootsie'. | |
| 4 | She | fantastic | on tennis? | |
| 5 | He's a | a wonderful ✓ | in politics. | |
| 6 | Was | you keen | programme. | |
| 7 | It's | prefers reading | good fun? | |
| 8 | Are | a boring | to writing. | |

**5** **Complete the questions, using the words in the box.**

interesting fun interested keen enjoy favourite prefer enjoyable ✓

ABOUT YOU

▶ Do you think flying is enjoyable ?
1 Is learning English good _____ ?
2 Do you _____ meat to fish?
3 What's your _____ city?
4 Are you _____ in sport?
5 Are you _____ on classical music?
6 Do you _____ walking in the countryside?
7 Do you think history is _____ ?

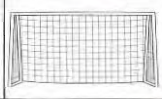
**6** ABOUT YOU **Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 49 I can talk about sport

## A Games

| game | place | equipment<br>= special things you need for the game | score<br>= the number of points or goals you have |
|---|---|---|---|
| football | pitch |  goal football | 1 – 0 one **nil**<br>2 – 1 two one OR two **goals** to one |
| rugby | pitch | rugby ball | 10 – 6 ten six OR ten **points** to six |
| ice hockey | rink | goal **stick** **puck** | 3–2 three two OR three goals to two |
| volleyball | court | net | 15–10 fifteen points to ten |
| tennis | court | net<br>racket <br>tennis ball | 6 – 3 six three OR six **games** to three<br>6 – 2 is one **set** in tennis |
| basketball | court | basket | 60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four |

**1** **Combine words to find games, places, equipment and scores.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ volley ✓ | pitch | tennis | ice | ▶ volleyball |
| football | ball ✓ | basket | nil | |
| racket | three | hockey | ball | |

**2** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*. Change the false sentences and make them true.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | You score goals in basketball. | F | You score points in basketball. |
| 1 | Sticks and rackets are equipment. | | |
| 2 | You have a net in tennis and volleyball. | | |
| 3 | You score points in ice hockey. | | |
| 4 | You play football on a court. | | |
| 5 | You play ice hockey with rackets. | | |
| 6 | You play volleyball on a court. | | |
| 7 | You score points in rugby. | | |
| 8 | You play rugby with a puck. | | |

**3** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I need to get a new tennis racket .

1 I watched a fantastic _____ of ice hockey on TV last night.

2 People who play _____ are usually very tall.

3 It was six _____ to four to Federer in the second _____ .

4 What was the football _____ ? ~ It was three _____ (3–0).

5 The football _____ is next to the tennis _____ .



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Football

**ITALY**

| | |
|---|---|
| Cagliari 1 | Torino 1 |
| Lazio 3 | Livorno 1 |
| Palermo 3 | AS Roma 3 |
| Sampdoria 1 | Parma 2 |
| Treviso 1 | Fiorentina 3 |

*Played Friday:*

| | |
|---|---|
| AC Milan 1 | Inter Milan 0 |

**League** table

| | played | won | drawn | lost | goals for | goals against | points |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ACMilan | 34 | 24 | 9 | 1 | 63 | 22 | 81 |
| Inter Milan | 34 | 24 | 4 | 6 | 75 | 27 | 76 |
| AS Roma | 34 | 22 | 5 | 7 | 61 | 26 | 71 |

On Friday, AC Milan **won** their important **match against** Inter Milan. Khaladze **scored** the only **goal** in the 70th minute. This means they are still **top of the table** but now **lead** Inter **by** five **points**. On Saturday, Cagliari could only **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Palermo, Roma were leading 3 – 0 at **half-time**, but Palermo came back in the **second half** to make the **final score** 3 – 3. Lazio **beat** Livorno 3 – 1, while Treviso **lost** 3 – 1 **to** Fiorentina.

### Glossary

**match** a game between two **teams**, e.g. Parma and Lazio
**against** One player or team plays **against** another player or team.
**score** get a goal or points in a game
**top of the table/league** number one in the table/league
**lead** be in front of others in a game or sport
**half-time** a period of rest between the first and second half
**first half/second half** The game is in two halves. (Each half is 45 minutes long.)
**final score** the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 3 – 2

**4** **Correct the bold words.**

▶ Shevchenko ~~did~~ two goals. scored
1 Lazio have a ~~play~~ next Saturday. _____
2 Inter are playing ~~with~~ Parma. _____
3 AC Milan are ~~number one~~ of the table. _____
4 Treviso lost 3 – 1 ~~with~~ Fiorentina. _____
5 Parma ~~beated~~ Sampdoria. _____
6 Milan ~~win~~ their game last week. _____
7 Palermo ~~draw~~ with AS Roma. _____
8 Lazio ~~won~~ Livorno 3 – 1. _____

**5** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ They scored in the second half.
1 It's an important _____ next week.
2 We are playing _____ Valencia.
3 Seville _____ 1 – 2 to Barcelona.
4 Bilbao _____ 2 – 2 _____ Villareal.
5 It was 0 – 0 at half-_____.
6 On Sunday Espanyol _____ Real Betis 2 – 1.
7 Ronaldinho _____ the goal.
8 We _____ our last match 4 – 1.
9 They were _____ 1 – 0 at half-time.
10 What was the final _____?

**spotlight** **Irregular verbs**

**win** PT **won**
*We **won** 2 – 1 **against** Sampdoria.*
**beat** someone PT **beat**
*We **beat** Sampdoria 2 – 1.*
**draw with** someone PT **drew** PP **drawn**
*We **drew** 3 – 3 **with** Roma.*
**lose to** someone PT **lost**
*We **lost** 1 – 0 **to** Milan.*

**6** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.**

▶ Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1-0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.

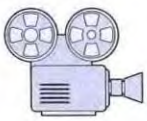
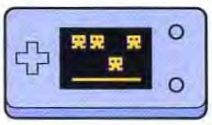
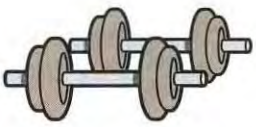
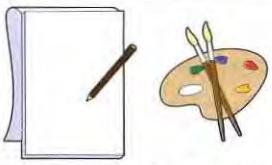


www.hellooteacher.ir

# 50 I can talk about my free time

## A Common activities

What do you do in your free time?

| I go ... | I play ... | I do some ...<br>I do (quite) a lot of ... | |
|---|---|---|---|
| camping | cards | travelling | I collect things (e.g. stamps). |
| skiing fishing | table tennis | flower arranging | I watch TV and DVDs. |
|  to the cinema |  computer games | cooking | I spend time with friends. |
|  to the gym | the guitar |  drawing and painting | I make my own clothes. |

**1** Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?

- ▶ watch TV inside
- ▶ go to the gym another place
- 1 go fishing _____
- 2 do a lot of cooking _____
- 3 do flower arranging _____
- 4 do some drawing _____
- 5 go camping _____
- 6 play cards _____
- 7 do a lot of travelling _____
- 8 play computer games _____

**2** Complete the sentences with *go*, *play*, *do*, *collect*, or *spend*.

- ▶ I never play cards.
- 1 Do you often _____ to the cinema?
- 2 My brother _____ old clocks.
- 3 I'd like to _____ the guitar.
- 4 She _____ a lot of cooking.
- 5 Do you _____ table tennis?
- 6 Do you _____ time with your family?
- 7 They _____ skiing every February.
- 8 She _____ quite a lot of travelling in spring.
- 9 She _____ all her own dresses.

**3** ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (✗) by the ones you aren't interested in.

**4** Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# B Hobbies

## Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many **hobbies**. Older people enjoy **gardening**, fishing, and **repairing cars**. For younger people, there are **various clubs** in school where children can learn many activities. **Popular** hobbies include sport, playing **musical instruments**, computers, **listening to** music, cooking, and collecting different things.

**Alexandra**: "I like listening to rock and **classical music**. I also like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is **shooting** (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite good at it."

**Veronica**: "I have many hobbies: cooking, **reading**, drawing, and **singing** in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It's wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper."

**Dima**: "I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English **songs**. I'm good at swimming, snowboarding and skiing. I also like travelling very much."

### Glossary

**hobby** PLURAL **hobbies** an activity that you like doing in your free time

**gardening** working in your garden

**repair cars** make cars work when they have a problem

**various (places)** a number of different (places)

**club** a group of people who do something together

**popular** If something is popular, many people like it.

**musical instrument** a thing used for playing music, e.g. a guitar

**listen to something**

**classical music** e.g. music by Bach and Mozart (NOT ~~classic music~~)

read

sing

Robbie Williams is a singer. He sings songs.

**5** **True or false? Correct the false sentences.**

▶ Alexandra doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.

1 Older people enjoy gardening. _____

2 Playing a musical instrument isn't popular in Russia. _____

3 Dima plays the piano. _____

4 Veronica's favourite hobby is reading. _____

5 Dima has various hobbies. _____

6 Veronica's quite good at shooting. _____

7 Veronica dances in the shower. _____

8 Younger people like repairing cars. _____

**6** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 What's your favourite hobby? _____

2 What hobbies are popular with older people? _____

3 What hobbies are popular with younger people? _____

4 What classical music do you listen to? _____

5 Can you play a musical instrument? If so, what? _____

6 Are you a good singer? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 51 I can talk about music Do Unit 50 first

## A Pop and rock

**Arctic Monkeys** are a four-piece **band** from Sheffield, England. They first became **well known** in 2004 when people **were able** to **download** their music from the internet. Their first two **singles** went to **number 1** in **the** UK **singles chart** in 2005, and their first **album**, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the **lead singer** and plays the **guitar**, Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Helder, who is the **drummer** and also sings.

**1** **What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.**

▶ There are four/five people in the band.

1 They first became well known in 2004/2005.
2 People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
3 Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
4 Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
5 Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
6 Matthew Helder plays the guitar/drums.

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Paul McCartney plays the guitar.

1 Another word for a band is a _____.
2 The most important singer is the _____ singer.
3 Someone who plays the drums is the _____.
4 A CD with one song on it is a _____.
5 A CD with about ten songs on it is an _____.
6 The _____ is the list of singles that sell most in a week.
7 The Beatles first became well _____ in the 1960s.
8 You can _____ music from the internet.

### Glossary

**band** e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also **group**)
**well known** SYN **famous**
**be able to** If you are able to do something, you can do it. OPP **unable**
**download music** copy music from the internet onto a computer, MP3 player, etc.
**single** one song on a CD
**number 1** the single that sells the most in one week
**the singles chart** the list of pop music singles that sell the most in one week
**album** a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD
**lead singer** the most important singer

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 Who's your favourite group? _____
2 Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play? _____
3 When did they first become well known? _____
4 What's the name of one of their singles? _____
5 What's the name of one of their albums? _____
6 What's your favourite song by this band? _____


www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Classical music

A **concert** of classical music.

Sir Simon Rattle, **conductor** of the Berlin Philharmonic **Orchestra**.

Vanessa Mae, **violinist**, playing a **violin** concerto **by** Mozart.

**Pianist** Sviatoslav Richter, playing one of Beethoven's **piano** sonatas.

**Opera singer** Cecilia Bartoli, **performing** in Cosi Fan Tutte.

**Cellist** Yo Yo Ma, playing the **cello** concerto by the English **composer**, Edward Elgar.

**spotlight** *by*

We say *a book* ***by*** (Tolstoy), *a song* ***by*** (Robbie Williams), *a symphony* ***by*** (Mozart), *a painting* ***by*** (Picasso), *a film* ***by*** (Martin Scorsese), etc.

**4** **Correct the spelling mistakes.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ violinista | violinist | 3 clasical | | 6 composor | |
| 1 conducter | | 4 conciert | | 7 performe | |
| 2 orchestre | | 5 celo | | 8 pianiste | |

**5** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is classical music.

1 A large group of people who play classical music together is called an _____.
2 The person who stands in front of them is the _____.
3 A person who plays the piano is a _____.
4 A person who plays the violin is a _____.
5 A person who plays the cello is a _____.
6 A person who sings opera is an _____ _____.
7 A person who writes music is a _____.
8 'Carmen' is an opera _____ Bizet.
9 Last night we went to a classical music _____ _____. Placido Domingo was _____ with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

**6** **Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 52 I can talk about films

## A Describing films

A **thriller** is often **exciting**.

A **comedy** is **funny**.

A **war film** is often **violent**.

A **love story** is **romantic**.

A **action film** is **exciting**.

A **horror film** is **frightening**.

A **cartoon** is often funny.

**spotlight** ***What kind of...?***

***What kind of*** *film is it?*
*~ It's a thriller.*
***What kind of*** *music do you like?*
*~ Rock music.*

**1** **Make kinds of film from the letters.**

▶ rwa milf war film
1 rillerht _____
2 moyecd _____
3 tanico ifml _____
4 onacrot _____
5 vole rosty _____
6 rohror limf _____

**2** **Match 1–5 with a–f.**

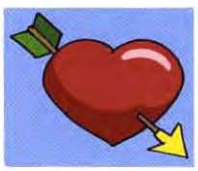
▶ an exciting d
1 a romantic _____
2 a frightening _____
3 a violent _____
4 a funny _____
5 an exciting _____

a war film
b comedy
c love story
d action film ✓
e thriller
f horror film

Write down new words in a notebook.

**3** **Write one adjective to describe each picture.**

▶ exciting



1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.**


www.hellooteacher.ir

## B What's on?

Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.

M **What's on** at the **cinema**?
E There's a film **on** called *Rumor Has It.*
M Mmm. What kind of **movie** is it?
E It's a romantic comedy. **It's about** a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It's had good **reviews**.
M OK. **Who's in it**?
E Er, it **stars** Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
M Oh, I like Kevin Costner – he's a good **actor**. Who's the **director**?
E Rob Reiner. He made *When Harry Met Sally.*
M Right. And **where's it on**?
E The Odeon.
M OK. Let's go and **see** it.

### Glossary

**What's on?** = 'What film can we see?'
**cinema** a place where you see films
**movie** a film
**It's about ...** = The subject is ...
**review** an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio, TV or internet
**star** be one of the main actors in a film (The person is **a star**.)
**actor** e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston (A female actor can also be called an **actress**.)
**director** person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg
**Where's it on?** = 'Where can we see it?'
**see a film** at the cinema (NOT ~~watch a film at the cinema~~)

### 5 Complete the conversation.

A ▶ What's on at the cinema?
B A film called *The Constant Gardener.*
A Oh, what (1) _____ of film is it?
B It's a thriller.
A What's it (2) _____ ?
B I'm not sure, but it's had good (3) _____ .
A Oh, and who's (4) _____ it?
B It (5) _____ Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
A They're both good (6) _____ . Who's the (7) _____ ?
B A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles.
A OK. And where's it (8) _____ ?
B At the ABC cinema.
A Let's go and (9) _____ it.
B Fine.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What kind of films do you like? _____
2 What was the last film you saw? _____
3 Where was it on? _____
4 Who are the stars of the film? _____
5 Who's the director? _____
6 What's it about? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 53 I can talk about the media

## A What is the media?

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **media** | *The **media** often write about famous people.* | TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet |
| **magazine** | *Do you read women's **magazines**?* | Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. *Time, Hola.* |
| **opinion** | *What's your **opinion** of the events?* | what you think about something |
| **report** | *Journalists **report** the news from all over the world.* | give information on the news; the person is a **reporter** (= journalist) |
| **event** | *The Olympic Games is a very big **event.*** | something important that happens. It can be good or bad. |
| **die** | *Fortunately, nobody **died** in the accident.* | stop living |
| **war** | *The two countries were **at war** for ten years.* | If a country is **at war**, it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is **peace**. |
| **disaster** | *The tsunami was a terrible **disaster.*** | something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die |
| **celebrity** (plural **celebrities**) | *There were a lot of **celebrities** at the first night of the film.* | famous person, usually from TV, film or sport |
| **advertisement** (also **advert**) | *There are too many **adverts** on TV and in the papers.* | text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something |

**1** Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write *S* or *D*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | What do the media say about him? | What does the advert say about him? | D |
| 1 | There is peace between the two countries. | There is war between the two countries. | |
| 2 | What's your opinion of the news? | What do you think of the news? | |
| 3 | It was a great event. | It was a great advertisement. | |
| 4 | He is reporting from Seoul. | He is giving the news from Seoul. | |
| 5 | I read it in an article. | I read it in an advertisement. | |
| 6 | She's a TV celebrity. | She's on TV a lot. | |
| 7 | Where did he live? | Where did he die? | |

**2** Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The ▶ media is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) _____, and the internet. The media (2) _____ on important (3) _____ from around the world; for example, (4) _____ like the Asian tsunami, or (5) _____ between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) _____ of events round the world. And reporters also like to write about (7) _____ such as Tom Cruise and Angelina Jolie.

**3** Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Your media

### Media questionnaire

**1 Why do you read a newspaper?**
- a ☐ to **find out** what has **happened**
- b ☐ because it has interesting **articles**
- c ☐ for the sports results
- d ☐ for the business news

**2 What do you watch on TV?**
- a ☐ **the news**
- b ☐ **soaps**
- c ☐ films
- d ☐ **nothing much**

**3 What do you listen to on the radio?**
- a ☐ the news
- b ☐ music **programmes**
- c ☐ the **weather forecast**
- d ☐ nothing much

**4 Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?**
- a ☐ yes, **all** of it
- b ☐ yes, **most** of it
- c ☐ yes, **some** of it
- d ☐ no, **none** of it

### Glossary

**newspaper** e.g. *The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde* (also **paper**)
**find out** get information or facts
**happen** take place, e.g. 'We don't know what will **happen** tomorrow.'
**article** a piece of writing in a paper or magazine
**on TV/on the radio** NOT ~~in TV/in the radio~~, but in the paper
**the news** a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world
**soap** a story on TV two or three times a week about the lives and problems of a group of people
**nothing much** nothing important
**programme** a TV or radio show, e.g. the news
**weather forecast** a description of the weather for the next few days
**believe** think that something is true
**all** = 100%, **most** = 80–95%, **some** = 30–50%, **none** = 0%

**spotlight** *watch, see, listen, hear*

We **watch TV**, but we **see** or **watch a programme**.
We **listen to the radio**, but we **hear** or **listen to a programme**.

**4 Circle the correct answer.**

▶ See (–)/to the film.
1 Read an article on/in the paper.
2 Let's listen to the/a news.
3 Watch a programme in/on TV.
4 Find –/out what has happened.
5 See the programme/article on TV.
6 Did you hear –/to the sports results?
7 I heard all –/of it on/in the radio.
8 Don't believe/listen what you see.
9 I watched most –/of it.

**5 Complete the dialogues.**

▶ I always read a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read all of it?
1 Did you _____ TV last night? ~ Yes, I _____ a programme about dogs.
2 I read the story but I don't _____ it's true. ~ No, _____ of it is true. It's all false.
3 Have you heard the _____ ? ~ No, what's _____ ?
4 Did you _____ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I _____ the 8 o'clock news.
5 What's in the _____ this morning? ~ I don't know; I never buy one.
6 Have you seen the weather _____ ? ~ Yes, it's going to rain.
7 What did you _____ on TV? ~ Oh, nothing _____ .

**6** ABOUT YOU **Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Hobbies and interests

## Unit 48

**1 Write the phrases in the correct column.**

| 1 ☺ | 2 ☺ | 3 😐 | 4 ☹ | 5 ☹ |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I really like it. | | | I think it's quite boring. | |

I really like it. ✓
I think it's quite boring. ✓
I love it.
I think it's OK.
I really hate it.
It's my favourite thing.
I quite enjoy it.
I'm not very keen on it.
I don't like it very much.
It's wonderful.
I think it's fantastic.
I'm not very interested in it.
It's quite enjoyable.

**2 Circle the correct word.**

▶ Who is/does your favourite actor?
1 My mother isn't interested/interesting in tennis.
2 Our teacher is very keen in/on classical music.
3 Do you enjoy drive/driving?
4 We prefer swimming to/that running.
5 I think that film's very bored/boring.
6 Sue quite likes/likes quite studying English.

## Unit 49

**1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.**

football rugby ice hockey volleyball tennis basketball

1 These games use a round ball: ▶ football,
2 Players use their hands more than their feet in these games: _____
3 These games have more than four players when they are playing: _____
4 This game uses: a) rackets _____ b) sticks _____

**2 Read Chelsea's results for last year, and complete the sentences below.**

| | played | won | drawn | lost | goals for | goals against | points |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Chelsea | 38 | 29 | 4 | 5 | 72 | 22 | 91 |

Chelsea ▶ played _____ 38 (1) _____ . They won 29, they (2) _____ four, and they (3) _____ five. They (4) _____ 72 (5) _____ , and finished the season (6) _____ of the league with 91 points.


www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 50

**1 Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Does he like gardening ? ~ Yes, he's always in the garden.

1 What's your _____ hobby? ~ I love camping. I _____ every year.

2 Does she like cooking? ~ Yes, she _____ a lot of cooking.

3 Does he have a hobby? ~ Yes, he _____ old cars and bikes.

4 Do you play a musical _____ ? ~ No, I don't.

5 Do you listen to _____ music? ~ Yes, I do. I really like Mozart.

6 Do you _____ a lot of travelling? ~ No. I prefer to _____ time with friends.

**2 Complete answer 'd' in each question. Then choose the answers that are true for you or your country.**

1 I enjoy ...
a playing cards b singing c collecting things d _____ time with friends

2 My favourite activity of these is ...
a travelling b camping c reading d _____ to the gym

3 I'm quite good at ...
a swimming b cooking c drawing d computer _____

4 I would like to ...
a paint well b play the guitar c sing well d _____ the piano

5 ... is popular in my country.
a Table tennis b Skiing c Fishing d Flower _____.

## Unit 51

**1 Put the words from the circle into two groups. Give each group a title.**

band

band ✓
violin drummer
orchestra cello
lead singer composer
a single conductor
guitar

**2 Write a different name to complete each sentence.**

1 _____ _____ is a famous opera singer in my country.

2 _____ _____ is lead singer with _____ .

3 _____ _____ is a famous conductor.

4 The _____ _____ orchestra comes from my country.

5 _____ _____ is a great pianist.

6 _____ _____ by _____ is one of my favourite albums.

7 _____ is number 1 in the charts at the moment.

8 _____ _____ is the drummer with _____ .



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 52

## 1 Complete the sentences.

▶ It's an action film and it's very exciting.
1 It's a w_____ film and it's very v_____.
2 It's a c_____ and it's very f_____.
3 It's a h_____ film and it's quite f_____.
4 It's a t_____ and it's very e_____.
5 It's a l_____ story and it's very r_____.

## 2 Complete the conversation.

A There's a good film ▶ on _____ at the Odeon cinema. It's called *Brokeback Mountain*.
B I've never heard of it. What's it (1) _____?
A A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
B Oh. Who's (2) _____ it?
A It (3) _____ Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
B Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4) _____.
A Yeah, and it's had great (5) _____ in all the papers. The (6) _____ is Ang Lee. He made *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*. Would you like to go and (7) _____ it?

# Unit 53

## 1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?

I usually buy a newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I listened the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it TV. As usual most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting about a television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

▶ a _____
1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____
7 _____

## 2 Match 1 – 6 with a – f.

1 an opinion ___
2 a news report ___
3 an event ___
4 an advertisement ___
5 the media ___
6 celebrities ___

www.hellooteacher.ir

# 54 I can arrange a holiday

Things you **might** do or **arrange** before you **go abroad on holiday**:

- **book** the **flight**
- book the **accommodation**
- **find** your **passport**
- get **a visa**
- get **travel insurance**
- get **foreign currency**
- **pack** your **suitcase**
- **hire** a car

**spotlight** ***might* + verb**

**Might** means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'.
**Might** is the same in all forms.
*You **might** be ill on holiday.*
*He **might** forget his passport.*
*It **might** be cold in March.*

**1** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ I have to get/find a visa.
1 We went abroad/holiday last summer.
2 I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
3 We might/have go to Japan in June.
4 I need to hire/get travel insurance.
5 Can we pack/hire a car here?
6 I must hire/find my passport.
7 Have you made/packed your suitcase?
8 Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

## Glossary

**arrange something** plan and organize something
**go abroad** go to another country
**on holiday** If you are on holiday, you are not at work and you are away from home.
**book** arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before you travel
**flight** a journey by plane
**accommodation** a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
**find** look and see where something is
**passport**

**visa** a document or note in your passport which means you can travel to certain countries
**travel insurance** You pay a company for travel insurance so they will help you if you lose something or are ill on holiday
**foreign** of another country
**currency** the money of a country, e.g. $ (dollars) or € (euros)
**pack** put clothes in a suitcase
**suitcase**

**hire** pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

**2** **Complete the text.**

I'm going on ▶ holiday for two weeks this Saturday. I wanted to go (1) _____ this year, perhaps to the Far East, and I finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2) _____ with China Airlines. I needed (3) _____ too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) _____ to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5) _____ a visa, and I got some foreign (6) _____ – Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for travel (7) _____ ; you never know, I (8) _____ be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow, I'm going to (9) _____ my suitcase. I know I put my passport somewhere, but where? I'll have to (10) _____ it before Saturday!

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad. Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 55 I can book a hotel room

## A Describing a hotel

**travelog.com**

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We **stayed** in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good **facilities: minibar**[1], **internet access**[2], **satellite TV**[3] and **air conditioning**. The hotel has a great **gym**[4]. There was 24-hour **room service** and the **staff** were very **helpful** with **tourist** information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other **guests**, and we had a **delicious** breakfast there too. We **recommend** both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short **stay**.

### Glossary

**stay in a hotel** live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)
**facilities** things you can use, e.g. internet, gym
**air conditioning** makes a room colder, **central heating** makes a room warmer
**room service** when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room
**staff** u people who work for a company
**helpful** wanting to help
**tourist** someone who goes to a place on holiday
**guest** a person staying in a hotel or your home
**delicious** very good to eat
**recommend** say something is good

**1** **Circle the right answer.**

▶ The bar was pleasant/delicious.
1 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
2 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn't recommend it to my sister.
3 The dinner was delicious/helpful.
4 A lot of tourists/guests visit our city.
5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

**2** **Complete the questions.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ What was the last hotel you stayed in _____ ?
1 How long did you _____ there?
2 Were the _____ helpful?
3 Did the room have good _____ , e.g. internet access?
4 Did it have a _____ with drinks in your room?
5 Did it have _____ TV?
6 Did it have air _____ and central _____ ?
7 Did you talk to other _____ in the hotel?
8 Would you _____ this hotel to other people?

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Booking a room

**double room**

**single room**

**twin room**

**shower**

Katja (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

R Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
K Oh, good morning. **I'd like to book** a **double room** with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
R **That's fine.** All our bedrooms are **en suite.**
K **Right**, and how much is that?
R It's **€60 a night**, and breakfast is **included in the price.**
K **That's great.** And has the hotel got **parking**?
R No, **I'm afraid not.**
K Oh, **what a shame.** OK, well, **never mind.** I'll take it.
R Right, can I have your credit card **details** please?...

### Glossary

**book a room** ask a hotel to keep a room for you for a future date
**en suite** a bedroom with a bathroom
**right** OK
**€60 a night** = €60 for one night
**included** If breakfast is included, you don't pay any more for it.
**(that's) great** fine; very good
**parking** a place to leave a car
**I'm afraid not** = I'm sorry, but no.
**never mind** = it isn't important
**details** information, e.g. the card number

**spotlight** *That's a shame/ What a shame*

You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don't want to hear.
*I can't come this evening.*
*~ Oh, **what a shame.***
*~ Oh, **that's a shame.***

### 4 Answer the questions about the dialogue.

▶ Is Katja staying for two nights? No
1 Does she want a room for one person? _____
2 Has the room got a bathroom? _____
3 Is she happy about the price? _____
4 Will she pay more for breakfast? _____
5 How much is the room for one night? _____
6 Can she leave her car at the hotel? _____
7 Is she angry about the parking? _____
8 Do they want her credit card number? _____

### 5 Complete the dialogue.

▶ A Regent Hotel, can I help you?
B Oh, hello, I'd (1) _____ to (2) _____ a room for two next Tuesday, please.
A Is that a (3) _____ room or a (4) _____ ?
B A double, please.
A All our rooms are (5) _____ , with bath or (6) _____ .
B That's (7) _____ . How much is the room?
A It's €45 (8) _____ night, and breakfast is (9) _____ .
B OK, and does the room have (10) _____ conditioning?
A I'm (11) _____ not.
B That's a (12) _____ . Oh, well, never (13) _____ . I'll take the room.
A (14) _____ . Could you give me your credit card (15) _____ , please?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 56 I can communicate in an airport

## A Check-in

When **passengers**[1] get to the **airport**, they put their **luggage**[2] (**suitcase**[3] and **bag**[4]) on a **trolley**[5] and go to the **check-in desk**[6]. There, they show their **ticket**[7] and passport, and put their luggage on the **scales**[8]. They can take **hand luggage**[9] on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, 'Do you want a **window seat**[10] or an **aisle seat**[11]?' They give the passenger a **boarding card**[12], and they often say, **'Have a good flight.'**

**1** Complete the words.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ p a s s enger | 4 h _ nd l _ gg _ ge | 8 w _ nd _ w se _ t |
| 1 su _ tca _ e | 5 have a g _ _ d fl _ _ ht | 9 t _ ck _ t |
| 2 l _ gg _ ge | 6 a _ _ p _ _ t | 10 sc _ l _ s |
| 3 ai _ le se _ t | 7 b _ _ rd _ _ g ca _ d | 11 tr _ ll _ y |

**2** Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

## B Departures

Departures from Bristol Airport — Time now: 10.30

| Flight | Destination | Departure time | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| EZY 6025 | Barcelona | 10.25 | **departed** |
| KL 1048 | Amsterdam | 10.35 | **flight closed** |
| BA 4021 | Munich | 10.50 | **last call gate** 5 |
| FR 483 | Dublin | 11.00 | **boarding** gate 7 |
| BA 7643 | Milan | 11.05 | **delayed** until 11.50 |
| BA 4084 | Paris CDG | 11.35 | check-in desk 22 |

**3** Look at the departures board. It is now 10.30. Circle the correct answer.

▶ Can you get on the Dublin flight now? (Yes)/No
1 Can you get on the Barcelona plane now? Yes/No
2 Can you get on the Amsterdam plane now? Yes/No
3 Can you get on the Munich plane now? Yes/No
4 Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
5 How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

### Glossary

**departed** If a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)
**flight closed** = You can't get on the plane now.
**last call** = You must get on the plane now.
**gate** the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane
**boarding** If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.
**delayed** If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn't on time.)



www.hellooteacher.ir

**4** **Complete the airport announcements.**

▶ Flight _____ KL 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed.

1 This is the last _____ for passengers on flight BA4021 to Munich. Please go to _____ 5 immediately.

2 Passengers on flight FR 483 to Dublin: this flight is now _____ at gate 7.

3 We are very sorry that flight BA 7643 to Milan is _____.

4 Would passengers on flight BA 4084 to Paris please go to _____ desk 22.

5 Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now _____ at 11.50.

## C Take-off and landing

You **get on** the plane and **fasten your seat belt**.

The **plane takes off**.

The plane **lands** and you **get off**.

You **go through passport control**. Someone **checks** your passport.

You **collect** your luggage from **baggage reclaim**.

You **go through customs** and leave the **terminal**.

**5** **Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | collect your luggage ☐ | d | the plane lands ☐ | g | get on the plane 1 |
| b | go through customs ☐ | e | get off the plane ☐ | h | the plane takes off ☐ |
| c | fasten your seat belt ☐ | f | leave the terminal ☐ | i | someone checks your passport ☐ |

**6** **Complete the phrases.**

▶ You leave the terminal.

1 The plane takes off and _____.

2 You fasten _____.

3 You go through _____ and _____.

4 You collect your _____ from _____.

5 Passengers _____ and _____ the plane.

**7** ABOUT YOU **Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

1 How often do you travel by plane? _____

2 What do you do in the airport when your flight is delayed? _____

3 Do you like to sit in a window seat or an aisle seat? _____

4 What hand luggage do you usually take on the plane? _____

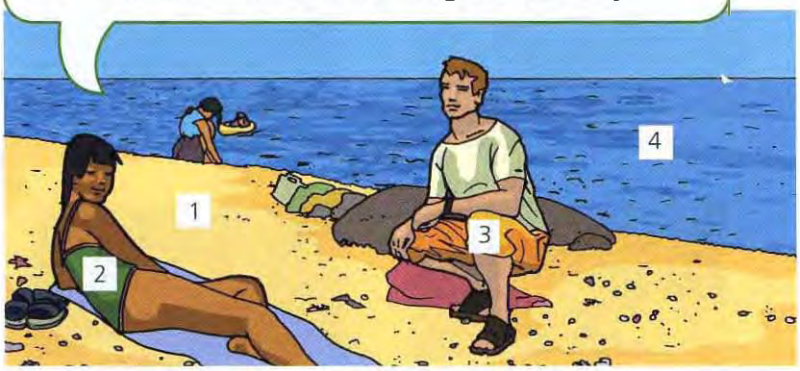
**8** **Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each picture?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 57 I can describe a beach holiday

We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday **resort** in the south of France. We **flew** to Nice, then **got a bus** to Hyères. We **rented an apartment** near the **beach**[1], and that's where we spent most mornings. I was happy to **lie** on the beach and **sunbathe** in my new **swimming costume**[2]; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long **shorts**[3]. He went swimming a lot – the **sea**[4] was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for **an hour or so**. In the late afternoon we usually **went for a walk**, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a **perfect** holiday.




## Glossary

**resort** a place where a lot of people go for a holiday
**fly** PT **flew** travel by plane
**get a bus** travel by bus (also **take a bus**)
**rent an apartment, house, etc.** pay to use an apartment, house, etc.
**apartment** rooms you rent for a holiday (also **flat**)
**lie** PT **lay** the woman in the picture is **lying** on the beach
**sunbathe** take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun
**relax** do nothing and enjoy yourself
**an hour or so** about an hour
**go for a walk** have a short walk to enjoy yourself
**perfect** If something is perfect it can't be better.

**1 Write the words for the meanings.**

▶ A place where people go for a holiday. r<u>esort</u>
1 Pay money to use a house for a period of time. r_____
2 Women often wear one on the beach. s_____ c_____
3 Men often wear these on the beach. s_____
4 Rooms you rent for a holiday. a_____
5 You can swim in this, and it's not a pool. s_____
6 Very good; cannot be better. p_____
7 Do nothing and enjoy yourself. r_____
8 Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. s_____

**2 Complete the sentences.**

▶ I went for a swim in the <u>sea</u>.
1 We sat on the _____ and looked at the sea.
2 We _____ a bus to the mountains, and then _____ for a walk.
3 We _____ an apartment in a small holiday _____ near Malaga.
4 It takes an hour or _____ to get to the beach.
5 We spent two days near Paris, then _____ from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
6 I want to relax, so I'm just going to _____ on the beach and sunbathe.

**3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1 – 4 in the picture.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **map** | *You can get a **map** in Tourist Information.* | |
| **guide**<br>**guidebook** | *Our **guide** was very good.*<br>*A **guidebook** is useful.* | A person (**guide**) or book (**guidebook**) which describes a place for tourists. |
| **typical** | *Look – a **typical** tourist, with a guidebook and camera.* | A **typical** thing is a good example of its kind. |
| **go sightseeing** | *We **went sightseeing** yesterday.* | go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places |
| **art gallery** | *I'm going to an **art gallery** this afternoon.* | a place where people can look at paintings |
| **visit museums** or art galleries etc. | *You **should visit** the British **Museum** in London.* | **visit** go and see a place for a short time<br>**museum** a place where you look at old or interesting things |
| **look round** | *I want to **look round** the town.* | walk round a place to see it |
| **go on a (guided) tour** | *We **went on a tour** of the old town.* | a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide |
| **get lost** | *I **got lost** so I asked for help.* | If you **get lost** or **are lost**, you don't know where you are. |
| **take photos** | *I **took** lots of **photos**.* | |

**1** Circle the correct word.

▶ art museum/gallery
1 go/do sightseeing
2 guide map/book
3 visit/go a museum
4 make/take photos
5 guide/guided tour
6 go on/make a tour

**spotlight** *should* + verb

*You **should** go to that museum* means 'it is a good idea to go to that museum'. **Should** is the same in all forms.
*If you go to Peru, you **should** visit Machu Pichu. It's fantastic.*

**2** Complete the sentences.

▶ We went on a guided tour.
1 She _____ a lot of photos of some _____ old French villages.
2 You _____ go and look _____ the museums – they're very interesting.
3 I _____ lost because I didn't have a _____ .
4 We went to the _____ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
5 We _____ on a tour of the centre and the _____ was interesting and funny.

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

1 go sightseeing? _____
2 take a map with you? _____
3 buy a guidebook? _____
4 take photos? _____
5 visit museums and art galleries? _____
6 look round the shops? _____
7 often get lost? _____
8 go on a guided tour? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 59 I can use the bank and post office

## A At the bank

| Questions | Answers | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| Can I use this card in this **cash machine**? | If it's a Visa card, yes. | also **ATM** |
| Where can I **change** dollars **into** euros? | In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change. | **change** (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros |
| Is there a **bureau de change** near here? | Yes, there's one at the station. | an office where you can change money |
| Which **currency** do I need for Argentina? | You need pesos. | the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA |
| I've got Japanese yen. **What's the exchange rate for** the euro? | It's 142 yen **to** the euro. | **exchange rate** how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US$10 = €12.40 |
| Where do I **sign** this? | Just here. | |
| **What commission** do you **charge**? | We charge 1%. (% = **per cent**) | **commission** the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency<br>**charge** ask someone to pay a certain price for something |

**1** **Match 1 – 5 with a – f to make questions.**

▶ Where can I change my euros ___f___
1 What currency do I need _____
2 What commission _____
3 Can I use this card _____
4 What's the exchange rate _____
5 Is there a bureau de change _____

a for Brazil?
b for the peso?
c do you charge?
d in this cash machine?
e in the station?
f into dollars? ✓

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ The banks ___charge___ 1.5% commission.
1 _____ the cheque at the bottom.
2 _____ dollars into euros.
3 The _____ in China is the yuan.
4 What's the exchange _____ ?
5 You pay one _____ cent to the bank.
6 You get money from a _____ machine.

**3** ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY **Write your answers or ask another student.**

1 What's the currency in your country? _____
2 Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar? _____
3 When you travel, where do you get or change money? _____
4 Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency? _____
5 Where do you find cash machines in your country? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B At the post office

**1** You want to **send a letter to** a friend.

You **write** the name, **address** and **postcode** on the **envelope**.

You **put a stamp** on it.

You **post** it in the **letter box** or **postbox.**

The **postman** or **postwoman delivers** it in the next day or two.

**2** You want to **send a parcel to** Germany.

You take it to the **post office**.

'**How much is this parcel to** Germany, **please**?'

'Put it **on the scales**, please. 350 gms – that's £3.43.'

'That's fine. And **can I have** two stamps for **postcards** to Germany?'

**4** **Answer the questions. Choose answers from the box.**

- ▶ Where do you post letters? in a postbox, in a letter box
- 1 What do postmen do? _____
- 2 What do you write on an envelope? _____
- 3 Where do you take a parcel? _____
- 4 Where do you put the parcel? _____
- 5 What do you put on an envelope/parcel? _____
- 6 Who takes parcels to people's homes? _____
- 7 Which three things can you send? _____

to the post office
a postcard
in a postbox ✓
deliver letters
a stamp
the postman
a letter
the name, address and postcode
in a letter box ✓
a parcel
on the scales

**5** **Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.**

- ▶ please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this / ? How much is this parcel to Japan, please?
- 1 box / is / near / there / here / a / ? _____
- 2 scales / can / it / you / the / on / ? _____
- 3 Argentina / I / for / three / can / stamps / ? _____
- 4 letter / where / post / this / I / ? _____
- 5 Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ? _____
- 6 post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at / ? _____

**6** **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Holidays

## Unit 54

**Read the text on the right.**
**Find words in the text to match the meanings.**

▶ of another country which is not your country foreign
1 plan or organize _____
2 money that a country uses _____
3 pay to use something for a short time _____
4 go to another country _____
5 a time when you don't have to work _____
6 arrange and pay for something in advance _____
7 put your things in a bag before you travel _____
8 a journey by plane _____
9 a place to stay, e.g. a hotel _____

When you go abroad on holiday, you might need to arrange certain things. Firstly, you will probably need to book a flight and your accommodation. For some countries, you will need to take or send your passport to the embassy of that country to get a visa, and you might also need foreign currency. Some travellers like to hire a car before they go, and then get it at the airport. And when you pack your suitcase, don't forget your passport!

## Unit 55

**1 Match 1 – 10 with a – k.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ double e | 6 I'm afraid ___ | a conditioning | g TV |
| 1 central ___ | 7 never ___ | b a shame | h heating |
| 2 air ___ | 8 book ___ | c in the price | i mind |
| 3 internet ___ | 9 what ___ | d access | j service |
| 4 room ___ | 10 included ___ | e room ✓ | k a room |
| 5 satellite ___ | | f not | |

**2 Complete the conversation.**

▶ A Can you recommend _____ a good hotel in New York?
B Yes, we (1) _____ in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior.
A Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
B Yes, they were all (2) _____ .
A And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
B Yes, the room (3) _____ were great. And the hotel (4) _____ were really friendly and helpful too.
A How about the food?
B It was really good – in fact, it was (5) _____ . And the hotel wasn't too expensive – it was about $50 a (6) _____ .
A That's good, isn't it? And has it got (7) _____ ?
B I don't know. We didn't have a car.
A It sounds perfect. I think I'll (8) _____ a room, then.


www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 56

**1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ departures j | 5 seat ____ | a luggage | f card |
| 1 check-in ____ | 6 hand ____ | b belt | g call |
| 2 gate ____ | 7 aisle ____ | c closed | h control |
| 3 last ____ | 8 boarding ____ | d seat | i desk |
| 4 passport ____ | 9 flight ____ | e seven | j board ✓ |

**2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.**

1 I couldn't carry my suitcases, so I put them on a _____.
2 I had to show my passport and _____ at the check-in desk.
3 I put my luggage on the _____ and it was 25 kilos.
4 The check-in person said, 'Have a good _____'.
5 I was an hour late because my flight was _____.
6 When I _____ on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7 I _____ my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8 It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane _____ at Manchester Airport.
9 After we got off the plane, we went and _____ our luggage.
10 When I _____ through customs, there was nobody there.

## Unit 57

**One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sunbathed | went | get | perfect | holiday ✓ | or | flew | rented | resort |

| | |
|---|---|
| We had a lovely/in France last | ▶ holiday |
| year. We to Marseille Airport and then | 1 _____ |
| we had to a bus to Cassis, which is | 2 _____ |
| a very nice holiday by the sea. | 3 _____ |
| We an apartment in the centre of | 4 _____ |
| the town. Every morning we for a | 5 _____ |
| walk round the town, then we on | 6 _____ |
| the beach for an hour so. The | 7 _____ |
| weather was for the whole week. | 8 _____ |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 58

**Correct one mistake in each sentence.**

▶ She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.

1 We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon. _____

2 Did you go seeing in Paris? _____

3 We always go lost in a new place. _____

4 She made a lot of photos on her holiday. _____

5 Did you visit at the museum? _____

6 There were lots of typic tourists. _____

7 There's a good exhibition at the art museum. _____

8 Have you got a guided book about London, please? _____

# Unit 59

**1 Write words beginning with P and C.**

▶ post a letter = put a letter in a letter box

1 p_____ = where you buy stamps

2 p_____ = the numbers and letters at the end of an address

3 p_____ = the person who delivers the letters

4 p_____ = letter box

5 p_____ = you write these on holiday

6 p_____ = you _____ a stamp on an envelope

7 p_____ = %

8 p_____ = you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box

9 c_____ = the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros

10 c_____ = a place inside or outside a bank where you can get money with a card

11 c_____ = e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos

12 c_____ = you have to pay this to a bank for changing money

13 c_____ = a bank can _____ 1% for changing money

**2 Complete the questions.**

▶ Can I have five stamps for postcards to Russia, please?

1 How much is it to _____ a 1 kg parcel to Italy?

2 Did you put a stamp on the _____ ?

3 How many letters did the postman _____ today?

4 What's the _____ for the Brazilian Real?

5 Can I change dollars _____ pounds sterling here?

6 Is there a _____ de _____ in the centre?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 60 I can **meet and greet people**

## A Introductions

Sam and Mary meet for the first time ...

JANE Sam, **this is** Mary.
MARY **Hello.**
SAM **Hi. Nice to meet you.**

two hours later ...

MARY Well, goodbye, Sam. **Good to meet you.**
SAM Yes. **I hope to see you again. Bye!**

### Glossary

**bye** a short form of **goodbye**
**shake hands**

### spotlight Introductions

- **Hi** is informal and common with young people.
- **How do you do?** is also possible, but now very formal.
- We often use **Nice to meet you** or **Good to meet you** when we meet people for the first time, and when we say goodbye the first time after we meet them.

**1** **Make sentences from the words.**

▶ you / do / how / do / ? How do you do?
1 meet / nice / hello / you / to _____
2 this / Max / Hanna / is _____
3 again / hope / you / bye / to / I / see _____
4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet _____

**2** **Complete the dialogues.**

1 Lucia Emma, ▶ this is Alex.
Alex Hi, Emma. _____ to meet you.
Emma _____ .
2 Alex Goodbye, Emma. I _____ to see you _____ .
Emma Yes. _____ .
3 Chris Jan, this _____ Dan.
Jan _____ , Dan. Good _____ _____ _____ .
Dan _____ , Jan.
4 Dan Well, _____ , Jan. I hope _____ _____ _____ again.
Jan _____ !



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Meeting a friend

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

T Hi, Matt. **How are you**?
M **Fine, thanks**. And you?
T Yes, **not bad**.
M Good. And how's Sarah?
T Yeah, she's **very well**.

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

M **OK. I've got to** go now. **See you later**.
T Sure. About 7.00?
M Yeah, **that's fine**.
T Good. **See you then**.
M OK. Bye.

### Glossary

**how are you?** You say this to a friend when you meet. (also **how are things**?)
**fine** OR **very well** OR **not bad** are common replies to 'How are you?' NOT ~~very fine~~
**have got to do** = have to do OR **must** do (**have got to** is more informal)

### spotlight *See you...*

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.
***See you** next Saturday.*
**See you then** = at the time we agreed
**See you later** = the same day
**See you soon** = another day, e.g. next week
**See you again** = another time, but I'm not sure when

**3** Complete the phrases.

▶ H o w a r e y o u ?
1 S__ you _g___.
2 I m_st g_ n_w.
3 S__ you l_t__.
4 H_'s v__y w__l.
5 S__ you s___.
6 H_w _r_ th___s?
7 S__ you _n S__d_y.
8 I'v_ g_t t_ go n_w.
9 Th__'s f_n_.

**4** Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.

1 Jim Hi, How ▶ are you ?
Sam I'm very _____. And you?
Jim Yeah, not _____. And _____ your wife?
Sam She's _____.

2 Jim Sam, I _____ _____ _____ go now.
Sam OK. See you _____.
Jim Sure. What time? 6.30?
Sam Yeah, _____ fine . See you _____.

## C Saying hello and goodbye

| | hello | | | goodbye | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | anytime (24 hours) | before lunch | after lunch | after 6 p.m. | anytime | at the end of the evening |
| | **hello** | **good morning** | **good afternoon** | **good evening** | **goodbye** | **goodnight** |
| more informal | **hi** OR **hi there** | **morning** | **afternoon** | **evening** | **bye** OR **bye bye** | **night** |

**5** Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

| What do you say when you: | | more informal |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ see someone anytime? | Hello | Hi |
| 1 see someone before lunch? | | |
| 2 see someone after 6.00 p.m.? | | |
| 3 see someone after lunch? | | |
| 4 say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.? | | |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 61 I can use special greetings

| Say this to someone when: | Expression | Response |
|---|---|---|
| you say goodbye | **have a nice day/evening**<br>**have a good/lovely weekend** | **thanks, you too**<br>**and you** |
| someone is going to bed | **goodnight, sleep well** | |
| it's Christmas/new year/Easter (Easter is a Christian festival in March or April.) | **happy/merry Christmas**<br>**happy New Year**<br>**happy Easter** | **happy Christmas**, etc.<br>**the same to you** |
| it's their birthday | **happy birthday** | thank you<br>thanks |
| they've done something well or passed an exam | **well done**<br>**congratulations** | |
| they are getting married or having a baby | **congratulations** NOT ~~well done~~ | |
| they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam | **good luck** NOT ~~good lucky~~ | |
| they are going away, e.g. on holiday | **have a good/nice holiday/time**<br>**have a good journey** | |
| someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time | **welcome to** London<br>**welcome home/back** | |
| | **cheers** | **cheers** |

**1** Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

▶ Merry Christmas! b
1 I'm going to New York. ____
2 Cheers! ____
3 Goodnight. ____
4 Hello! I'm back! ____
5 I'm 21 today. ____
6 It's my driving test today. ____
7 Bob and I are getting married. ____
8 I've passed my driving test. ____
9 Have a nice evening. ____

a You too.
b The same to you. ✓
c Good luck.
d Welcome home!
e Well done!
f Congratulations.
g Sleep well.
h Cheers!
i Have a good journey.
j Happy birthday!

**spotlight** *cheers*

**Cheers** has two other meanings in informal, spoken English.
1 Thank you
*Here's the money you lent me. ~ Oh,* ***cheers.***
2 Goodbye
*See you later. ~* ***Cheers.***

**2** Complete the phrases.

1 Have a nice/good d<u>ay</u>____/e____/w____/h____/
j____/t____.
2 Happy C____/E____/N____ Y____/b____.
3 Goodn____/Good l____ l/Well d____!/W____home!

**3** Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 62 I can ask for information

## A About people

**Who** do you live with, Tracey?
And **what's** your brother **like**?
And your boyfriend – **what does** he **do**?
**How long** have you known him?
I understand you're learning Spanish.
**How often** are the classes?
And **why** Spanish?
**Whose** idea was it to live in Spain?
**What's wrong with** England?
**How about you**? What do *you* think?
**What kind of** work can you do in Spain?

~ My parents, and my younger brother.
~ He's stupid – and a bit fat.
~ He works for an airline company.
~ About two years.
~ Yes, that's right.
~ Twice a week.
~ Because we want to live in Spain.
~ My boyfriend's.
~ He doesn't like the weather.
~ Yeah. I think it's a good idea.
~ My boyfriend can still work for his company, and I can get a job in a bar.

**Glossary**

**What's wrong with England?** = What's the problem with England?

**spotlight** ***whose*** and ***belong to***

***Whose*** *money* ***is that?*** ~ *It's* ***mine.*** (It's my money.)
***Who does*** *this bag* ***belong to?*** ~ *It's Ben's.* (The bag **belongs to** Ben.) NOT ~~*Whose does this bag belong to?*~~

**1** **Make questions from the words.**

▶ for / do / work/ who / you / ? Who do you work for?
1 you / often / there / go / how / do / ? _____
2 like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ? _____
3 he / does / what / do ? _____
4 have / lived / how long / there / you / ? _____
5 wrong / Peter / with / what's / ? _____
6 this / to / belong / does / who / ? _____
7 his / like / what's / flat / ? _____
8 like / you / why / her / don't / ? _____

**2** **Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.**

▶ Because she's horrible to me. 8
a Ten years. _____
b He's very angry with me. _____
c It's small but very nice. _____
d Twice a year. _____
e It's mine. _____
f He's a doctor. _____
g Rock and pop. _____

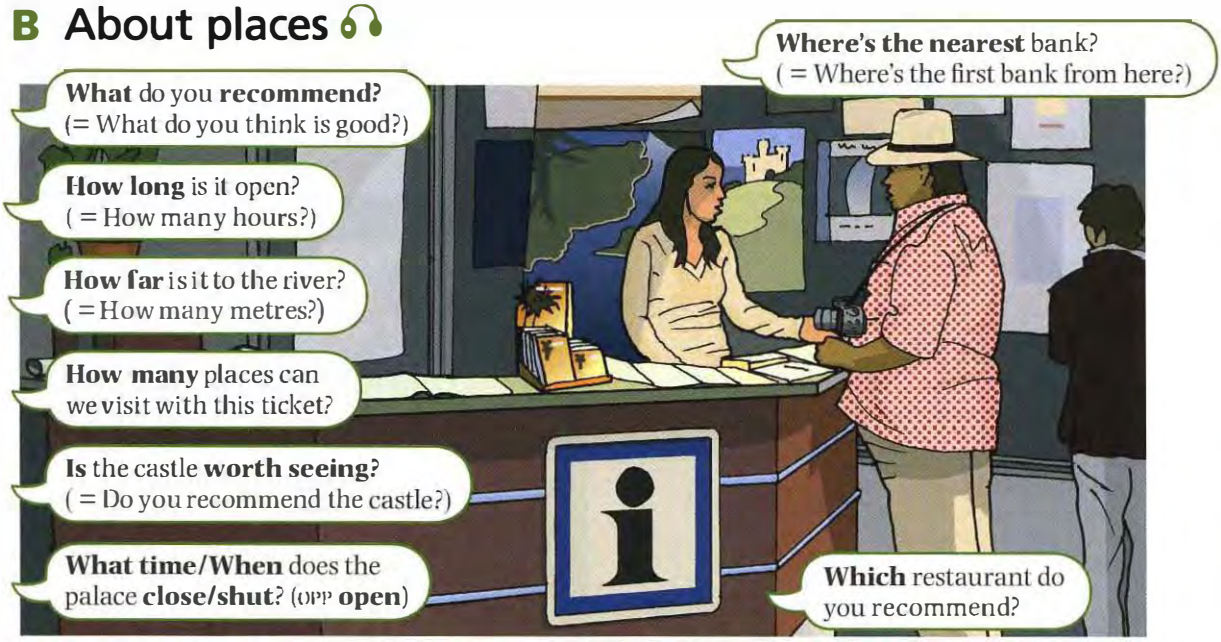
**3** **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ What kind of animal is it?
~ I think it's a horse.
1 How _____ do you go? ~ Every week.
2 _____ jacket is this? ~ It's mine.
3 _____'s she like? ~ She's very nice.
4 I don't speak German. _____ about you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.
5 How _____ have you worked there?
~ Six months.
6 _____ does this belong to?
~ I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B About places




**4** **Circle the correct answers.**

▶ How far/long is it to the museum?
1 Which/what is your address?
2 How long/long time do you need?
3 What hour/time does it open?
4 How much/many places did you visit?
5 Where's the nearest/next café?
6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

**spotlight** ***which*** **or** ***what?***

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities.
*We have a double room or a twin.* ***Which*** *do you prefer?*
In other situations, use **what**.
***What****'s the address of the hotel?* (NOT ~~*Which is the address?*~~)

**5** **Complete the questions.**

▶ When does the post office open?
1 How _____ is it to the station?
2 How _____ places did you go to?
3 There are two. _____ do you want?
4 _____'s the phone number of the bank?
5 It opens at 8.00, but when does it _____?
6 Is it _____ going to see Notre Dame?
7 Where's the _____ underground station?
8 There's a lot to see. What do you _____?

**6** ABOUT YOUR TOWN **Answer the questions or ask another student.**

1 Where do you live? _____
2 How long have you lived there? _____
3 Which places are worth visiting? _____
4 How far are they from your home? _____
5 Can you recommend any restaurants? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 63 I can ask for things

## A Requests and responses

| Requests (in the classroom) | Responses |
|---|---|
| **Can you bring** the dictionaries here, **please**? | ✓ **Sure.** OK. Yeah, sure. Yeah, **no problem.** Yes, **of course.** |
| **Could you finish** this exercise for homework, **please**? | |
| Yuri, **could you possibly take** these books to the staffroom? | |
| Elena, can you **change places** with Gabi? | |
| Could you **lend** me a pen, Boris? | ✗ (No), **I'm afraid** I can't. |
| Dmitri, could you possibly **wait** here a few minutes? | |

**spotlight** **Being polite**

**Can** and **could** have the same meaning in the table.
**Could you possibly ...?** is more polite, for a bigger request.
**Please** is very common, and makes a request more polite.
**I'm afraid ...** is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

**Glossary**

bring

take

**finish something** do or complete the last part of something
**change places** e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place
**lend** give something to someone to use for a short time
**wait** stay in one place for a short time until something happens
**I'm afraid I can't** = I'm sorry, but I can't NOT ~~I'm afraid but I can't~~

**1** **Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.**

▶ Can you clean the board?
1 Can ____ lend ____ a pen? ~ Yes, ____ course.
2 Could you ____ the books here, ____? ~ Yes, ____ problem.
3 Could you ____ wait here a few ____ ? ~ I'm ____ I can't.
4 Lia, can you ____ places ____ Maris, ____ ? ~ Yeah , ____ .

**2** **Use the words to write requests and responses. Use *can, could* and *could ... possibly* and different responses.**

▶ take / books / away
A Could you take these books away, please?
B Yes, sure.

1 finish / exercise / homework
A ____
B ____

2 Luca / change places / Maria
A ____
B ____

3 bring / notebook / tomorrow
A ____
B ____

4 lend / pencil
A ____
B ____

5 wait / classroom a few minutes
A ____
B ____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Asking for and giving permission

**Could you lend me** your dictionary?

Sure.

**Is it all right if I** sit in that chair?

Yes, **that's fine.**

**Do you mind if I** look at your answers?

No, go ahead.

**Could I borrow** your pen?

I'm afraid I need it.

**Is it OK if I** close the door?

Yes, sure.

**Can I** open the window?

Sure, **go ahead.**

### Glossary

**go ahead** OR **that's fine** You say go ahead or that's fine when you give someone permission to do something.
**all right** = OK
**Do you mind if ...?** = Is it a problem for you if ...? (The answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a problem'.)

### spotlight *lend* and *borrow*

If you **borrow** a pen from someone, you use their pen, then give it back.
If you **lend** someone a pen, you give them your pen to use for a short time.
*Could **I borrow** your pen? = Could **you lend me** your pen?*

**3** **Write new sentences. Change the bold words. The meaning must be the same.**

▶ **Can** we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?
1 Is it **OK** if I use this dictionary? _____
2 **Is it OK** if I make a coffee? _____
3 **Can I** stay for another ten minutes? _____
4 Is it OK **to** close the window? _____
5 Can **you lend me** your book? _____
6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, **of course**. _____
7 Can I use the computer? ~ **I'm sorry but** I need it. _____
8 Is it **OK** to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **sure**. _____

**4** **Ask for permission. Use different words in each sentence.**

▶ You want to sit near the window. Can I sit near the window?
1 You want to go at one o'clock today. _____
2 You want to borrow a rubber. _____
3 You want to go to the toilet. _____
4 You want to sit in a different seat. _____

**5** **Test yourself. Write five more ways to give permission from this unit.**

▶ Yes, sure.
1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 64 I can invite people

### Inviting

**Would you like to ...**
**Do you want to ...**
**... go out for** a meal/a drink?
**... come round for** a coffee?
... come to a **party**?

### Saying yes

**Yes, great!**
**Yes, I'd love to!**
**That sounds** lovely/fun/good.
**That would be** lovely/nice.

### Saying no

**I'm afraid I can't.**
**I'm sorry, but** I'm **busy.**
**I'd love to, but** I'm going to the cinema.

**spotlight** ***Would you like to... or Do you want to...?***

**Would you like to...?** is a little more polite than **Do you want to...?**

**1** **A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.**

▶ How/tomorrow? about
1 Would you to come round later? _____
2 Yes, I'd love. _____
3 Do you want to out for dinner? _____
4 That lovely. _____
5 I'm afraid can't. _____
6 That be nice. _____
7 Do you want come to a party? _____
8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight. _____

**2** **Complete the questions and answers.**

▶ Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.
1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.
2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.
3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.
4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.

A Do you want to go out for a drink ?
B That would be lovely .
A Would ?
B Yes, g .
A Do ?
B I'm a .
A Would ?
B Yes, that s .
A Do ?
B I'd , but
gym.

## Glossary

**invite** ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.
**go out for a meal** or **a drink** means 'go to a restaurant or a café/bar'
**come round** come to my home
**party** a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, play games, etc.
**great** very good SYN **wonderful**
**I'd love to** = I want to do it very much (**I'd** = I would)
**That sounds lovely.** = I think that's a lovely idea.
**That would be lovely.** = I would like to do it.
**busy** If you are **busy**, you have a lot of things to do.
**I'm afraid I can't** = I'm sorry, (but) I can't NOT ~~I'm afraid but I can't~~



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 65 I can make suggestions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ask for a **suggestion** | **What shall we do**<br>**Where shall we go** | this weekend? |
| Make a suggestion | **Shall we** go to the beach?<br>**Maybe we could** go out for a meal. | **What about going** to an exhibition?<br>**Let's** go out for a drink. |
| Say 'yes' | Yes, **(that's a) good/great idea!**<br>Yeah, **let's do that.**<br>**OK, fine.** | |
| Say 'no', or make another suggestion | **I'm not sure** (about that).<br>**Well, I'd prefer to** stay at home.<br>**Hmm... or perhaps we could** go to the mountains. | |

**1** **Put the dialogue in order.**

I'd prefer to get them at the station. ☐
The weather's nice, so ☐
Yes, good idea. ☐
What shall we do this weekend? 1
Maybe we could take the train. ☐
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online? ☐
what about going to the beach? ☐

**Glossary**

**suggestion** an idea that someone gives you to think about
**maybe/perhaps** possibly
**What about ...?** = What do you think about ...?

**spotlight** **Saying *no***

It isn't very polite to say **no** to a suggestion in English. It's more polite to say, ***I'm not sure***, or make another suggestion.
*Shall we go out? ~ Well, I'd prefer to stay in.*

**2** **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ We could to have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend.
1 What do we do this evening? _____
2 Do you have a suggest? _____
3 What about go to see a film? _____
4 I'd prefer go by train. _____
5 Yes, that a good idea. _____

**3** **Write in a word where there is a /.**

1 A ▶ What / we do / evening? What shall we do this evening?
B What / going / the theatre? _____
A I'm / sure / that _____
2 A What / we / on Saturday? _____
B Perhaps we / go out for a meal _____
A OK, let's / that _____
3 A Where / we go / afternoon? _____
B / 's go to an exhibition. _____
A Yeah / 's a good / _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 66 I can offer, accept, and refuse

## A Offering food, drink or help

**Offering** food/drink
**Would you like** a biscuit?
**Do you want** something to eat?

**Accept** = say yes
**Yes, please.**
**Thanks.**
**Thanks. Could I have...?**

**Refuse** = say no
**No, thanks.**

Offering help
**Can I give you a hand?**
**Do you need some help?**

Accept
**Yes, please.**
**Thanks a lot.**
**Thank you (very much).**

Refuse
**No, I'm fine, thanks.**
**No, don't worry.**

**spotlight** **Saying *thank you***

**Thanks** or **Thanks a lot** are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. **Thank you (very much)** is more formal.

**1** **Correct one letter of one word in each sentence.**

▶ ~~Could~~ you like something to drink? Would

1 Can I give you a band? _____ ~ No, don't lorry. _____
2 Do you want something to ear? _____ ~ Thanks. Would I have a biscuit? _____
3 So you need some help? _____ ~ No, I'm mine, thanks. _____
4 Would you bike a drink? _____ ~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee? _____

**2** **One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.**

▶ No, I worry. don't

1 Can I give you hand? _____
2 Thank you much. _____
3 Would you a drink? _____
4 Thanks lot. _____
5 No, fine, thanks. _____

**3** **Complete the questions and answers.**

▶ Offer someone food. Do you want something to eat?

1 Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
A Would _____ a drink?
B Yes, _____ . _____ water?

2 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
A Do _____ help?
B No, _____ , thanks.

3 Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
A Would _____ eat?
B Yes, _____ . _____ an apple?

4 Offer someone help.
Say no.
A Can _____ hand?
B No, _____ worry.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Offering to do something

**Would you like me to** make the dinner?
~ **That's very kind of you.**

**Shall I** carry your bag?
~ OK. Thanks.

**Do you want me to** answer that?
~ Yes, please.

**Let me** pay for the drinks.
~ That's very kind of you.

**spotlight** *let me* + verb

We use **let me** + verb when we really want to do something for someone.
***Let me*** *pay for lunch.* ***Let me*** *get the train tickets.*
***Let me give you a lift*** *to the station.* = Let me take you in my car.

**4** **Match 1 – 6 with a – g.**

▶ I'm really hungry. c
1 I haven't got much money. _____
2 Are the dishes dirty? _____
3 I have to go to the airport. _____
4 This suitcase is really heavy. _____
5 Is that someone at the door? _____
6 I don't feel very well. _____

a Let me carry it for you.
b Do you want me to ring the doctor?
c Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
d That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
e Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
f Let me give you a lift.
g Yes. Shall I see who it is?

**5** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ Shall/(Let) me answer the door.
1 That's very kind for/of you.
2 Let/Let's me get the shopping.
3 Let/Shall I answer the phone?
4 Would/Do you like me to help?
5 Shall I/I'll carry that for you?
6 Shall I give/take you a lift to work?
7 Let me/I do the washing-up.
8 Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?

**6** **Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. *it's, I'll*) in each gap.**

1 A I'm just going to the post office.
B Well, ▶ let me give _____ a _____.
A Oh, _____. That's very _____ of _____.
2 A I'm really tired!
B OK. _____ I _____ the dinner for you?
A Yes, _____. And then let _____ do the washing-up afterwards.
3 A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Let _____ _____ it for you.
B Oh, _____ very much.
4 A Oh, no! That's the phone again!
B Do you _____ me to answer it?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 67 I can **say sorry and respond**

| Saying sorry/apologizing | Responses |
|---|---|
| **Sorry,** I don't speak English very well. | **That's all right.** I'll speak slowly. |
| **I'm sorry, I've broken** a cup. | That's OK. **Don't worry.** |
| **I'm very sorry – I've lost** your pen. | **It doesn't matter.** I've got lots of pens. |
| **I forgot** to post your letter. **I'm really sorry.** | **Never mind.** I can post it later. |
| **Sorry I'm late.** The traffic was terrible. | Oh, don't worry about it. |

## Glossary

**apologize to someone** say sorry to someone
**rude** OPP **polite**
**that's all right/don't worry/it doesn't matter/never mind**
These phrases all mean 'it's not important/it's OK'.
**break** PT **broke**
PP **broken**

**lose** PT/PP **lost** If you lose something, you can't find it.
**forget** PT **forgot** PP **forgotten** OPP **remember**
**really sorry** very sorry
**sorry I'm late** NOT ~~sorry for be late~~

## spotlight *(I'm) sorry*

We can also use **(I'm) sorry** to ask someone to repeat something:
***Sorry, could you repeat that, please?*** ~ *Sure,* ***no problem.***
***I'm sorry,*** *what was your name again?*
~ *It's Marianne.*

**1** **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ I'm sorry for be late. I'm sorry I'm late.

1 A I'm really sorry. I've lose your dictionary. _____
B Don't mind. _____
2 A I'm sorry, I've forget your book. _____
B No worry. _____
3 A I've break your cup – I'm very sorry. _____
B It isn't matter. _____

**2** **Complete the dialogues.**

1 A I'm really sorry.
B _____ all right.
2 A Sorry I'm late.
B Don't _____.
3 A I'm _____ sorry.
B It doesn't _____.
4 A It's broken – I'm very sorry.
B Oh, never _____.
5 A I'm sorry _____ late. I missed the bus.
B That's OK.
6 A _____, could you repeat that, please?
B Sure, no _____.
7 A Did he _____ to you?
B Yes, he was very sorry.
8 A Did he say sorry?
B No, he's very _____.

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 68 I can express my opinion

**I think** the school is **excellent**.

He wants our **opinion** of the course.

I thought it was a very funny book.

**What do you think of** London?

I like this dress. What do you think?

Max said the course was **a waste of money**.

~ Yes, **I agree**.

~ Well, **I don't think it's** very good.

~ **I agree with you**. I loved it.

~ **Personally**, I don't like big cities.

~ **I'm not sure.** I think I **prefer** the other one.

~ **I disagree**. I thought it was great.

**1** **Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence.**

▶ very / I / good / it's
I think it's very good.

1 do / it / think / what / you / ?
_____

2 you / agree / I
_____

3 don't / very / I / good / it's
_____

4 waste / it / money / a / was
_____

5 I / like / personally / didn't
_____

6 one / I / other / prefer
_____

## Glossary

**think** PT **thought** have an opinion about something
**excellent** very good
**agree with someone** have the same opinion as someone NOT ~~I'm agree~~ OPP **disagree**
**opinion** what you think about something
**I don't think it's very good** NOT ~~I think it's not very good~~
**personally** You can use **personally** to introduce your opinion.
**I'm not sure** You can use **I'm not sure** to disagree politely.
**prefer** like one thing more than another
**a waste of money** a bad way to use money (also a **waste of time**)

**2** **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ I like this. ~ Yes, I agree.

1 I love this colour. What do you _____ of it? ~ _____, I don't like it very much.

2 Pete likes it. What's your _____? ~ Yes, I _____ with him. I think it's great.

3 What did you think _____ her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't _____ it was very good.

4 I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not _____; it's a bit small. I think I _____ her old one.

**3** ABOUT YOU **Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think.**

1 I think people watch too much TV. _____

2 Smoking's bad for you. _____

3 I think football's boring. _____

4 Money makes you happy. _____

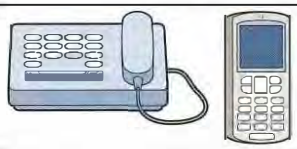
5 Public transport in my country is excellent. _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 69 I can use the phone

## A Phone vocabulary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Phone numbers | **What's your phone number?** ~ It's 245731.<br>**What's your mobile number?** ~ It's 07700 900 796.<br>**What's the (area) code for** Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.  | |
| Phone verbs | You **call** or **ring** someone. PT **rang** | = **phone** someone |
| | You **text** someone. | = **send** someone a **text (message)**<br>e.g. CUL8R = see you later |
| | You **take a message**. | = take information during a phone call and give it to someone else |
| | You **leave a message**. | = give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else |
| Phone problems | The **line** is **engaged/busy**. | = the person you phoned is speaking **on the phone** already |
| | The person **is out/isn't in**. | = not there |
| | It's the **wrong number**. | = you make a mistake with the number |
| | The **battery's flat** on the mobile. | = no electricity |

**1** **Same or different? Write *S* or *D*.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ | He phoned/rang his sister. | S |
| 1 | What's your phone/mobile number? | |
| 2 | … two six oh/zero four … | |
| 3 | I left/took a message. | |
| 4 | I'm sorry, she isn't in/'s out. | |
| 5 | The line was busy/engaged. | |
| 6 | I texted him/sent him a text. | |

**spotlight** **Saying phone numbers**

Say each number, e.g. 245731 is ***two four five seven three one***.
Say **double** when two numbers are the same, e.g. 33 = ***double three***.
For '0', say **oh** or **zero**, e.g. 602448 is ***six oh/zero two double four eight***.

**2** **Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.**

1 Did you ▶ ring Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e_____. I'll p_____ her later.
2 What's your phone n_____? ~ It's 345489. And the c_____ for Oxford is 01865.
3 Did you c_____ Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o_____, so I left a m_____. I r_____ her mobile too, but I think the b_____ was flat.
4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w_____ number.

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1 What's your phone number, area code and mobile number? _____
2 Who do you ring most often? _____
3 How long do you spend on the phone every day? _____
4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Phone conversations

Laura (L) is phoning Brenda (B).

B Hello?
L **Is that** Brenda?
B Yes, **speaking.**
L Oh, hello. **This is** Laura, Laura Freebairn.
B Hi, Laura, how are you?
L I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?
B Yes, **just a moment** – I'll **get** her for you...

Anton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (R).

R Hello?
AJ Oh, hello, **can I speak to** Mr Ellis, **please**?
R I'm sorry, but he's out **at the moment. Who's calling**?
AJ **It's** Anton Jackson.
R Right, and do you want to leave a message?
AJ Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll **ring** him **back** this evening?
R Of course, no problem.
AJ Thanks very much. Goodbye.

**4** **Tick (✓) the correct response.**

▶ Can I speak to Sam, please?
He's not in at the moment. ☑ He's not in just a moment. ☐

1 Hello?
Speaking. ☐ Oh, hello, is that Kamal? ☐

2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?
Just a moment. ☐ It's Natasha. ☐

3 Hello, is that Galina?
Oh, hello, this is Carla. ☐ Speaking. ☐

4 Hello, this is Angela Brandt.
Oh, hello, how are you? ☐ Who's calling? ☐

**5** **Complete the conversations.**

1 A Hello?
B Hello. ▶ Is that Marisa?
A Yes, (1) _____.
B Oh, hello. (2) _____ _____ Dagmar.
A Oh, hello, Dagmar.
B Is Mikki (3) _____, _____?
A I'm sorry, he's out at (4) _____ _____.
Can I take a message?
B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5) _____ him _____ after lunch.

2 A Hello?
B Oh, can I (6) _____ _____ Tibor, please?
A Yes, (7) _____ _____ moment. I'll (8) _____ him for you.

3 A Hello?
B Oh, hello. (9) _____ _____ Joanna?
A Yes, (10) _____.
B Hello, Joanna, (11) _____ 's Rudy.
A Hi, Rudy. How are you?

### Glossary

**Is that Brenda?** NOT ~~Are you Brenda?~~
**speaking** = Yes, this is Brenda.
**This is Laura** OR **It's Laura** NOT ~~I am/Here is Laura~~
**just a moment** wait a minute
**get someone** go and find someone and bring them to the phone
**at the moment** now
**Who's calling?** This is the polite way to ask 'Who are you?'
**ring/phone/call someone back** phone someone again



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review: Social English

## Unit 60

**1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write *S* or *D*.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | Afternoon! | Good afternoon! | S |
| 1 | Morning! | Good morning! | |
| 2 | Hi! | Bye! | |
| 3 | I'm fine. | I'm very well. | |
| 4 | See you later. | See you tomorrow. | |
| 5 | Good to meet you. | Nice to meet you. | |
| 6 | How are you? | How are things? | |
| 7 | Hello. | Hi, there. | |
| 8 | Bye! | Goodbye! | |
| 9 | How do you do? | How are you? | |
| 10 | I've got to go. | I must go. | |

**2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ▶good → | evening | [1] hope | bad | [4] how | do |
| later | see | to | [3] not | you | you |
| you | you | again | [2] how | are | do |
| [9] see | you | meet | soon | you | [5] shake |
| there | [8] hi | to | [7] nice | [6] see | hands |

## Unit 61

**What do you say in these situations?**

▶ It's Christmas Day. Happy Christmas!

1 It's your friend's birthday. _____ _____

2 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon. _____ _____ _____ _____

3 Someone tells you they are getting married. _____

4 A friend is going to take an exam. _____ _____

5 A friend has passed an exam. _____ _____

6 Someone has returned home after a long time. _____ _____

7 A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow. _____ _____ _____ _____

8 It's the first day of January. _____ _____ _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 62

**1 What is the correct question word or phrase for each answer?**

▶ When/What time? ~ 7.30p.m.
1 _____ ~ Fifteen.
2 _____ ~ Because I like it.
3 _____ ~ Ten kilometres.
4 _____ ~ Twice a week.
5 _____ ~ Next to the bank.
6 _____ ~ Three hours.
7 _____ ~ It's mine.
8 _____ ~ I prefer this one.
9 _____ ~ It's John.

**2 Circle the correct form then write your answers.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ What's/How's your English like? _____
1 I've got one sister. What's/How about you? _____
2 And what do/are you do? _____
3 And what does/is your best friend do? _____
4 How often/many do you study English every week? _____
5 How long/long time have you studied English? _____
6 What kind/kind of games do you like? _____

## Unit 63

**1 Complete the sentences with *I* or *you*.**

▶ Can I borrow a dictionary, please?
1 Do _____ mind if _____ go now?
2 _____'m afraid _____ need this.
3 Could _____ possibly carry this for me?
4 Can _____ lend me your bike, please?
5 Is it OK if _____ leave the car here?
6 Could _____ borrow €10, please?
7 Is it all right if _____ use your phone?
8 Could _____ take it to the postbox, please?
9 Dina, could _____ change places with Mia?

**2 Find five more responses in the box to the request. Write them below.**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| no | ahead | afraid | problem | of | I | it | need | sure ✓ |
| that's | yes ✓ | go | I'm | course | fine | | | |

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

Yes, sure. _____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 64

**Correct one mistake in each sentence.**

▶ Do you want to come at a party tonight? Do you want to come to a party tonight?

1 A Would you want to have lunch tomorrow? _____

B I'm afraid but I can't. _____

2 A Do you like to go skiing this weekend? _____

B Yes, that is fun! _____

3 A Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight? _____

B Yes, I love to, but I'm busy. _____

4 A Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend? _____

B I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend. _____

## Unit 65

**Complete the dialogue.**

A Would you ▶ like _____ to go out tomorrow?

B Yes. Where (1) _____ we go?

A Well, (2) _____ we (3) _____ go swimming.

B Mmm. I'm not (4) _____ about that. It's a bit cold for swimming.

A OK. What (5) _____ going to an exhibition?

A Yes, that's a good (6) _____ . (7) _____'s do that.

## Unit 66

**Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | Yes, thanks. | No, please. | Yes, please. No, thanks. |
| 1 | Would you want a sandwich? | Do you like a drink? | |
| 2 | Do you need a help? | Do you want some hand? | |
| 3 | No, I'm worry, thanks. | No, don't fine. | |
| 4 | Thanks a very. | Thank you lot much. | |
| 5 | Shall me pay for the coffees. | Let I do that for you? | |
| 6 | That's much kind of you. | Thank you very very. | |



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 67

**Read the situations, then write the dialogues. Use as many different phrases as possible.**

▶ Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.
A I'm sorry, I've lost your pen.
B That's OK, don't worry.

1 Someone asked you to post a letter yesterday, but you forgot.
A _____
B _____

2 You arrange to meet someone, but you are late.
A _____
B _____

3 You make coffee for someone, but break one of their cups.
A _____
B _____

4 Someone says something to you, but you can't hear it.
A _____
B _____

## Unit 68

**Make words from the letters. Use the definitions to help you.**

▶ To have an idea about something — hiktn think

1 What you think about something — noipoin _____

2 Very good — telxecnle _____

3 Have a different opinion from someone — gredeasi _____

4 Like one thing more than another — rerepf _____

5 Used to introduce your opinion — spanerlloy _____

6 A bad use of money — stofaewa _____ _____ _____ money

## Unit 69

**1 Rewrite the underlined words but keep the meaning the same.**

▶ I'm sorry, Paul <u>is out</u>. isn't in

1 I can't <u>phone</u> her <u>now</u>. _____

2 Is that Sue? ~ Yes, <u>this is Sue</u>. _____

3 I'll <u>call</u> you back later. _____

4 Can I speak to Anton? ~ Yes, <u>wait a minute</u>. _____

5 She <u>texted me</u> earlier. _____

**2 Write the phone conversation in the right order.**

Yes. Just a moment – I'll get her.
Hello? ✓
Hello, Keira. How are you?
Is that Cheryl?
I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
Thanks.
Yes, speaking.
Hi. It's Keira.

▶ A Hello?
1 B _____
2 A _____
3 B _____
4 A _____
5 B _____
6 A _____
7 B _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 70 I can use common adjectives

## A Common opposites

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

1 She's **asleep.** OPP **awake**
2 The bird's **dead.** OPP **alive**
3 He's very **strong.** OPP **weak**
4 She's a **rich** woman. OPP **poor**
5 These are **common** names in Italy. OPP **unusual**
6 This Swiss knife's very **useful.** OPP **useless**
7 The screen is very **wide.** OPP **narrow**
8 The children are **noisy.** OPP **quiet**

**spotlight** **Position of adjectives**

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after **be**.
*It's a **quiet** village. The village is **quiet**.*
You can't use **alive, awake** and **asleep** before a noun.
*The man is **alive**.* NOT ~~*an alive man*~~

**1** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ The River Nile is very narrow. F
1 Julius Caesar is still alive. _____
2 People are noisy at football matches. _____
3 Dictionaries are useless. _____
4 Some people talk when they're asleep. _____
5 Elephants are very strong. _____
6 America is a poor country. _____
7 Toyota cars are common in Japan. _____
8 Pasta is unusual in Italy. _____

**2** **Write the opposite of the bold word.**

▶ They're very **rich.** poor
1 It's a **useless** knife. _____
2 My arms are quite **strong.** _____
3 **Is he alive?** _____
4 The people are very **poor.** _____
5 It's a **noisy** place. _____
6 It's a **quiet** town. _____
7 The garden's quite **wide.** _____
8 That's very **common.** _____
9 Is she **awake?** _____
10 It's quite a **narrow** road. _____

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Classroom habits

Teachers:

Simon: I tell my students to write new words in a vocabulary notebook. I think it's really **helpful**.

Jill: It's very **annoying** when students are late for class.

Martin: When students do activities, I have to give **clear** instructions.

Carol: I don't like students who talk when I'm listening to other students. That's really **irritating**.

Students:

Petra: It's **impossible** to remember everything, so it's **necessary** to revise things you've studied in class.

Ivan: I write new words on my hand, and then on my arms. It's a **strange** thing to do, and some students think I'm **mad**.

Yoko: I repeat new words four or five times; **it's the only way** to remember.

Jean Pierre: In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it's very **confusing**.

**4** **Write *SYN* (synonym) or *OPP* (opposite) next to each pair of words.**

▶ possible/impossible OPP

1 mad/crazy _____

2 annoying/irritating _____

3 necessary/unnecessary _____

4 clear/confusing _____

5 odd/strange _____

### Glossary

**helpful** useful or giving help
**annoying** If something is annoying, it makes you a bit angry. SYN **irritating**
**clear** easy to understand OPP **confusing**
**impossible** not possible OPP **possible**
**necessary** If something is necessary, you must have it or do it. OPP **unnecessary**
**strange** unusual and perhaps not normal SYN odd
**mad** very unusual and not normal SYN **crazy**
**it's the only way** there is no other way

**5** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I've got two dictionaries. One of them is unnecessary.

1 His explanation was very _____ ; I didn't understand anything.

2 An old man in the street was very _____ and gave me directions.

3 It's _____ to fly round the world in five hours.

4 My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he's _____ .

5 I was the _____ person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked.

6 Cookery books are useful, but they aren't _____ .

7 My cat is very _____ . He likes dog food more than cat food.

8 He gave me very _____ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.

9 My sister talks all the time when I'm watching TV: it's very _____ .



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 71 I can use common adverbs

## A Emphasis

| | |
|---|---|
| **only** | We use **only** to say 'no more than'.<br>*She was **only** 17 when she got married.* (It's unusual to get married at 17.)<br>*We can walk to the station – it's **only** five minutes.* (Not 15 or 20.) |
| **even** | We often use **even** before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe.<br>*It's cold here, **even** in summer.* (In most places, it's warm in the summer.)<br>*My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is **even** taller.* |
| **still** | We use **still** to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.<br>*After 25 years, I **still** love my job.* (I continue to love my job.)<br>*Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're **still** in London.* |
| **especially** (also **particularly**) | We use **especially** to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'.<br>*We liked the towns in the south, **especially** Seville.* (Seville was the best.)<br>*It's very hot here, **especially** in July and August.* (July and August are the hottest.) |

**1** **Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.**

▶ It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.

1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) _____

2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially) _____

3 There are three students in the class. (only) _____

4 He works on Sundays. (even) _____

5 She's at university. (still) _____

6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is bigger. (even) _____

**2** **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ The food is good there, only/especially the fish.

1 He was only/even 15 when he left school.

2 I've seen the film five times and I even/still enjoy it.

3 The students are very nice, still/particularly Marcel.

4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.

5 It was cold yesterday but it's even/still colder today.

6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

Write the new words in your own sentences. Say them to yourself.

**3** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ He's ninety, but he still drives a car.

1 _____ four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.

2 They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they _____ like living there.

3 I love fish, _____ salmon.

4 He can't drive; he's _____ 15.

5 Jacqui's thin, but her sister is _____ thinner.

6 She enjoyed the book, _____ the first part.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Degree

0% 100%

**a bit/a little** **quite** **very** **extremely** **absolutely**
**really**

| | |
|---|---|
| **a bit/a little** | Use **a bit** or **a little** before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT ~~a bit good~~)<br>*The lesson was **a bit** boring. It's **a little** warmer than yesterday.* |
| **quite** | = more than *a bit*, but less than *very*<br>*The film was **quite** interesting. The town is **quite** big.* |
| **extremely** | = a bit stronger than *very*<br>Use **extremely** before gradable adjectives (see spotlight).<br>*I was **extremely** tired by 6 o'clock. We were **extremely** busy on Saturday.* |
| **absolutely** | Use **absolutely** before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis.<br>*The food was **absolutely** delicious. The party was **absolutely** fantastic.* |
| **really** | = *very, extremely* or *absolutely*<br>You can use **really** with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs.<br>*The restaurant was **really** good. The weather was **really** terrible.*<br>*We were **really** tired. **I really** liked the film.* |

**4** **Circle the correct answer.**
**Sometimes both answers are correct.**

- ▶ It was quite/a bit interesting.
- ▶ This programme is really/absolutely terrible.
1. The weather was very/absolutely nice.
2. Her new shoes are very/absolutely wonderful.
3. My sister is a bit/a little untidy.
4. I really/extremely want to go to Australia.
5. She was really/extremely friendly.
6. Their flat is a bit/quite nice.
7. The hotel was very/really good.
8. The boat is extremely/really enormous.

**spotlight** **Gradable and ungradable adjectives**

Gradable adjectives, e.g. *good, big, bad, nice, boring, young, tired, busy*
Ungradable adjectives, e.g. *awful, perfect, terrible, wonderful, delicious, fantastic* (= very, very good), *enormous* (= very, very big)

**5** **Rewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s).**

- ▶ The film was a bit boring. The film was a little boring.
- ▶ The children were really fantastic. The children were absolutely fantastic.
1. He was very good. _____
2. The holiday was absolutely wonderful. _____
3. She's a little unfriendly. _____
4. The kitchen was extremely clean. _____
5. The room was a bit small. _____
6. Her new boyfriend is really awful. _____
7. They're really nice people. _____
8. The weather was absolutely terrible. _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 72 I can use irregular verbs

## A Past tenses

Here are some common irregular verbs with their **past tense** forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| be | **was/were** | find | **found** | keep | **kept** | run | **ran** | stand | **stood** |
| bring | **brought** | fly | **flew** | know | **knew** | see | **saw** | swim | **swam** |
| buy | **bought** | forget | **forgot** | leave | **left** | send | **sent** | take | **took** |
| cost | **cost** | give | **gave** | lend | **lent** | sit | **sat** | teach | **taught** |
| do | **did** | go | **went** | put | **put** | sleep | **slept** | think | **thought** |
| drive | **drove** | grow | **grew** | read | **read** | speak | **spoke** | win | **won** |
| feel | **felt** | hold | **held** | ring | **rang** | spend | **spent** | write | **wrote** |

**1** **Circle the right answers.**

▶ Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'a' in the past tense.
(sit) (ring) (swim) bring

1 Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense.
put cost read run

2 Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense.
write drive give win

3 Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense.
spend stand send lend

4 Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense.
know hold cost grow

5 Three verbs which form the past tense with '–ought'.
teach buy bring think

**2** **Find eight more past tense verbs.**

seflewnoleftspokedokeptenawondidefoundefeltasato

**3** **Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.**

▶ This coat cost more than €500.

1 I w_____ so tired, I s_____ for ten hours.
2 We s_____ across the river.
3 I r_____ her on my mobile.
4 He w_____ the email but f_____ to send it.
5 They s_____ the film last night.
6 She b_____ a new car yesterday.
7 They s_____ up when he came in.
8 We t_____ a taxi, then w_____ to the cinema.

**4** **Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Past participles

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their **past participle** forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| be | **been** | find | **found** | keep | **kept** | run | **run** | stand | **stood** |
| bring | **brought** | fly | **flown** | know | **known** | see | **seen** | swim | **swum** |
| buy | **bought** | forget | **forgotten** | leave | **left** | send | **sent** | take | **taken** |
| cost | **cost** | give | **given** | lend | **lent** | sit | **sat** | teach | **taught** |
| do | **done** | go | **gone** | put | **pnt** | sleep | **slept** | think | **thought** |
| drive | **driven** | grow | **grown** | read | **read** | speak | **spoken** | win | **won** |
| feel | **felt** | hold | **held** | ring | **rung** | spend | **spent** | write | **written** |

**5** **Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. *find, found, found*. Write the past tense/past participle below.**

find ✓ drive ✗ bring know keep do put fly feel hold
spend leave be cost run think go ring sleep stand up write

▶ found _____ _____ _____ _____
_____ _____ _____ _____
_____ _____ _____ _____

**6** **Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?**

▶ fly flown
1 forget _____
2 give _____
3 see _____
4 take _____
5 write _____
6 know _____
7 speak _____
8 drive _____
9 grow _____

**7** **Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.**

teach read swim sleep speak send drive lend ✓ win

Have you ever ... ABOUT YOU

▶ lent someone a lot of money? _____
1 _____ an English newspaper? _____
2 _____ a Porsche? _____
3 _____ a lesson? _____
4 _____ any money? _____
5 _____ an email to the wrong person? _____
6 _____ on a boat? _____
7 _____ in the Mediterranean Sea? _____
8 _____ to a famous person? _____

**spotlight** ***ever***

We often use **ever** (= at any time before now) in questions in the present perfect.
*Have you **ever** met Jonathan Mills?*
*~ No, I haven't.*
*Has your sister **ever** been to Cairo?*
*~ Yes, she has.* NOT ~~*Yes, she ever has.*~~

**8** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.**

**9** **Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 73 I can use phrasal verbs

## A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (*sit, stand, get,* etc.) and a particle (*up, on, off,* etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.

lie down | fall over | sit down | stand up

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

| Phrasal verb | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **give** something **up** | *He had to **give up** football.* | stop doing something |
| **get on** with someone | *I like Sue; we **get on** well.* | have a good relationship |
| **take off** | *The plane couldn't **take off**.* | leave the ground and start flying |
| **grow up** | *When Ben **grows up**, he wants to be a vet.* | change from a child to an adult |
| **find out** something | *I must **find out** the times of the trains to Southampton.* | find a fact or piece of information you need/want |
| **go out** | *Let's **go out** this evening.* | leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc. |

**1** **Circle the correct particle.**

▶ I'd like to lie up/down for a few minutes.
1 Can we find out/over the cost of the tickets?
2 Where did she grow out/up?
3 He fell over/on when he ran down the road.
4 Do you want to go out/off this evening?
5 Pearl wants to give on/up her job.
6 Do you get in/on well with your parents?

**spotlight** **Phrasal verbs**

Phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. We don't use them as often in formal written English. Be careful: some have more than one meaning:
*The plane couldn't **take off**.*
*You can **take off** your jacket.*

**2** **Complete the sentences with the correct particle.**

▶ Pasha doesn't want to go out this evening; she's tired.
1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find _____.
2 Everyone stood _____ when he came into the room.
3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get _____ very well.
4 She sat _____ at the table and started eating.
5 The doctor told me to lie _____ on the bed.
6 I told my brother to give _____ smoking.
7 The plane took _____ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
8 She fell _____ in the street, but several people helped her.

**3** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the phrasal verbs? Then, cover the meanings and examples and look at the phrasal verbs in the table. What does each verb mean?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object.

| Phrasal verb | Example | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **go up** | *The price of petrol will **go up** soon.* | increase, become more |
| **carry on** with something | *Can we **carry on** with the exercise?* | continue with something |
| **go back** | *She wants to **go back** to London.* | return to a place |
| **wake up** | *I always **wake up** at 7.00 a.m.* | stop sleeping |

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.

**Take off** your jacket.
**Take** your jacket **off.**

Could you **turn on** the light?
Could you **turn** the light **on**?

**Put on** your shoes.
**Put** your shoes **on.**

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. *it, them*) it must go before the particle.
**Take** it **off.** (NOT ~~Take off it.~~)
Can I **try** them **on**? (NOT ... ~~try on them.~~)
Could you **turn** it **on**? (NOT ... ~~turn on it.~~)
**Look** it **up** in that dictionary. (NOT ... ~~Look up it.~~)

**4** Change the **bold** words to *it* or *them*. Put the pronoun in the correct place.

- ▶ Look up **the word**. Look it up.
- ▶ Look up **both words**. Look them up.
1. Take off **your jacket**. _____
2. Try on **these trousers**. _____
3. Turn on **the TV**. _____
4. Put **those socks** on. _____
5. Take off **your shoes**. _____
6. Try on **this shirt**. _____
7. Turn on **the lights**. _____
8. Put **your coat** on. _____

**5** Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.

- ▶ Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?
- ▶ Please sit down. correct
1. Could I try on? _____
2. Do you want to go back? _____
3. You can take off if you're hot. _____
4. Look up in the dictionary. _____
5. His salary will go up soon. _____
6. Do they want to stop or carry on? _____
7. Did you put on? _____
8. What time do you usually wake up? _____

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1. Where did you grow up? _____
2. How do you feel when you wake up? _____
3. How often do you go out in the evenings? _____
4. Do you get on well with people who live near you? _____
5. When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 74 I can use prepositions of time

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **at** | **a time**<br>**at** six o'clock **at** midday/midnight | | **a mealtime**<br>**at** breakfast/lunch/dinner (time) |
| **on** | **a day**<br>**on** Tuesday **on** Friday evening<br>**on** Tuesdays = every Tuesday<br>**on** my birthday **on** Christmas Day | | **a date**<br>**on** September 1st<br>**on** the sixth of May |
| **in** | **a part of a day**<br>**in** the morning<br>**in** the afternoon<br>**in** the evening | **a season**<br>**in** (the) spring/summer<br>**in** (the) autumn/winter | **a month, year or century**<br>**in** July/December<br>**in** 1990/2050<br>**in** the 21st **century** = 2000 – 2099 |

**spotlight** *at*

We also use **at** in these phrases:
*I relax **at the weekend**.*
*Some doctors work **at night**.* NOT ~~*in the night*~~
*What are you doing **at Christmas/at New Year**?*

**1** **Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.**

▶ **in** the spring/~~February 15th~~/the evening
1 **at** teatime/2005/the weekend
2 **in** August/summer/Friday
3 **on** April/your birthday/Saturdays
4 **at** night/the morning/half past seven
5 **in** autumn/the 20th century/4.00
6 **on** midnight/June 2nd/Sunday afternoon
7 **at** breakfast/midday/the autumn
8 **on** winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
9 **in** the afternoon/dinnertime/2008
10 **at** New Year/the evening/six o'clock

**2** **Write the correct preposition in each space.**

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ▶ On Thursday morning (1) ____ about nine, and got there (2) ____ lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) ____ the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) ____ spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) ____ Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) ____ 1997. Then (7) ____ the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) ____ midnight. (9) ____ the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival which starts (10) ____ 6 May.

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.**

When do you …
1 get up? _____
2 study English? _____
3 go swimming? _____
4 watch TV? _____
5 go to sleep? _____

When was the last time you …
6 saw your family? _____
7 went on holiday? _____
8 went to the mountains? _____
9 went to bed very late? _____
10 went to a party? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 75 I can use time words and phrases

## A Past, present and future

Look at the **diary** and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

I was in Moscow **last week.**
I saw Jon and Trish three days **ago.**
I had lunch with Liz **yesterday.**
I went out with Brian **last night.**
I'm going to the cinema **this evening.**

I've got a meeting **tomorrow morning.**
I'm going to stay at Gary's **this weekend.**
Then I'm in London for three days **next week.**
I have a doctor's **appointment next Thursday.**
I'm seeing my parents **in** ten days' **time.**

**1** **True or false? Write *T* or *F*.**

▶ I was in Moscow last week. T

1 I got back from Moscow four days ago. _____
2 I saw Jon and Trish this week. _____
3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. _____
4 I met Brian yesterday. _____
5 I was in London last week. _____
6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon. _____
7 I'm going out tomorrow evening. _____
8 I'm seeing Scott in four days' time. _____
9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week's time. _____
10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday. _____

### Glossary

**last week** = April 1 – 7 NOT ~~the last week~~
**this week** = April 8 – 14
**next week** = April 15 – 21 NOT ~~the next week~~
**last night** OR **yesterday evening**
NOT ~~yesterday night/last evening~~
**appointment** a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, usually for work or with a doctor, dentist, etc.

**2** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ We saw them yesterday evening.
1 She saw Paul about three days _____.
2 I wrote Pete's birthday in my _____.
3 She rang me at 10 o'clock last _____.
4 He wants to come in a week's _____.
5 She can't come. She's got a dentist's _____.
6 I'm going to Italy _____ week.

**3** **Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.**

▶ I had lunch with Liz a week ago.
1 _____ on Thursday evening.
2 _____ five days ago.
3 _____ last weekend.
4 _____ tomorrow morning.
5 _____ in three days' time.
6 _____ this weekend.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Words and phrases often confused

| | |
|---|---|
| **before/after** | <br>10.00 11.00 12.00 Lunch 2.00 3.00 4.00<br>*We did some shopping **before** lunch. We went for a coffee **after** lunch.* |
| **at the moment/ in a minute** | *I'm very busy **at the moment**.* = I'm very busy now. NOT ~~in this moment~~<br>*I'll speak to you **in a minute**.* = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now. |
| **soon/later** | *I'm going home **soon**.* = I'm going home in a short time from now.<br>*Can I talk to you **later**?* = Can I talk to you in the future but not now? |
| **until** | *We worked **until** ten o'clock.* = We stopped work at 10.00. NOT ~~by 10.00~~<br>*I want to stay here **until** July.* = I don't want to go before July. |
| **for/since** | I moved to this house. Sarah was born. → Sarah is now five years old.<br>*I've lived here **since** Sarah was born.* *I've lived here **for** five years.* |

**4** **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ Dinner will be ready at (in) a minute.

1 I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
2 We went home before/after work and watched TV.
3 I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
4 She's in the library at/in the moment.
5 I haven't seen her for/since last week.
6 I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
7 She has worked here for/since seven years.
8 The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

**spotlight** *for and since*

We use **for** with a period of time (***for** two weeks, six months*, etc.), and **since** with a point in time (***since** 2003, last year, I came to England*, etc.). We often use these words with the present perfect.
*I've been at university **for a year**.*
*I've known Joe **since** 2002.*

**5** **Complete the sentences. Use *soon, later, before, at, in, until, for* or *since*.**

▶ I had a rest *after* lunch.

1 She waited _____ 7.00, then went home.
2 He's been here _____ three weeks.
3 I'm getting tired. Can we go home _____?
4 Can you help me? ~ Yes, I'll be with you _____ a minute.
5 What are you doing _____ the moment?
6 We haven't seen them _____ last summer.
7 I wrote the email _____ I went out.
8 I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out _____ this week?

**6** **Translate the words in bold in this unit into your own language.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 76 I can use prepositions of place and movement

## A *In, at, on*

**at** **at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens**
Let's meet **at** the bank/**at** the bus stop.
I saw him **at** the match/**at** the party
**at** home/**at** work/**at** school.

**in** **in a three-dimensional space**
**in** a box, a cupboard
**in** a room, an office, a flat
**in** a garden, a park

**in a big area**
**in** a village/town/city
**in the** countryside
**in** London/Spain/Asia/the world

**on** **on a line**
**on** the road, the coast, the river

**on a surface**
**on** the table, the wall
**on** the first floor

**in or on?** He's **in** the river.
She's **on** the river.

**1** **Circle the correct preposition.**

▶ I live in/on Canada.
1 She's not in/on her office.
2 The photos are in/on the wall.
3 We met in/at a golf match.
4 We stayed in/on a lovely village.
5 She's swimming in/on the pool.
6 Barcelona is in/on the coast.
7 We live at/in the countryside.
8 There are too many cars in/on the road.
9 Dinner is on/at the table.
10 They're sitting in/at the garden.
11 The books are on/in the table.
12 I saw her in/at the bus stop.
13 The number is in/on the door.
14 I spoke to her in/at the party.

**2** **Complete the questions with *in*, *on*, or *at*.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ Which country do you live in ?
1 Do you live _____ a village, a town, or a city?
2 Do you live _____ a flat or a house?
3 Is your town _____ a river?
4 Which floor is your bedroom _____ ?
5 Do you like walking _____ the countryside?
6 Are you learning English _____ school, _____ work, or _____ an English-speaking country?

**3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Other prepositions

The people are **in front of** the garage.
The postman is **between** mum and dad.
The adults are **behind** the children.
The tree is **near** the house.

The office is **above** the garage.
The garage is **below** the office.
The seat is **next to** the bus stop.
The bus stop is **opposite** the garage.

**4** True or false? Write *T* or *F*.

▶ The tree's opposite the house. F
1 The blue car's near the house. ____
2 The big window is above the door. ____
3 The people are opposite the garage. ____
4 The postman's next to mum. ____
5 The seat's between the house and the tree. ____
6 The children are behind mum and dad. ____
7 The girl is in front of the postman. ____
8 The front door's below the big window. ____
9 The bus stop's next to the green car. ____

**5** Complete the sentences.

▶ The tree's behind the blue car.
1 The bus stop is _____ the seat.
2 The blue car is _____ the tree.
3 The boy's standing _____ dad.
4 The green car's _____ the bus stop.
5 The bus stop is _____ the green car and the seat.
6 The seat is _____ the garage.
7 The postman's _____ dad.

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.**

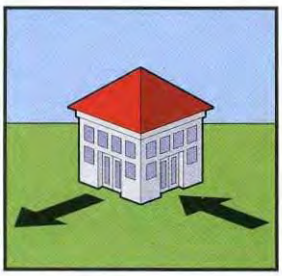
1 What's opposite the building where you live? _____
2 What's behind your building? _____
3 What's next to it? _____
4 Are there any shops near it? _____
5 What's above your living room? _____
6 What's below your bedroom? _____

**7** **Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture. What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?**

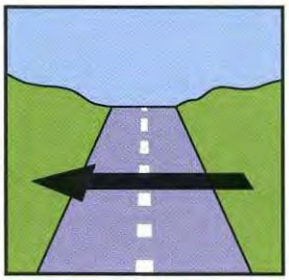


www.hellooteacher.ir

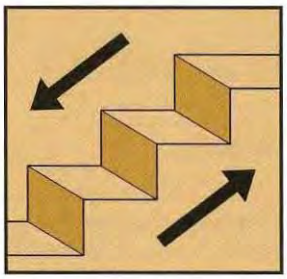
## C Prepositions of movement



go **out of** go **into**

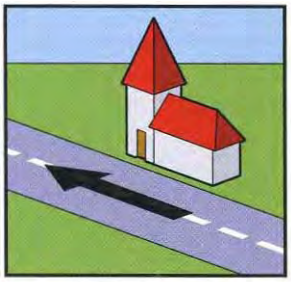


go **across**

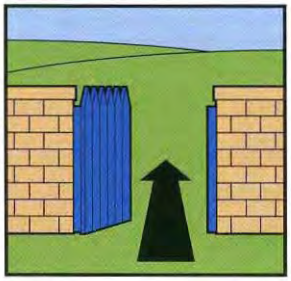


go **down** go **up**

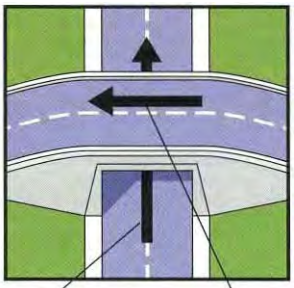
go **along**



go **past the church**



go **through**



go **under** go **over**

**8** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ Don't run down the hill/church.
1 Walk under the trees/field.
2 Drive along the city/motorway.
3 Don't go across the river/gate.
4 Go into the beach/shop.
5 Walk through the gate/stairs.
6 I ran past the bus stop/countryside.
7 Go up the floor/mountain.
8 Don't run down the stairs/bridge.
9 Walk out of the building/hill.
10 We flew over the sky/field.

**9** **Complete 1–10 with a preposition in each sentence.**

▶ Go straight on, along this road.
1 We shouted hello as the boat went _____ the bridge.
2 She went _____ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
3 They drove _____ the hill to look at the view from the top.
4 We walked _____ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
5 We drove _____ a restaurant on the way to the station.
6 He came _____ the door and fell over; it was very funny.
7 I came _____ the bank and saw the accident.
8 We went _____ the hill, into the valley below.
9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran _____ the road.
10 We swam _____ the bridge, so they couldn't see us.

**10** **Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?**



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 77 I can use link words (1)

## A *And, also, too, as well*

| | |
|---|---|
| *The city centre is dirty **and** very noisy.* | **And** links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,). |
| *The centre is dirty,* { *and it's **also** very expensive.* / *and it **also** costs a lot to live there.* | **Also** goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. *be, can,* but before the main verb. |
| *The centre is dirty,* { *and it's very expensive* / *and it costs a lot to live there* } ***too.*** / ***as well.*** | **Too** and **as well** go at the end of the sentence. **Too** and **as well** are more informal than **also**. |

**1** **Are *also, too* or *as well* in the correct positions? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗).**

▶ You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful. X

1 The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also. _____

2 He speaks German, and he understands too Greek. _____

3 We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well. _____

4 I cleaned the house and washed also the car. _____

5 She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too. _____

6 We've got a big garden and as well a park near the house. _____

**2** **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter

The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too. _____

1 yoghurt / also / like / and I

I often eat ice cream _____ _____

2 but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot

I enjoy _____ _____

3 German / as well / understand / I can / and

I can speak English _____ _____

4 also / but I / music / of books / listen to

I read a lot _____ _____

5 and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football

I play _____ _____

**3** ABOUT YOU **Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write *true* or *false*.**

▶ The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too. false



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B Reason and result

| | |
|---|---|
| *I went into the café* ***because*** *it was raining.*<br>*I went into the café* ***because of*** *the rain.* | **because (of)** comes before the reason<br>**because** + clause<br>**because of** + noun |
| *I went into the café* ***(in order) to*** *get out of the rain.*<br>= I went in the café because it was raining. | **(in order) to** comes before the reason<br>**(in order) to** + verb |
| *It was raining,* ***so*** *I went into the café.*<br>= I went in the café because it was raining. | **so** comes before the result<br>**so** + clause<br>There is usually a comma (,) before **so**. |

**4** **Circle the correct word.**

▶ I took my umbrella because/so it was raining.

1 I stayed at home because/because of the weather.

2 We went to Paris so/to see a friend.

3 I couldn't go out because/because of I had to study.

4 It was my birthday, so/because we had a party.

5 She went to the market to/because get a book.

6 She lost her passport, so/because she couldn't go to China.

**5** **Write *because, because of, so,* or *to*.**

▶ The were late because of the traffic.

1 I'm going to the chemist's _____ get some aspirins.

2 It was a nice day, _____ we went out.

3 I bought the house _____ the beautiful view.

4 I don't go to the theatre very often _____ it's too expensive.

5 I'm going out now, _____ I'll phone you tomorrow.

6 She went to the centre _____ meet her friend.

7 I think he married her _____ her money.

8 Are you studying English _____ get a better job?



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 78 I can use link words (2)

## A *When* and *if* (future)

*I'll post the letter* ***when*** *I go out.* (I'm sure I'm going out later.)
*I'll post the letter* ***if*** *I go out.* (I'm not sure I'm going out later.)
OR
***When*** *I go out,* / ***If*** *I go out,* } *I'll post the letter.*
The verb after *when* or *if* is usually in the present simple, not the *will* form.
NOT ~~*I'll post the letter when I will go out.*~~

**1** **Circle the correct answer.**

▶ I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll see her.
1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure/not sure that he'll see her.
2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure/not sure that I can come.
4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure/not sure that he's going home.
5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure/not sure that we'll get on the train.
6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure/not sure that you'll take a map.

**2** **Complete the sentences with *if* or *when*.**

▶ If you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
1 _____ it's cold tonight, we'll have soup.
2 _____ I'm 30, I'll have a party.
3 I'll call you _____ you forget to ring me.
4 We'll leave _____ it stops raining.
5 He'll do it _____ he wakes up tomorrow.
6 _____ you lose your key, you can phone me.

## B *When* and *while*

**When** and **while** both mean 'in that period of time'.

*I phoned the doctor* ***when*** / ***while*** } *I was on holiday.* = in a period when I was on holiday

phoned the doctor
past X now
on holiday (a period of time)

**When** (but not while) also means 'at that moment' or 'at that time'.

*I gave Jack the money* ***when*** *he got home.* = at the time I met him
NOT ~~*while he got home.*~~

gave him the money
past X X now
Jack got home


www.hellooteacher.ir

**3** **Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.**

▶ The lesson started when/while the students sat down.

1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.

2 I'll help with the children when/while you get home.

3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.

4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.

5 I'll wash the car while/when you're at work.

6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?

## C A sequence of actions

... and we had a really nice week. **Firstly**, we spent a few days in Budapest, **then** we went to Vienna. **Afterwards,** we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

... it's very easy to make. **First of all,** you fry the meat, and **then** you fry some onions and add them to the meat. **After that**, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. **Finally**, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.

**Glossary**

**firstly** You say **firstly** when you are talking about the first thing in a list. **(also first** OR **first of all)**

**(and) then/after that** You say **(and) then** OR **after that** when you are talking about the next thing in a list. **(also afterwards)**

**finally** You say **finally** when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually if it is a long list of four or more things.

**4** **Complete the texts with link words. Don't use the same word twice.**

A For this job, ▶ firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) _____ you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) _____, you meet other people who work in the company. (3) _____, you have to do a written test.

B (4) _____, I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) _____ I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.

**5** **Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.**

▶ I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises.
First of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 She made the pasta sauce. / She boiled the pasta. / She added the sauce to the pasta.

_____

2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

_____

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. / We started our holiday in Heidelberg. _____

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list. _____

**6** ABOUT YOU **Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.**

▶ First of all, I _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 79 I can use 'have' and 'have got'

## A *Have* and *have got*

| | |
|---|---|
| *My brother **has/has got** a house in the country.*<br>*His wife **has/'s got** an art studio there.* | If you **have/have got** something, it is yours: it belongs to you. |
| *She **has/has got** a bad cold at the moment.* | Use **have/have got** to describe illness. |
| *They **have/'ve got** two young daughters.* | Use **have/have got** to describe relationships. |
| *Both girls **have/have got** blonde hair.* | Use **have/have got** to describe appearance. |

**spotlight** ***have* and *have got***

**Have** is a full verb. Use **do, does** and **did** in questions, short answers and negatives.
***Do** they **have** a car? ~ Yes, they **do**. I **didn't have** a job last year.*
In negatives and questions, **have got** is more common than **have** with **do**. We don't use **have got** in short answers. ***Have** they **got** a car? He **hasn't got** a bike. He **doesn't have** a bike.* (less common)

**1** **Change *have* to the correct form of *have got* in each sentence.**

▶ I have an old car. I've got an old car.
1 She has blue eyes. _____
2 They have a small dog. _____
3 I don't have a mobile phone. _____
4 He doesn't have any money. _____
5 Do you have any sisters? _____
6 Does she have a flat in town? _____

**2** **Correct the mistakes.**

▶ He have a car. He's got a car. OR He has a car.
1 She got any children? _____
2 They has got a lovely garden. _____
3 Have she got long hair? _____
4 My sister no have a boyfriend. _____
5 Have you a computer? _____
6 We don't got any friends here. _____

**3** **Complete the questions.**

ABOUT YOU

▶ Have you got a car? — If so, what kind? _____
1 Have you _____ a bike? — If so, when do you use it? _____
2 _____ you have a computer? — If so, what kind? _____
3 _____ your parents got a dog? — If so, what's its name? _____
4 _____ you got an English dictionary? — If so, what's it called? _____
5 _____ you have any English-speaking friends? — If so, who are they? _____

**4** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.**



www.hellooteacher.ir

## B *Have* + noun

| | |
|---|---|
| **have breakfast/lunch/dinner**<br>NOT ~~the breakfast/the lunch/the dinner~~ | *We **had lunch** in a pizzeria.* |
| **have a wash/a shower/a bath** | *I **had a** quick **shower** before I left.* |
| **have a drink/something to eat** | *I **had a drink** with Joe last night.*<br>*Let's **have something to eat**.* |
| **have a swim/a walk/a run** activities you do because you enjoy them | *I didn't **have a run** this morning.*<br>*We **had a** nice **walk** yesterday.* |
| **have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day** | *We **had a great time** in Kyoto.* |
| **have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey** | ***Have a nice weekend**. ~ Yeah, you too.* |
| **have a break** = stop work for a short period and relax<br>**have a rest** = relax and do nothing | *Let's **have a break** for ten minutes.*<br>*I'm going to **have a rest** this weekend.* |

You can't use *have got* in these expressions. NOT ~~*Let's have got a break.*~~

**5** **Make four more groups of phrases with *have* from the words below.**

swim breakfast holiday bath journey rest ✓ lunch
shower weekend break ✓ dinner walk wash run

| Group 1 | Group 2 | Group 3 | Group 4 | Group 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| rest | | | | |
| break | | | | |
| | | | | |

**6** **Complete the postcard.**

Dear Carla
We're having a great ▶ time here in Parati. Yesterday we had a (1) _____ round the town and bought a few things. In the evening we had a (2) _____ in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had (3) _____ in a nice fish restaurant. We're going to have a (4) _____ in the sea this morning, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a (5) _____ after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good (6) _____ back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you soon.
Love, Nicky

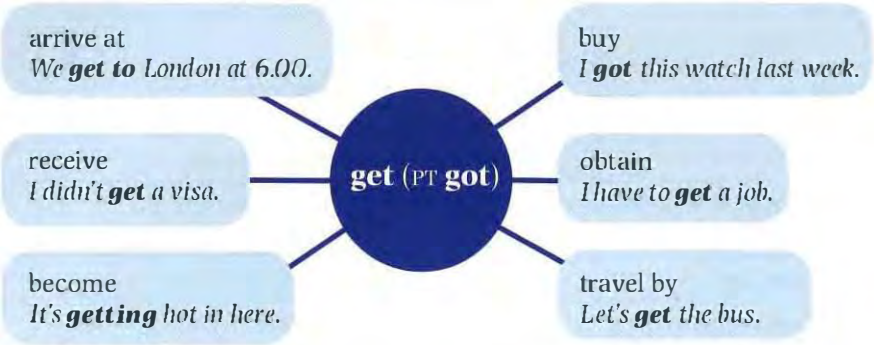
**7** **Complete the sentences.**

▶ I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
1 Would you like to have something to _____?
2 I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a _____ this evening.
3 We have a twenty-minute _____ between the lessons.
4 All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad _____ to work.
5 Did you have a good _____ in London yesterday?
6 Have a nice _____. See you on Monday.
7 They had a fantastic _____ in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
8 I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# 80 I can use 'get'




**spotlight** *get*

**Get** is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don't use it a lot in formal written English.

**1** **Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of *get*. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ▶ | He becomes angry if you're late. | He gets angry if you're late. | |
| 1 | Did you receive my message? | | |
| 2 | I must buy some new clothes. | | |
| 3 | We arrived home late last night. | | |
| 4 | It's becoming cold. | | |
| 5 | I received three letters today. | | |
| 6 | Where did you buy that bag? | | |
| 7 | He needs to obtain a job. | | |
| 8 | Do you want to travel by train? | | |

**2** **Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does *get* mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.**

| | |
|---|---|
| He gets angry if you're late. | become |

**3** **Complete the sentences in a logical way, using *get*.**

▶ There weren't any buses, so we got the train.
1 Do you want to walk or _____?
2 What time did you _____?
3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you _____?
4 Could you close the window? It's _____.
5 I must go now, it's _____.
6 She sent me an email but I didn't _____.
7 I need a map of the town centre. Where can I _____?
8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

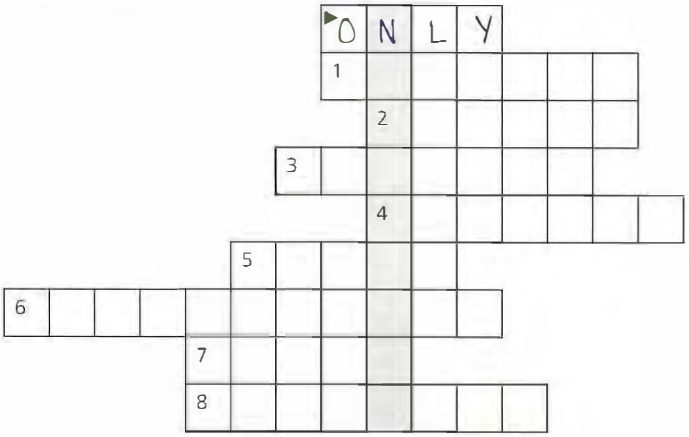
# Review: Language

## Unit 70

**1 Describe each picture with an adjective.**

▶ weak 1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

**2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?**




▶ There is no other. only
1 Giving help. _____
2 Opposite of *unusual*. _____
3 Opposite of *useful*. _____
4 Synonym of *odd*. _____
5 Opposite of *quiet*. _____
6 Not important; you don't need it. _____
7 Opposite of *confusing*. _____
8 Synonym of *irritating*. _____

## Unit 71

**1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| even | absolutely | still | quite |
| only | especially ✓ | a bit | |

▶ I play tennis a lot, in the summer. especially
1 We couldn't play the match with ten players. _____
2 He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time. _____
3 The food is fantastic in that restaurant. _____
4 Max didn't like the film, but I thought it was good. _____
5 The last film was good, but this is better. _____
6 My English is getting better. _____

**2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.**

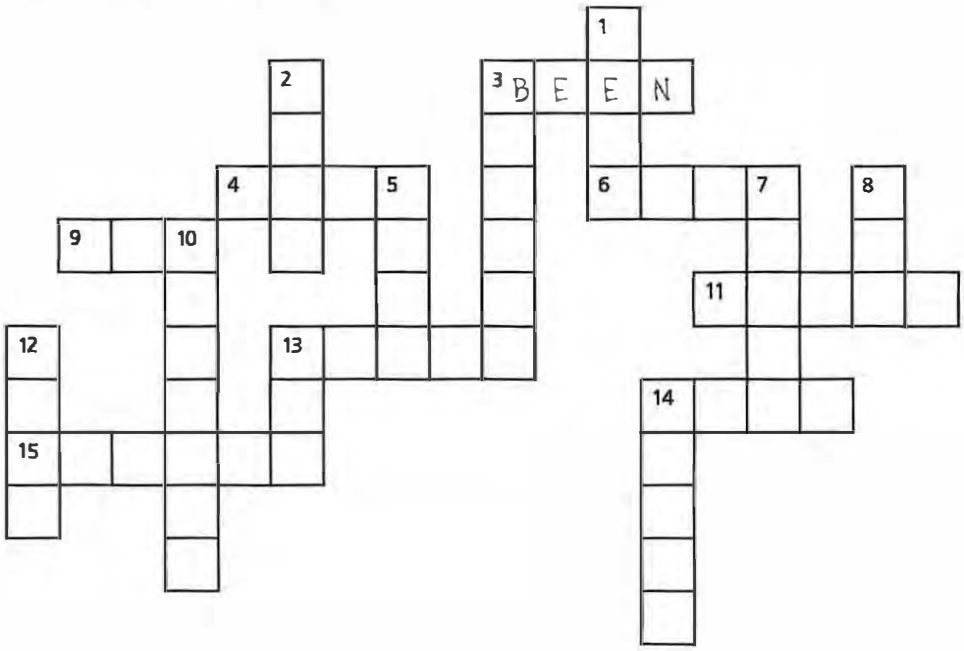
▶ There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work.
1 I go swimming, even in _____.
2 It was August, but the weather was really _____.
3 The service is a bit _____ but the food is really good.
4 She can't drive; she's only _____.
5 By the end of the evening I was quite _____.
6 I like her new boyfriend; he's extremely _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 72

**Complete the crossword.**




Across →

3 She hasn't been to the dentist for a year.
4 Have you _____ that book?
6 They _____ the bus to work this morning.
9 I _____ the books on the shelf.
11 I _____ these keys on the floor. Are they yours?
13 He _____ for eight hours last night.
14 I _____ her an email yesterday.
15 He _____ to post the letter.

Down ↓

1 We _____ to the cinema on Saturday.
2 Have you _____ his new film?
3 She _____ some new jeans at the weekend.
5 Have you _____ your homework?
7 How long have you _____ her?
8 He _____ ten kilometres this morning.
10 I _____ the book was very good.
12 She _____ home at 8 o'clock this morning.
13 We _____ on the floor because there were no chairs.
14 I _____ all my money on holiday.

# Unit 73

**1 Make sentences from the words.**

▶ morning / I / woke / this / early / up I woke up early this morning.
1 in / grew / I / up / a / village _____
2 you / down / why / sit / don't / ? _____
3 find / I / address / out / must / their _____
4 over / street / the / fell / in / she _____
5 night / you / out / last / did / go / ? _____
6 light / on / could / the / you / turn / ? _____
7 look / in / up / dictionary / it / your _____
8 them / I / try / could / on / ? _____



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Change the underlined words for a phrasal verb with the same meaning.**

▶ Can I remove my jacket? take off

1 I stopped smoking last year. _____

2 The price of flats is increasing all the time. _____

3 She lives in Paris but wants to return to Rome. _____

4 The plane couldn't leave the ground and start flying. _____

5 We have a good relationship. _____

6 When I finish this I can continue with Exercise 2. _____

## Unit 74

**Put the words and phrases in the correct place in the table.**

the morning ✓ Monday morning December my birthday breakfast
midnight the sixth of March half past five the afternoon the 21st century
summer Tuesday three o'clock 2007 the weekend Friday evening

| In | At | On |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ the morning | | |

## Unit 75

**1 Read the text, then complete the sentences.**

Seven years ago I left California and went to live in Spain. I already spoke Spanish very well, and I got a job as a receptionist in a tourist hotel near Malaga. I stayed in one of the rooms and looked for somewhere to live. I found a nice apartment near the town and I worked at the hotel for two years. After that I got a similar job, this time in a large hotel on the Algarve in the south of Portugal. I met a Spanish man at the hotel – he also worked there – and six months later we got married. We bought a small house near the hotel and one month ago, I found out that we're going to have a baby. We are now preparing a room for him – or her.

▶ I already spoke Spanish before I went to live in Spain.

1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I _____.

2 I met a Spanish man after I _____.

3 I've lived in the house I bought since I _____.

4 I've lived in Portugal for _____.

5 Soon I'm going to _____.

6 At the moment we're _____.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Put the phrases in the correct place on the line.**

last night | tomorrow evening | today ✓ | last week | next Monday | in ten days' time
yesterday afternoon | this evening | tomorrow morning | two days ago

1 ____ 2 ____ 3 ____ 4 ____ ▶ today 5 ____ 6 ____ 7 ____ 8 ____ 9 ____

**Past** ← **Present** → **Future**

## Unit 76

**1 Put the letters in order to make prepositions.**

▶ wolbe below
1 revo _____
2 stap _____
3 rean _____
4 beavo _____
5 wodn _____
6 scoras _____
7 tenx ot _____
8 toin _____
9 tou fo _____
10 sotipepo _____
11 tebnewe _____
12 gorhhtu _____

**2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?**

1 I live below / _____ Jack.
2 Jo ran _____ the park.

**3 Write the words in the correct columns.**

the world ✓ | school | the table | my town | the wall | home | Germany
the coast | a football match | work | the countryside | the second floor | the bedroom

| In | At | On |
|---|---|---|
| ▶ the world | | |

## Unit 77

**1 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.**

▶ We went to Rio last year because c
1 We decided to go in September because of _____
2 My mother decided to come and _____
3 Our Brazilian friends weren't working, so _____
4 They came to the airport to _____
5 We had a week in Rio, and _____
6 We drove to São Paolo in order to _____
7 The food was great, and _____
8 There are still many things to see, so _____

a we loved the street life too.
b I think we'll go back next year.
c we wanted to visit some friends. ✓
d see the countryside.
e we spent a lot of time together.
f we went to São Paolo as well.
g the weather; it's cooler then.
h meet us.
i we also took her sister.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2 Complete the text with a link word/phrase from the box.**

| because | too ✓ | as well | because of | also | to | so |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

My cousin, Peter, did French at university, and he studied a little Chinese ▶ too
He first became interested in the language (1) _____ his girlfriend, Hua. She's half Chinese, but she has lived in Britain for most of her life. Peter moved to Beijing two years ago (2) _____ study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he (3) _____ got a job, teaching English. They loved living there (4) _____ the people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong, (5) _____ Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) _____ . He's sad about leaving China, but I'm sure he'll go back and see his friends in the future.

# Unit 78

**1 Write sentences using phrases from each column.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| If<br>When<br>While | you get to the airport, ✓<br>you're travelling on a long flight,<br>you can choose your seat on the plane,<br>you are waiting for the flight,<br>you get off,<br>you feel ill during the flight,<br>you lose your passport on holiday, | tell the airline staff.<br>go to the embassy.<br>sit near the front where it's quiet.<br>sit in the departure lounge.<br>don't leave anything on the plane.<br>always wear comfortable clothes.<br>go to the check-in desk. ✓ |

▶ When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

**2 Complete the text with words from the box.**

| after that | first of all | finally | while | if | then | when ✓ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

▶ When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) _____ I have a shower. And (2) _____ I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my hair, too. (3) _____ I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really loves that!) (4) _____ , I decide what to wear: usually a shirt and some casual trousers. And then (5) _____ , I look in the mirror before I go out to see (6) _____ everything's OK. I want to look my best!



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Unit 79

**1 Circle the correct word or phrase.**

▶ What time do you have lunch/a lunch?
1 Did you have/had a wash before dinner?
2 We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon.
3 Have you got/Did you have a good weekend?
4 Do/Have you got any children?
5 We hadn't/didn't have the same office last year.
6 We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.
7 Can I have rest/a rest? I'm really tired.
8 I had/was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.

**2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.**

▶ It was sunny at midday, so we had/in the garden. lunch
1 We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson. _____
2 We had something eat at the beach. _____
3 My sister got blonde hair. _____
4 I was hot, so I had a before dinner. _____
5 We had a day at work. I hate my job! _____
6 Have a lovely in the Caribbean! _____
7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't any money. _____
8 On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing. _____

# Unit 80

**1 What meaning does the verb *get* have in each sentence? Write the number of the sentence next to the correct verb.**

arrive ☐ obtain ☐ buy 1 ☐ travel by ☐ receive ☐ ☐ become ☐ ☐

ABOUT YOU

1 Where do you get your fruit and vegetables? _____
2 Are you trying to get a new job? _____
3 Do you get tired in hot weather? _____
4 How many text messages do you get every day? _____
5 Are you getting taller? _____
6 What did you get for your last birthday? _____
7 Where did you get the shoes you're wearing? _____
8 How often do you get the train to school or work? _____
9 What time did you get home last night? _____

**2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.**


www.hellooteacher.ir

# Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

## 1 Verbs and nouns

| Verb | Noun |
|---|---|
| advise | **advice** |
| act | **actor, actress** |
| advertise | **advert/advertisement** |
| **agree** | agreement |
| **apologize** | apology |
| **arrange** | arrangement |
| attach | **attachment** |
| begin | **beginning** |
| **believe** | belief |
| build | **building, builder** |
| choose | **choice** |
| **climb** | climbing |
| **collect** | collection |
| compose | **composer** |
| dance | **dance**, dancing, dancer |
| **deliver** | delivery |
| **depart** | **departure** |
| **design** | **designer** |
| **disagree** | disagreement |
| **discnss** | discussion |
| **draw** | **drawing** |
| **drive** | **driver**, driving |
| educate | **education** |
| **enter** | **entrance, entry** |
| examine | **exam**/examination |
| **explain** | explanation |
| **fail** | failure |
| **feel** | feeling |
| **fly** | **flight**, flying |
| **grow** | growth |
| **hate** | hatred |
| **hear** | hearing |
| insure | **insurance** |
| **invite** | invitation |
| manage | **manager** |
| **mean** | **meaning** |

| Verb | Noun |
|---|---|
| **move** | movement |
| **own** | owner |
| **park** | **parking** |
| **pay** | payment |
| **perform** | performance, performer |
| permit | **permission** |
| **prefer** | preference |
| **print** | **printer, printout**, printing |
| **pronounce** | pronunciation |
| **read** | reading, reader |
| **recommend** | recommendation |
| **refuse** | refusal |
| **report** | **report, reporter** |
| **reserve** | reservation |
| **respond** | **response** |
| **ride** | riding, rider |
| **run** | **run**, runner, running |
| serve | **service** |
| shoot | **shooting** |
| **sign** | **signature** |
| **sing** | **singer**, singing, **song** |
| smoke | smoke, **smoking** |
| **spell** | spelling |
| **study** | study, **student** |
| suggest | **suggestion** |
| **swim** | **swim, swimming** |
| **teach** | **teacher**, teaching |
| **think** | thinking, thought |
| **travel** | **travelling**, travel |
| **walk** | **walk**, walking |
| **wash** | **wash**, washing |
| **weigh** | **weight** |
| **win** | winner |

Test yourself. Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?



www.hellooteacher.ir

## 2 Adjectives and nouns

| Adjective | Noun |
|---|---|
| **angry** | anger |
| **able, unable** | ability, inability |
| **attractive** | attraction |
| **beautiful** | beauty |
| **cloudy** | **cloud** |
| **cold** | cold |
| **comfortable, uncomfortable** | comfort |
| **crowded** | crowd |
| **dangerous** | danger |
| **different** | difference |
| **dirty** | dirt |
| eastern | **east** |
| **electric**, electrical | electricity |
| **excited, exciting** | excitement |
| **famous** | fame |
| **foggy** | **fog** |
| **friendly, unfriendly** | **friend**, friendship |
| geographical | **geography** |
| lucky, unlucky | **luck** |
| **happy, unhappy** | happiness |
| **healthy**, unhealthy | health |
| **historic**, historical | **history** |
| **humid** | humidity |
| **hungry** | hunger |
| **icy** | **ice** |
| **ill** | **illness** |
| **industrial** | industry |
| **intelligent** | intelligence |
| **kind**, unkind | kindness |
| **lazy** | laziness |
| **long** | **length** |

| Adjective | Noun |
|---|---|
| **mad** | madness |
| medical | **medicine** |
| **musical** | **music** |
| mistaken | **mistake** |
| **noisy** | noise |
| northern | **north** |
| **possible, impossible** | possibility |
| painful | **pain** |
| peaceful | **peace** |
| personal | **person** |
| **political** | **politics, politician** |
| **religious** | religion |
| **sad** | sadness |
| **safe** | safety |
| scientific | **science**, scientist |
| southern | **south** |
| **strong** | strength |
| **sunny** | **sun, sunshine** |
| **true** | truth |
| **various** | variety |
| **violent** | violence |
| **weak** | weakness |
| western | **west** |
| **wide** | width |
| **windy** | **wind** |
| wooden | **wood** |
| **young** | youth |



www.hellooteacher.ir

## 3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| answer | cough | jump | post | shave |
| brush | cut | label | pull | snow |
| call | delay | laugh | push | star |
| cash | divorce | look | queue | start |
| change | download | love | rain | stay |
| charge | drink | mark | repair | taste |
| chat | email | matter | reply | text |
| check | end | microwave | request | tour |
| circle | fall | name | research | use |
| cook | guide | need | rest | visit |
| copy | hate | offer | ring | waste |
| cost | hope | phone | share | work |

## 4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

| Noun | Verb | Adjective |
|---|---|---|
| confusion | confuse | **confusing**, confused |
| death | **die** | **dead** |
| employment | employ | **employed, unemployed** |
| enjoyment | **enjoy** | **enjoyable** |
| excitement | excite | **exciting, excited** |
| **help** | **help** | **helpful** |
| **heating** | heat | **hot** |
| interest | interest | **interested, interesting** |
| knowledge | **know** | **known**, unknown |
| **location** | locate | located |
| marriage | marry/**get married** | **married** |
| organization | **organize** | **organized** |
| pollution | pollute | **polluted** |
| rent | **rent** | rented |
| retirement | retire | **retired** |
| sleep | **sleep** | asleep |
| speech. **speaking, speaker** | **speak** | spoken |
| surprise | surprise | **surprised**, surprising |
| writing, writer | **write** | written |
| worry | **worry** | **worried**, worrying |

## 5 Verbs and adjectives

| Verb | Adjective |
|---|---|
| annoy | annoyed, **annoying** |
| boil | **boiled, boiling** |
| bore | bored, **boring** |
| **clean** | **clean** |
| **close** | **closed** |
| **complete** | **complete** |
| **correct** | correct |
| empty | **empty** |
| freeze | **frozen, freezing** |
| frighten | **frightened, frightening** |

| Verb | Adjective |
|---|---|
| include | **included** |
| irritate | irritated. **irritating** |
| **lose** | **lost** |
| **open** | open |
| **relax** | **relaxed**, relaxing |
| **shut** | shut |
| tidy | **tidy** |
| tire | **tired**, tiring |
| **wake up** | **awake** |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Common irregular verbs

| Verb | Past simple | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| be | was/were | been |
| beat | beat | beaten |
| become | became | become |
| begin | began | begun |
| blow | blew | blown |
| break | broke | broken |
| bring | brought | brought |
| build | built | built |
| buy | bought | bought |
| catch | caught | caught |
| come | came | come |
| cost | cost | cost |
| cut | cut | cut |
| do | did | done |
| draw | drew | drawn |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| drive | drove | driven |
| eat | ate | eaten |
| fall | fell | fallen |
| feel | felt | felt |
| find | found | found |
| fly | flew | flown |
| forget | forgot | forgotten |
| freeze | froze | frozen |
| get | got | got |
| give | gave | given |
| go | went | gone |
| grow | grew | grown |
| have | had | had |
| hear | heard | heard |
| hold | held | held |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| keep | kept | kept |
| know | knew | known |
| learn | learnt/learned | learnt/learned |
| leave | left | left |
| lend | lent | lent |
| let | let | let |

| Verb | Past simple | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| lie | lay | lain |
| lose | lost | lost |
| make | made | made |
| mean | meant | meant |
| meet | met | met |
| overtake | overtook | overtaken |
| pay | paid | paid |
| put | put | put |
| read | read | read |
| ride | rode | ridden |
| ring | rang | rung |
| run | ran | run |
| say | said | said |
| see | saw | seen |
| sell | sold | sold |
| send | sent | sent |
| shake | shook | shaken |
| shine | shone | shone |
| show | showed | shown |
| shut | shut | shut |
| sing | sang | sung |
| sit | sat | sat |
| sleep | slept | slept |
| speak | spoke | spoken |
| spell | spelt/spelled | spelt/spelled |
| spend | spent | spent |
| stand | stood | stood |
| swim | swam | swum |
| take | took | taken |
| teach | taught | taught |
| tell | told | told |
| think | thought | thought |
| understand | understood | understood |
| wake (up) | woke (up) | woken (up) |
| wear | wore | worn |
| win | won | won |
| write | wrote | written |



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Answer key

www.hellooteacher.ir

# Answer key

## Unit 1

**1**
1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 twenty-two
4 42,500
5 one thousand two hundred
6 two thousand three hundred and fifty

**2**
1 eight
2 twenty
3 sixty-seven
4 fifty
5 a/one hundred and nineteen
6 two hundred and forty-four
7 a/one thousand
8 five thousand and fifty-six
9 eleven thousand three hundred and one

**3**
1 about a/one hundred euros
2 about ten students
3 about thirty years
4 about five hundred
5 about two thousand
6 about eighty people
7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
8 about a/one million

## Unit 2

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | nine fifteen | 5 | three forty-five |
| 2 | ten twenty-five | 6 | seven twenty |
| 3 | three thirty-five | 7 | two thirty |
| 4 | eleven forty-five | 8 | four forty |

**2**
1 quarter past seven
2 half past nine
3 twenty-five to twelve
4 ten to four
5 twenty-five past eight
6 three minutes past one
7 quarter to three
8 seventeen minutes past four

**4** 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S 8 S

**5** *Answers from a British person*
1 They open at nine a.m.
2 No, they don't.
3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

## Unit 3

**1**
1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Tuesday | 6 | April |
| 2 | September | 7 | February |
| 3 | summer | 8 | winter |
| 4 | December | 9 | Thursday |
| 5 | Saturday | 10 | August |

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 September.
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.

**5**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | third | 6 | sixteenth |
| 2 | twentieth | 7 | fourteenth |
| 3 | fifth | 8 | thirteenth |
| 4 | first | 9 | second |
| 5 | eighth | | |

**6**
1 April the tenth. OR The tenth of April.
2 April the eleventh. OR The eleventh of April.
3 March the fourth. OR The fourth of March.
4 April the sixth. OR The sixth of April.
5 April the seventeenth. OR The seventeenth of April.
6 March the thirty-first. OR The thirty-first of March.
7 March the twenty-first. OR The twenty-first of March.
8 April the twenty-third. OR The twenty-third of April.

**7**
1 The third of February. OR February the third.
2 July the fourth. OR The fourth of July.
3 The tenth of December. OR December the tenth.
4 August the twelfth. OR The twelfth of August.
5 The fifteenth of January. OR January the fifteenth.
6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
7 The twenty-first of May. OR May the twenty-first.



www.hellooteacher.ir

8 November the thirtieth. OR The thirtieth of November.
9 The twenty-second of April. OR April the twenty-second.
10 Twenty fifteen. OR Two thousand and fifteen.
11 *Your own answer*
12 *Your own answer*

## Unit 4

**1** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F

**2**
1 Britain
2 Europe
3 Central
4 Far
5 South
6 Africa
7 The Middle East
8 Asia
9 Australasia

**3**
1 France, French
2 Germany, German
3 Spain, Spanish
4 Portugal, Portuguese
5 Italy, Italian
6 The Czech Republic, Czech
7 Poland, Polish
8 Hungary, Hungarian
9 Russia, Russian
10 Greece, Greek
11 Turkey, Turkish

**4** -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian
-ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

## Unit 5

**1** 1 ✗ 2 ✓ 3 ✗ 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 ✗ 10 ✓ 11 ✗ 12 ✓

**2**
1 board pen
2 cassette player
3 noticeboard
4 pencil sharpener
5 piece of paper
6 CD player

**3** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
I've got a rubber.
I've got a desk.
I've got a table.
I've got a chair.
I haven't got a noticeboard.
I haven't got a ruler.
I haven't got a board.
I haven't got a cassette player.

## Unit 6

**1**
1 indefinite
2 noun
3 preposition
4 an irregular
5 past participle
6 plural
7 verbs
8 adverbs

**2**
1 I
2 lessons
3 young
4 a
5 from/in
6 the
7 Today/quickly
8 asked
9 spoke
10 class
11 I think he's in the wrong class.

## Unit 7

**1** 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e

**2**
1 called
2 pronounce
3 How do
4 between
5 right/correct
6 opposite
7 does
8 explain

## Unit 8

**1**
1 What do you do in your country?
2 Where do you come from?
3 Could I have your address?
4 What's your family name?
5 What's your postcode?
6 How old are your children?
7 Have you got any children?
8 What's your first name?

**2**
1 family
2 first
3 from
4 Whereabouts/ Where exactly?
5 could/can
6 postcode
7 do
8 married
9 old

**3** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 Anna
2 Greece
3 Athens
4 1 Kipseli
11363 Athens
Greece
5 11363
6 I'm a teacher.
7 No, I'm single.
8 I'm 30.

## Unit 9

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 F 11 F 12 T

**2** *Your own answers*

## Unit 10

**1**
1 daughter
2 nephew
3 niece
4 sister-in-law
5 cousin
6 husband
7 grandmother
8 uncle
9 aunt
10 relatives

**2**
1 sister
2 wife
3 niece
4 relative
5 daughter
6 sister-in-law
7 grandmother
8 granddaughter
9 cousin
10 parent
11 aunt

**4** *Your own answers*

**5** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 T



www.hellooteacher.ir

**6** 1 I was born in 1989.
2 We spend a lot of time together.
3 My girlfriend is older than me.
4 There are six of us in my family.
5 I am the youngest in my family.
6 I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.

**7** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 There are six people in my family.
2 1963.
3 I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
4 I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
5 No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

## Unit 11

**1** 1 lie down
2 fall over
3 ride
4 climb
5 sit down
6 get on
7 run
8 stand up

**2** 1 stand
2 walk
3 climb
4 dance
5 lie
6 jumped
7 rode
8 ran, fell
9 got, got

**4** 1 carry
2 turn off
3 put down
4 close
5 touch
6 drop
7 pick up
8 break
9 hold
10 push
11 shut
12 open

**5** 1 touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
2 pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
3 break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
4 pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
5 turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
6 drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
7 carry a door 2, close a door 1
8 pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

## Unit 12

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F

**2** 1 wrist
2 stomach
3 neck
4 finger
5 shoulder
6 eyes
7 bottom

**3** 1 chin
2 stomach
3 chest
4 tooth/teeth
5 back
6 face
7 nose
8 bottom
9 waist

## Unit 13

**1** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F

**2** 1 height
2 good-looking
3 slim
4 weighs
5 fat
6 beautiful

**4** 1 I've got ~~medium-length,~~ short, curly hair. OR I've got medium-length, ~~short,~~ curly hair.
2 Her hair is short, ~~blonde,~~ light brown, and wavy. OR Her hair is short, blonde, ~~light brown,~~ and wavy.
3 My sister's hair is ~~short,~~ long, and curly. OR My sister's hair is short, ~~long,~~ and curly.
4 My brother's got short, ~~grey,~~ black hair, and a moustache. OR My brother's got short, grey, ~~black~~ hair, and a moustache.
5 My father's got a beard and long, ~~wavy,~~ straight hair. OR My father's got a beard and long, wavy, ~~straight~~ hair.

**5** 1 medium-length, short
2 blonde, black, brown, grey
3 straight, wavy, curly
4 beard, moustache
5 brown

**6** *Answers from a German person*
1 It's short.
2 It's red.
3 It's straight.
4 I've got a beard.
5 No, my eyes are blue.

**7** 1 b 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 c 6 f 7 a 8 g

**8** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
1 Pablo (my nephew).
2 Ester (my mother).
3 Ezequiel (my nephew).
4 Berta (my grandmother).
5 Pedro (my father).
6 Sol (my niece).
7 Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).

**10** The police are looking for Y.

**11** The other man is in his mid-forties/is middle-aged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

## Unit 14

**1** 1 funny
2 quiet
3 relaxed
4 nice
5 clever
6 friendly
7 laugh

**2** 1 unfriendly
2 intelligent
3 horrible
4 stupid
5 funny
6 serious
7 relaxed
8 kind



www.hellooteacher.ir

**3** 1 serious
2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
3 What, kind, clever/intelligent

**4** really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting

**5** 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F

**6** *Answers from a British person*
1 I'm very sporty.
2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
6 Yes, I think I am.

## Unit 15

**1** 1 They had a baby last year.
2 They split up in January.
3 We have a very good relationship.
4 How did you get to know her?
5 They were together for three years.
6 I went out with him for six months.

**2** 1 have
2 together
3 couple
4 out, up
5 ex-
6 divorced, partner/girlfriend, get

**3** 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S

**4** *Answers from an Hungarian person*
1 My wife.
2 Seven years.
3 At a friend's Christmas party.
4 We have mutual friends.
5 We live together.
6 Because we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

## Unit 16

**1** 1 I'm tired.
2 I'm nervous.
3 I'm thirsty.
4 I'm hungry.
5 I'm boiling.
6 I'm ill. OR I feel ill. OR I don't feel well.

**2** 1 matter; feel OR 'm
2 tired
3 matter; freezing
4 boiling
5 nervous
6 What's; well

**4** 1 angry
2 worried
3 upset
4 scared
5 surprised
6 frightened
7 unhappy
8 embarrassed
9 excited

**5** 1 angry
2 surprised
3 worried
4 excited
5 embarrassed
6 happy
7 upset OR sad OR unhappy
8 frightened OR scared
9 love

## Unit 17

**1** 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.
4 I finish work at 6 p.m.
5 I have dinner with my family.
6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
7 I sleep seven hours a night.

**2** 1 get
2 have
3 leave
4 get
5 have
6 go

**3** *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 Yes, I do sometimes.
3 In the sitting room.
4 At about 8.15.
5 At about 8.50.
6 My family.
7 At around 11.30.
8 About 8 hours.

**5**

| | |
|---|---|
| do the shopping | once or twice a week |
| stay in | go shopping |
| play tennis | go to the gym |
| come round | at the weekend |
| go for a walk | |

**6** 1 go
2 round
3 play
4 out OR shopping
5 During, in
6 late
7 at
8 gym
9 do, early
10 see

**7** 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

**8** 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
3 Haruko always stays in.
4 Hiro studies all day.
5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.

**9** *Answers from a British person*
1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
3 False. I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
4 False. I never study on Sunday.
5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 18

**1**
1 jacket
2 trousers
3 jumper
4 coat
5 raincoat
6 T-shirt
7 dress
8 jeans
9 sweater

**3** 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 F 11 T 12 F

**5**
1 gloves
2 umbrella
3 jeans
4 sandals
5 hat
6 jeans

**6**
1 Give me the sock.
2 Not possible.
3 I've got one pair of sandals.
4 Not possible.
5 She's wearing my scarf.
6 Where is my glove?
7 Not possible.
8 Not possible.

**7** *Answers from a German person*
1 Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
2 I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
3 No, I only wear leather shoes.
4 I wear sunglasses in summer.
5 I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

## Unit 19

**1**
1 short
2 comfortable
3 small
4 casual
5 loose
6 expensive
7 smart
8 long

**2**
1 uncomfortable
2 nice
3 casual
4 expensive
5 small
6 long
7 loose
8 lovely

**3**
1 short
2 uncomfortable
3 casual
4 expensive
5 loose
6 horrible/awful/terrible

**5**
1 a OR a size
2 medium
3 wrong
4 fit, too
5 take
6 fit, too

**6**
1 The shirt is too small/tight.
2 The trousers are too long.
3 The hat's too big.

**7**
1 Where do I pay?
2 No thanks, I'll leave it.
3 Excuse me, where's the changing room?
4 Can I try this dress on?
5 I'm looking for a pair of trousers.
6 Do you need any help?

**8**
1 on
2 desk
3 them
4 card
5 room
6 help
7 lovely/nice
8 pay

**9** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 No, I don't.
2 I buy clothes about four times *a* year.
3 I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4 Yes, I always do.
5 Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6 I usually pay by debit card.

## Unit 20

**1**
1 The dictionary cost me eight euros ~~and~~ fifty.
2 Could you put **in** your PIN, please? OR Could you **enter** your PIN, please?
3 She paid for the dress in cash.
4 I've only got a 50 **pound** note.
5 They're €6 ~~for~~ each.
6 Have you got a bank **account?**
7 Three books. That's €42 **altogether.**
8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 **change.**

**2**
1 put in/enter
2 PIN
3 receipt
4 cost
5 each
6 altogether
7 note
8 change

**3**
1 price
2 spend
3 saved
4 won
5 fare
6 earn
7 sold
8 bill

**4**
1 bought
2 spent
3 sold
4 earned
5 won
6 saved

**5**
1 online
2 bill
3 free
4 price
5 fares
6 earn

**6** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 Very rarely.
2 Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3 Yes, most of the time it is.
4 It's about one euro.
5 Yes, they're cheap.
6 No, women earn less than men.

## Unit 21

**1** 1 c 2 i 3 h 4 j 5 b 6 a 7 e 8 f 9 g

**2**
1 rain
2 sunny
3 snows
4 foggy
5 wind
6 cloudy



www.hellooteacher.ir

**4** 1 showers 4 minutes
2 lightning 5 damp
3 dry, very hot 6 breeze

**5** 1 There was heavy rain last night.
2 It was humid yesterday.
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
4 The weather's changeable.
5 It's dry today.
6 We had a storm.

**6** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
1 We have a lot of showers in the winter.
2 In winter it's not always freezing at night.
3 The weather is the same all summer. True. It is hot and humid.
4 Once or twice a year we have heavy rain for 24 hours.
5 It only snows in the west of the country.
6 Our winters are usually cold and wet.
7 We often have thunder and lightning. True.
8 It is usually hot and humid in summer.

## Unit 22

**1** 1 hurts 7 flu
2 've got 8 Has
3 feel 9 've got
4 've got 10 Has
5 feel 11 's
6 hurts 12 haven't got

**2** 1 cough 5 stomach-ache
2 temperature 6 sick
3 hurt 7 flu
4 matter; well 8 throat

**4** 1 You should ~~to~~ go to the chemist's.
2 Go and lie ~~you~~ down for a while.
3 Go and see your GP ~~doctor~~. OR Go and see your ~~GP~~ doctor.
4 Stay in ~~the~~ bed and don't do anything.
5 Go to bed for a day or two ~~days~~.
6 You should go and ~~to~~ see your doctor.
7 You shouldn't ~~don't~~ go to work today.
8 Lie down for ~~the~~ a while.

**5** *Possible answers*
1 You should go and lie down for a while.
2 You should go to the pharmacy.
3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
4 You should go and lie down for a while.
5 You should go and see your GP.

## Unit 23

**1** 1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream
2 tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine
3 *correct* 6 pharmacist

**2** 1 a sore throat
2 take these tablets
3 for toothache, please
4 wool
5 some plasters, please
6 for your finger
7 this medicine – it's very good
8 tablet three times a day
9 cream
10 help you

## Unit 24

**1** 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
5 Cow, because it's only an animal.

**2** 1 beef 3 tuna 5 crab
2 pork 4 duck

**3** 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon
2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken

**4** *Your own answers*

## Unit 25

**1** grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry, cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple

**2** 1 sweet 5 small
2 bitter 6 good
3 red 7 sweet
4 green 8 big

**4** 1 carrot 5 beans
2 onion 6 courgette
3 pepper 7 tomato
4 cabbage 8 garlic

**5** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F

**6** *Your own answers*

## Unit 26

**1** 1 ✓ 7 ✓
2 ✓ 8 bread OR some bread
3 butter OR some butter 9 ✓
4 ✓ 10 rice OR some rice
5 cheese OR some cheese 11 jam OR some jam
6 ✓ 12 ✓



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2** 1 milk
2 some cheese
3 sugar
4 biscuits
5 some olive oil
6 six eggs
7 butter
8 rice
9 a large bar of chocolate
10 noodles

**4** 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T

**5** 1 box
2 jar
3 bottle
4 carton/bottle
5 kilo
6 packet
7 grams
8 packet
9 litre/bottle/carton
10 bottle/litre

**7** 1 got, many
2 much, else, that's
3 Could/Can, just
4 like, ripe

**8** 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any ham?
4 How much cheese would you like?
5 That's just over half a kilo.
6 How many oranges would you like?

## Unit 27

**1** 1 roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
2 cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee

**2** 1 bread
2 sandwich
3 chocolate
4 coffee
5 take away
6 couple
7 white
8 white
9 have

**3** 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
2 To drink here or **take** away?
3 To drink here. And a toasted ham **sandwich**.
4 OK. It will be a couple of minutes.
5 Have a seat, please.

## Unit 28

**1** 1 fork
2 spoon
3 napkin
4 plate
5 bowl
6 bottle
7 mineral water
8 glasses
9 wine
10 red
11 white
12 salt
13 black pepper
14 bottles
15 oil
16 vinegar

**2** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar.
We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine.

**4** 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F 10 T

**5** 1 cream
2 steak
3 salad
4 soup
5 course
6 sauce
7 done
8 boiled

**6** *Your own answers*

**8** 1 some more
2 to order
3 another
4 meal
5 of course
6 the
7 I'll
8 certainly

**9** 1 have
2 how
3 course
4 sparkling
5 some
6 dessert
7 'll
8 bill
9 sure/certainly

## Unit 29

**1** 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?
2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
3 How long does it take to the railway station?
4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
5 Where do I get off for the cinema?
6 Does the 24 go to the park?
7 How often does the 24 run?
8 Which is the last stop for the 16?

**2** 1 Five
2 The 16 or the 24
3 About ten
4 Yes, it does
5 At the next stop
6 No, it doesn't
7 Every ten minutes
8 The railway station

**3** 1 stop
2 next/second
3 last/final
4 get off
5 goes/runs
6 timetable
7 run
8 runs
9 every
10 takes

**4** *Answers from a British person*
1 Yes, at the end of the road.
2 The 9 and the 15.
3 They run about every 15 minutes.
4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.
5 Four.
6 Five to ten minutes.

## Unit 30

**1** 1 a slow train
2 get off the train
3 catch a train
4 the 7 o'clock train
5 a seat
6 at a (railway) station

**2** 1 fare
2 carriage
3 missed
4 get/take
5 last/next
6 waited/wait
7 timetable
8 journey



www.hellooteacher.ir

**3** 1 advance
2 return
3 direct
4 London
5 office
6 train
7 seat

**4** 1 change
2 leaves
3 platform
4 gets
5 to
6 single
7 advance

**5** *Answers from a German person*
1 A month ago.
2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced prices.
5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to Berlin.

## Unit 31

**1** 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Turn left into Foster Road.

**2** 1 turning
2 much
3 left/right/corner
4 me
5 going
6 on
7 here
8 way

**3** 1
1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
2
1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning 6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks
3
1 way 2 Turn 3 Into 4 corner 5 right

## Unit 32

**1** 1 station
2 road
3 camera
4 sign
5 crossing
6 park
7 jam

**2** 1 station
2 main
3 sign
4 park
5 crossing
6 speed
7 roundabout
8 traffic
9 pavement
10 junction

**4** 1 motorway
2 rush hour
3 overtake
4 speed limit
5 accident
6 a quiet road

**5** 1 busy
2 lane, overtake
3 far
4 take, drive

**6** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 Three.
2 120kph.
3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

## Unit 33

**1** 1 f 2 h 3 j 4 c 5 b 6 e 7 i 8 g 9 a

**2** 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
2 in/out
3 do not disturb/ring bell
4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
5 in/out
6 do not disturb/ring bell
7 declare

## Unit 34

**1** 1 Porto Alegre
2 Brasilia
3 Amazon
4 Pico da Neblina
5 Argentina
6 Colombia
7 Rio de Janeiro
8 Mountain
9 inland
10 coast

**2** *Possible answers*
1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
3 It's the capital.
4 It's a town in the south.
5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
6 It's a famous city on the coast.

**3** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.
6 The islands.
7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

## Unit 35

**1** 1 bridge
2 square
3 castle
4 cathedral
5 park
6 mosque
7 building

**2** 1 temple
2 bridge
3 market
4 museum
5 park
6 statue, square
7 castle, palace
8 place



www.hellooteacher.ir

4 Size: a small village, a large city, a medium-sized town
Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital
Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town

5
1 of
2 in
3 of
4 on
5 population
6 under
7 industrial
8 historic

6 *Answer from a British person*
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. The population is just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place in England, with lots of historic buildings, including a famous abbey (like a cathedral) and many museums.

7
1 no
2 yes
3 yes
4 no
5 yes
6 yes
7 no

8
1 cosmopolitan
2 dangerous
3 do
4 nightlife
5 crowded/busy
6 polluted

9 *Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)*
1 It's pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
2 It's a big city, and there's a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums – whatever you're interested in.
3 It's a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
4 There are many popular clubs, bars, all-night cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
5 Yes, it is.
6 Some people think it's noisy and dirty, but I love it because it's got everything.

## Unit 36

1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T

2
1 valley, hill
2 grass
3 few trees
4 fields
5 own, dog, horse
6 crops, grow
7 farmers

3 *Answers from an Argentinian person*
1 Neither, I live in the city centre.
2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
3 No, I can't.
4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
5 There is a football pitch.
6 No.
7 Wheat, soy and corn.
8 Yes, I know a few.

5 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

6
1 I often buy **flowers**.
2 I love the **countryside**.
3 I'm very **healthy**.
4 I see lots of **birds** in my **area**.
5 Our public **transport** is **wonderful**.
6 I'm often **alone** in the evening.
7 I eat **fresh** fruit every day.
8 I never feel **lonely**.

7 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 False. I don't buy flowers.
2 True.
3 True.
4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
5 True.
6 False. My family is normally with me.
7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
8 True.

## Unit 37

1
1 butcher's
2 baker's
3 paper shop
4 deli
5 chemist's
6 newsagent's

2 *Possible answers*
1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
5 bread, cakes
6 CDs, DVDs

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

5
1 shopping
2 prefer
3 queue
4 convenient
5 deliver
6 get

6 *Answers from a British person*
1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
3 Yes, often.
4 Yes, they are.
5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
6 At the market.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 38

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 T

**2**
1 basement
2 block of flats
3 ground floor
4 front door
5 stairs
6 garden
7 steps
8 neighbour
9 balcony
10 town centre

**4** study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom

**5**
1 living
2 bathroom
3 view
4 garage
5 garden
6 outside
7 views
8 kitchen
9 study
10 Upstairs
11 bedrooms
12 bathrooms
13 parking
14 outside

**6** *Answers from a German person*
1 I live in a flat.
2 On the first floor.
3 No.
4 I look into the courtyard.
5 No, but there are always free spaces.
6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room, a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen and a big hallway.

## Unit 39

**1**
1 washing machine
2 dishwasher, sink
3 saucers, cupboard
4 shelf/shelves
5 bin
6 oven
7 frying pan
8 freezer
9 full
10 microwave, hob
11 tap
12 saucepan

**2** *Answers from a Turkish person*
My washing machine is in the bathroom.

**4**
1 shopping
2 put (everything) away
3 empty
4 clean
5 make
6 puts
7 takes
8 cook
9 washing-up
10 ironing

**5** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 My partner.
2 I do.
3 I do.
4 I do.
5 My partner.
6 We both do.

## Unit 40

**1**
1 mirror
2 desk
3 blanket
4 bidet
5 wardrobe
6 towel

**2**
1 bedside table
2 mirror
3 bath
4 chest of drawers
5 washbasin
6 toilet
7 wardrobe
8 bidet
9 blanket
10 sheet
11 towel
12 shower

**3** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe.
In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.

**5**
1 do, brush
2 have
3 puts on
4 shave
5 washes, shampoo
6 tissues

**6** 1 a 2 a 3 – 4 a 5 – 6 an 7 – 8 a, –

**7** *Your own answers*

## Unit 41

**1** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F

**2**
1 floor
2 carpet
3 cushion
4 radiator
5 coffee table
6 ceiling
7 bookshelves
8 light
9 curtains
10 armchair
11 rug
12 fireplace

**3** *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
2 No, we've got air conditioning.
3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
5 On the ceiling.
6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

## Unit 42

**1**
1 history
2 geography
3 biology
4 design
5 physics
6 maths
7 music
8 literature

**2**
1 PE/physical education
2 ICT/information communication technology
3 literature
4 modern languages
5 RE/religious education
6 chemistry
7 art



www.hellooteacher.ir

**3** *Your own answers*

**5** 1 c 2 h 3 g 4 i 5 a 6 e 7 b 8 d 9 f 10 j

**6**
1 start
2 uniform
3 pupils, secondary
4 leave, get
5 state, private

**7** *Answers from a German person*
1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.
2 We don't have school uniforms in Germany.
3 At the age of ten.
4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.
5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

**8**
1 no
2 5
3 2
4 A
5 E
6 C

**9**
1 take
2 do
3 well, grade
4 results
5 badly, failed
6 worst

**10** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 They were 50 minutes.
2 Yes.
3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.
4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.
5 Yes.

## Unit 43

**1**
1 do
2 term
3 BSc
4 library
5 A graduate
6 Unfortunately
7 after

**2**
1 degree
2 do/write
3 do, PhD
4 fortunately
5 again
6 last

**3** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 Four years.
2 Two or three years.
3 About ten weeks.
4 About twelve weeks.
5 Yes, always.

**4**
1 doctor
2 engineer
3 architect
4 psychologist
5 economist
6 politician
7 journalist
8 businessman/manager

**5**
1 lawyer P
2 architecture DS
3 computer science DS
4 software engineer P
5 psychology DS
6 business studies DS
7 politics DS
8 engineer P
9 medicine DS
10 economics DS
11 IT manager P
12 reporter P

## Unit 44

**1**
1 vet
2 shop assistant
3 nurse
4 old
5 hasn't
6 businesswoman
7 secretary
8 dentist
9 chef
10 builder

**2**
1 businessman
2 shop assistant
3 hairdresser
4 secretary
5 police officer
6 retired
7 builder
8 lorry driver
9 cleaner
10 housewife
11 self-employed
12 soldier

**3**
1 a hairdresser
2 a pilot
3 unemployed
4 the boss/a manager
5 retired
6 self-employed
7 a teacher
8 a chef

**4** *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I'm a secretary.
2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.
3 I don't know anyone who's a hairdresser.
4 My mother is unemployed.
5 I don't know anyone who's retired.
6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.
7 My friend Dave is a pilot.
8 My father's friend Mr Kitamura is a dentist.
9 My father and brother are businessmen.
10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

## Unit 45

**1**
1 hours a day
2 a factory
3 office
4 work for
5 does he earn
6 she work
7 an American airline
8 earn much
9 job
10 ten to six

**2**
1 part
2 a
3 earn
4 low
5 hours
6 day
7 year
8 salary

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 I'm a reporter.
2 I work for a local newspaper.
3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.
4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**4** 1 ~~does~~ makes
2 ~~meet~~ meeting
3 ~~type~~ typing
4 *correct*
5 ~~organizate~~ organize
6 *correct*
7 ~~about~~
8 ~~to~~

**5** 1 meet
2 answer
3 send/write
4 spend
5 making
6 colleagues
7 discuss
8 organize
9 clients
10 have

## Unit 46

**1** 1 screen
2 mouse
3 personal computer
4 memory stick
5 monitor
6 keyboard
7 disk
8 webcam

**2** 1 speaker
2 hard copies
3 hard drive
4 laptop
5 memory stick, disk
6 mouse
7 mouse mat
8 screen

**3** *Answers from a German person*
1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.
2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.
3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it in the guest room.
4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and my holidays on the computer.
5 No, don't have a webcam.

**5** 1 g 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c

**6** 1 clicked
2 beginning, end
3 make/save
4 did
5 cut
6 save
7 open
8 middle

## Unit 47

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F

**2** 1 I must reply to Jean's message.
2 Did you get/receive my message?
3 I received an email from Li today.
4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
5 Please forward the attachment to John.
6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.

**3** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 Almost every day.
2 My colleagues, family and friends.
3 Commercial, healthy life emails.
4 Yes they do. They send me pictures, poems and jokes.
5 Yes.

**4** 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S 9 D 10 S

**5** 1 search
2 download
3 on/using
4 broadband
5 website
6 visit

**6** *Answers from a Greek person*
1 annaingreece@yahoo.com
2 Very rarely.
3 It's www.in.gr
4 Google.
5 No.
6 I use the internet almost every day.
7 No, never.
8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.
9 I use Google.

## Unit 48

**1** 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

**2** 1 I hate chocolate.
2 They don't like doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
4 I quite like shopping.
5 She doesn't like driving.
6 I think tennis is OK.
7 I really like going out with friends.
8 She loves watching sport.

**3** *Answers from a German person*
1 I love watching TV.
2 I really like studying English.
3 I love driving.
4 I don't like shopping for clothes.
5 I like cleaning the house.
6 I quite like writing emails.
7 I like talking on the phone.
8 I love going to the cinema.

**4** 1 I enjoy watching TV.
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.
4 She prefers reading to writing.
5 He's a fantastic boss.
6 Was the party good fun?
7 It's a boring programme.
8 Are you keen on tennis?

**5** 1 fun
2 prefer
3 favourite
4 interested
5 keen
6 enjoy
7 interesting

**6** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 Yes it is.
2 I like both.
3 Istanbul.
4 Yes. I like swimming.
5 Yes.
6 Yes.
7 Yes.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 49

**1** football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil

**2**
1 T
2 T
3 F You score goals in ice hockey. OR You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
4 F You play football on a pitch. OR You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
5 F You play ice hockey with sticks. OR You play tennis with rackets.
6 T
7 T
8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball. OR You play ice hockey with a puck.

**3**
1 game
2 basketball
3 games, set
4 score/result, nil
5 pitch, court

**4**
1 match/game
2 against
3 top
4 to
5 beat
6 won
7 drew
8 beat

**5**
1 match/game
2 against
3 lost
4 drew; with
5 time
6 beat
7 scored
8 won
9 leading
10 score

**6** *Your own answers*

## Unit 50

**1**
1 another place
2 inside
3 inside
4 inside
5 another place
6 inside
7 another place
8 inside

**2**
1 go
2 collects
3 play
4 does
5 play
6 spend
7 go
8 does
9 makes

**3** *Your own answers*

**5**
1 True.
2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
5 True.
6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

**6** *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I love exercising and cooking.
2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
4 I never listen to classical music.
5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
6 No. I'm a bad singer.

## Unit 51

**1**
1 2004
2 able
3 two
4 album
5 Alex Turner
6 drums

**2**
1 group
2 lead
3 drummer
4 single
5 album
6 chart
7 known
8 download

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 The 8eatles.
2 Paul McCartney: lead singer and bass guitar, John Lennon: lead singer and guitar, George Harrison: guitar, Ringo Starr: drums.
3 In 1962.
4 Hey Jude.
5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.
6 Eleanor Rigby.

**4**
1 conductor
2 orchestra
3 classical
4 concert
5 cello
6 composer
7 perform
8 pianist

**5**
1 orchestra
2 conductor
3 pianist
4 violinist
5 cellist
6 opera singer
7 composer
8 by
9 concert, performing/singing

## Unit 52

**1**
1 thriller
2 comedy
3 action film
4 cartoon
5 love story
6 horror film

**2** 1 c 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e

**3**
1 romantic
2 violent
3 frightening/scary
4 funny

**5**
1 kind
2 about
3 reviews
4 in
5 stars
6 actors
7 director
8 on
9 see



www.hellooteacher.ir

6 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I like comedies a lot.
2 'The Holiday'.
3 At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
4 Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.
5 Nancy Meyers.
6 It's a love story.

## Unit 53

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D

2 1 magazines
2 report
3 events/news
4 disasters
5 wars
6 opinion(s)
7 celebrities

4 1 in
2 the
3 on
4 out
5 programme
6 –
7 of, on
8 believe
9 of

5 1 watch, saw/watched
2 believe/think, none
3 news, happened
4 listen, heard/listened to
5 paper/newspaper
6 forecast
7 watch, much

6 *Your own answers*

## Unit 54

1 1 abroad
2 arrange
3 might
4 get
5 hire
6 find
7 packed
8 book

2 1 abroad
2 flight(s)
3 accommodation
4 booked/arranged/decided
5 get
6 currency
7 insurance
8 might
9 pack
10 find

## Unit 55

1 1 staff
2 recommended
3 delicious
4 tourists
5 facilities
6 minibar

2 1 stay
2 staff
3 facilities
4 minibar
5 satellite
6 conditioning, heating
7 guests
8 recommend

3 *Answers from a Japanese person*
▶ I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
1 One night.
2 Yes, very helpful.
3 No. It was not as good as I expected.
4 Yes, it did.
5 No, it didn't.
6 It had air conditioning but not central heating.
7 Yes. I talked to a lady in the public bath.
8 Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.

4 1 no
2 yes
3 yes
4 no
5 €60
6 no
7 no
8 yes

5 1 like
2 book
3 double
4 twin
5 en suite
6 shower
7 fine/great
8 a
9 included
10 air
11 afraid
12 shame
13 mind
14 Right/OK/Fine/Great/Good
15 details

## Unit 56

1 1 suitcase
2 luggage
3 aisle seat
4 hand luggage
5 good flight
6 airport
7 boarding card
8 window seat
9 ticket
10 scales
11 trolley

3 1 no
2 no
3 yes
4 no
5 2

4 1 call, gate
2 boarding
3 delayed
4 check-in
5 depart/leave

5 2 (c) fasten your seat belt
3 (h) the plane takes off
4 (d) the plane lands
5 (e) get off the plane
6 (i) someone checks your passport
7 (a) collect your luggage
8 (b) go through customs
9 (f) leave the terminal

6 1 lands
2 your seat belt
3 customs, passport control
4 luggage, baggage reclaim
5 get on, get off

7 *Answers from a British person*
1 Two or three times a year.
2 I usually read a book or magazine.
3 An aisle seat.
4 A small bag and my laptop.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 57

**1** 1 rent
2 swimming costume
3 shorts
4 apartment
5 sea
6 perfect
7 relax
8 sunbathe

**2** 1 beach
2 got/took, went
3 rented, resort
4 so/two
5 flew
6 lie

## Unit 58

**1** 1 go
2 book
3 visit
4 take
5 guided
6 go on

**2** 1 took, typical
2 should, round
3 got, map
4 art
5 went, guide

**3** *Your own answers*

## Unit 59

**1** 1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 e

**2** 1 Sign
2 Change
3 currency
4 rate
5 per
6 cash

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 The pound sterling.
2 £1 = $1.84 at the moment.
3 At a bank or a bureau de change.
4 Yes, often.
5 They are usually inside or outside banks, at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.

**4** 1 deliver letters
2 the name, address and postcode
3 to the post office
4 on the scales
5 a stamp
6 the postman
7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard

**5** 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?
2 Can you put it on the scales?
3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?
4 Where can/do I post this letter?
5 How much is a postcard to Russia?
6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

## Unit 60

**1** 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Hanna. OR Hanna, this is Max.
3 Bye. I hope to see you again. OR I hope to see you again. Bye.
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. OR Nice to meet you. Goodbye.

**2** 1 nice, hi/hello
2 hope, again, goodbye/bye
3 is, Hello/Hi, to meet/see you, Hello/Hi
4 goodbye/bye, to meet/see you, Bye/Goodbye

**3** 1 See you again.
2 I must go now.
3 See you later.
4 He's very well.
5 See you soon.
6 How are things?
7 See you on Sunday.
8 I've got to go now.
9 That's fine.

**4** 1 well, bad, how's, fine/very well/not bad
2 've got to, later, that's, then

**5** 1 Good morning, Morning
2 Good evening, Evening
3 Good afternoon, Afternoon
4 Goodbye/Goodnight, Bye/Bye bye/Night

## Unit 61

**1** 1 i 2 h 3 g 4 d 5 j 6 c 7 f 8 e 9 a

**2** 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend, holiday, journey, time
2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday
3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done! Welcome home!

## Unit 62

**1** 1 How often do you go there?
2 What kind of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What's wrong with Peter?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What's his flat like?
8 Why don't you like her?

**2** a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2

**3** 1 often
2 Whose
3 What
4 How/What
5 long
6 Who

**4** 1 What
2 long
3 time
4 many
5 nearest
6 seeing

**5** 1 far
2 many
3 Which
4 What
5 close/shut
6 worth
7 nearest
8 recommend

**6** *Answers from a Turkish person*
1 In Adana, Turkey.
2 Half of my life.
3 Capadoccia and the coast.
4 Three hours in a car.
5 Asma Alti (a kebab house in Adana).



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 63

**1** 1 Can **you** lend me a pen? ~ Yes, **of** course.
2 Could you **bring** the books here, **please**? ~ Yes, **no** problem.
3 Could you **possibly** wait here a few **minutes**? ~ I'm **afraid** I can't.
4 Lia, can you **change** places **with** Maris, **please**? ~ Yes, **sure**.

**2** *Possible answers*
1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
B I'm afraid I can't.
4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
B Yes, sure.
5 A Could you possibly wait in the classroom a few minutes?
B Yes, no problem.

**3** *Possible answers*
1 **Is it all right** if I use this dictionary?
2 **Do you mind/Is it all rightif** I make a coffee?
3 **Could** I stay for another ten minutes? OR **Is it OK/all right/if** I stay another ten minutes? OR **Do you mind if** I stay another ten minutes?
4 Is it OK **if** I close the window?
5 Can I **borrow** your book?
6 Yes, **sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.**
7 **I'm afraid** I need it.
8 **Is it all right** to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **of course/no problem/go ahead/ that's fine.**

**4** *Possible answers*
1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today?
2 Could I borrow a rubber?
3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?

**5** OK; Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go ahead; Yes, that's fine.

## Unit 64

**1** 1 Would you **like** to come round later?
2 Yes, **I'd love to.**
3 Do you want to **go** out for dinner?
4 That **sounds** lovely.
5 I'm afraid I can't.
6 That **would** be nice.
7 Do you want **to** come to a party?
8 I'm **sorry**, but I'm busy tonight.

**2** 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
B Yes, great!
2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
B I'm afraid I can't.
3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
B Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

## Unit 65

**1** 1 What shall we do this weekend?
2 The weather's nice, so ...
3 ... what about going to the beach?
4 Yes, good idea.
5 Maybe we could take the train.
6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
7 I'd prefer to get them at the station.

**2** 1 What **shall** we do this evening?
2 Do you have a **suggestion**?
3 What about **going** to see a film?
4 I'd prefer **to** go by train.
5 Yes, that's a good idea.

**3** 1 A What **about** going **to** the theatre?
B I'm **not** sure **about** that.
2 A What **shall** we **do** on Saturday?
B Perhaps we **could** go out for a meal.
A OK, let's **do** that.
3 A Where **shall** we go **this** afternoon?
B Let's go to an exhibition.
A Yeah, **that's** *a* good **idea.**

## Unit 66

**1** 1 hand, worry
2 eat, Could
3 Do, fine
4 like, Thanks

**2** 1 Can I give you a hand?
2 Thank you **very** much.
3 Would you **like** a drink?
4 Thanks a lot.
5 No, **I'm** fine, thanks.

**3** 1 A Would you like a drink?
B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
2 A Do you need some help?
B No, I'm fine, thanks.
3 A Would you like something to eat?
B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 A Can I give you a hand?
B No, don't worry.

**4** 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b

**5** 1 of
2 Let
3 Shall
4 Would
5 Shall I
6 give
7 me
8 want



www.hellooteacher.ir

**6** 1 you, lift, thanks, kind, you
2 shall, make, please, me
3 me, carry, thanks
4 want

## Unit 67

**1** 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
B Don't **worry**/never mind.
2 A I'm sorry, I've forgo**tten** your book.
B **Don't** worry.
3 A I've broken your cup – I'm very sorry.
B **It doesn't** matter.

**2** 1 That's
2 worry
3 very/really, matter
4 mind
5 I'm
6 Sorry, problem
7 apologize
8 rude

## Unit 68

**1** 1 What do you think of it?
2 I agree **with** you.
3 I don't **think** it's very good.
4 It was a **waste of** money.
5 Personally, I didn't like it.
6 I prefer the other one

**2** 1 think, Personally
2 opinion, agree
3 of, think
4 sure, prefer

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
3 Personally, I like it.
4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

## Unit 69

**1** 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S

**2** 1 engaged, phone
2 number, code
3 call, out, message, rang, battery
4 wrong

**3** *Answers from a British person*
1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
2 My family.
3 Only a few minutes.
4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.

**4** 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
2 Just a moment.
3 Speaking.
4 Oh, hello, how are you?

**5** 1 speaking
2 This is/It's
3 in/there, please
4 the moment
5 ring/call/phone back/again
7 speak to
8 just a
9 get
10 Is that
11 speaking
12 It

## Unit 70

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F

**2** 1 useful
2 weak
3 dead
4 rich
5 quiet
6 noisy
7 narrow
8 unusual
9 asleep
10 wide

**4** 1 SYN
2 SYN
3 OPP
4 OPP
5 SYN

**5** 1 confusing
2 helpful
3 impossible
4 mad/crazy
5 only
6 necessary
7 strange/odd
8 clear
9 annoying/irritating

## Unit 71

**1** 1 He's 75 and he **still** plays tennis.
2 It's nice there, **especially** in the morning.
3 There are **only** three students in the class.
4 He **even** works on Sunday.
5 She's **still** at university.
6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is **even** bigger.

**2** 1 only
2 still
3 particularly
4 only
5 even
6 still

**3** 1 Only
2 still
3 especially/particularly
4 only
5 even
6 especially/particularly

**4** 1 very
2 absolutely
3 a bit/a little
4 really
5 really/extremely
6 quite
7 very/really
8 really

**5** *Possible answers*
1 He was **extremely** good.
2 The holiday was **really** wonderful.
3 She's **a bit** unfriendly.
4 The kitchen was **really** clean.
5 The room was **a little** small.
6 Her new boyfriend is **absolutely** awful.
7 They're **very** nice people.
8 The weather was **really** terrible.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 72

**1** 1 put, cost, read
2 write, drive, win
3 spend, send, lend
4 know, hold, grow
5 buy, bring, think

**2** left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat

**3** 1 was, slept
2 swam
3 rang
4 wrote, forgot
5 saw
6 bought
7 stood
8 took, went

**5** brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up

**6** 1 forgotten
2 given
3 seen
4 taken
5 written
6 known
7 spoken
8 driven
9 grown

They all end in –n or –en.

**7** 1 read
2 driven
3 taught
4 won
5 sent
6 slept
7 swum
8 spoken

**8** *Answers from an Argentinian person*
1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
2 No, never.
3 Yes, many times.
4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
6 Yes, on a cruise.
7 Yes, many times.
8 Yes, on several occasions.

## Unit 73

**1** 1 out
2 up
3 over
4 out
5 up
6 on

**2** 1 out
2 up
3 on
4 down
5 down
6 up
7 off
8 over

**4** 1 Take it off.
2 Try them on.
3 Turn it on.
4 Put them on.
5 Take them off.
6 Try it on.
7 Turn them on.
8 Put it on.

**5** 1 Could I try it on?
2 correct
3 You can take it off if you're hot.
4 Look it up in the dictionary.
5 *correct*
6 *correct*
7 Did you put it on?
8 *correct*

**6** *Answers from a Hungarian person*
1 I grew up in Budapest.
2 I always feel hungry.
3 Once or twice a week.
4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

## Unit 74

**1** 1 ~~2005~~
2 ~~Friday~~
3 ~~April~~
4 ~~the morning~~
5 ~~4.00~~
6 ~~midnight~~
7 ~~the autumn~~
8 ~~winter~~
9 ~~dinner time~~
10 ~~the evening~~

**2** 1 at
2 at
3 in
4 in
5 On
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 At
10 on

**3** *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I get up at 7.30.
2 I study English at night.
3 I go swimming at the weekend.
4 I watch TV in the evening.
5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.
6 I see my family in the mornings.
7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

## Unit 75

**1** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 T

**2** 1 ago
2 diary
3 night
4 time
5 appointment
6 next

**3** 1 I went to the cinema
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's Bar
3 I stayed at Gary's/I went to Gary's
4 I've got a doctor's appointment
5 It's Pete's birthday
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad

**4** 1 before
2 after
3 until
4 at
5 since
6 later
7 for
8 soon



www.hellooteacher.ir

**5** 1 until
2 for
3 soon
4 in
5 at
6 since
7 before
8 later

**6** *Your own answers*

## Unit 76

**1** 1 in
2 on
3 at
4 in
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 on
9 on
10 in
11 on
12 at
13 on
14 at

**2** 1 in
2 in
3 on
4 on
5 in
6 at, at, in

**3** *Answers from a Brazilian person*
▶ Brazil.
1 In a city.
2 In a flat.
3 Yes, Rio Guaiba.
4 It's on the second floor.
5 Yes, I do.
6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

**4** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 T

**5** 1 next to
2 in front of
3 in front of
4 next to
5 between
6 opposite
7 next to

**6** *Answers from a German person*
1 An old factory.
2 More houses.
3 A pub, and more houses.
4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.
5 The neighbours' flat.
6 Another neighbour's flat.

**8** 1 trees
2 motorway
3 river
4 shop
5 gate
6 bus stop
7 mountain
8 stairs
9 building
10 field

**9** 1 under
2 into
3 up
4 along
5 past
6 through
7 out of
8 down
9 across
10 under

## Unit 77

**1** 1 ✗ ... and it's also near the park.
2 ✗ ... and he understands Greek too.
3 ✓
4 ✗ ... and also washed the car.
5 ✓
6 ✗ ... and a park near the house as well.

**2** 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.
2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.
4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.

**3** *Your own answers*

**4** 1 because of
2 to
3 because
4 so
5 to
6 so

**5** 1 to
2 so
3 because of
4 because
5 so
6 to
7 because of
8 to

## Unit 78

**1** 1 sure
2 not sure
3 not sure
4 sure
5 sure
6 not sure

**2** 1 If
2 When
3 if
4 when
5 when
6 If

**3** 1 when
2 when
3 while/when
4 when
5 while/when
6 when

**4** 1 Then
2 Afterwards/After that
3 Finally
4 First/First of all/Firstly
5 then/after that/afterwards

**5** 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.
2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome.
4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**6** *Answers from a Greek person*
First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

## Unit 79

**1** 1 She's got blue eyes.
2 They've got a small dog.
3 I haven't got a mobile phone.
4 He hasn't got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?

**2** 1 Has she got any children? OR Does she have any children?
2 They've got a lovely garden. OR They have a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair? OR Does she have long hair?
4 My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. OR My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer? OR Do you have a computer?
6 We haven't got any friends here. OR We don't have any friends here.

**3** 1 got
2 Do
3 Have
4 Have
5 Do

**4** *Answers from a British person*
1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, an Apple.
3 Yes, his name's Barney.
4 Yes, I've got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
5 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

**5**

| Group 1 | Group 2 | Group 3 | Group 4 | Group 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| rest | breakfast | bath | swim | holiday |
| break | lunch | shower | run | weekend |
| | dinner | wash | walk | journey |

**6** 1 walk
2 drink
3 dinner
4 swim
5 rest
6 journey

**7** 1 eat/drink
2 rest/break
3 break
4 journey
5 time/day
6 weekend
7 holiday/time
8 bath

## Unit 80

**1** 1 Did you get my message?
2 I must get some new clothes.
3 We got home late last night.
4 It's getting cold.
5 I got three letters today.
6 Where did you get that bag?
7 He needs to get a job.
8 Do you want to get a/the train?

**2** 1 receive
2 buy
3 arrive
4 become
5 receive
6 buy
7 obtain
8 travel

**3** 1 get a/the bus
2 get here/home/back
3 get them
4 getting cold
5 getting late
6 get it
7 get one
8 get a bus/taxi



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Review answer key

## Basic English

### Unit 1

1 twelve
2 fifteen
3 thirteen
4 thirty-four
5 eleven
6 seventy-nine
7 a/one hundred and twelve
8 twenty-seven
9 a/one hundred and seventy-five
10 two hundred and eighty-six
11 forty-one
12 nine hundred and fifty-three

### Unit 2

1 twenty to two, five to two
2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
5 five to nine, ten past nine
6 half past six, quarter to seven
7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

### Unit 3

**1**
1 date, of
2 month, year
3 season
4 birthday
5 Year's Day

**2**
1 March
2 autumn
3 Thursday
4 May
5 Saturday
6 July
7 September
8 November

### Unit 4

**1**
1 Italy C
2 Hungary C
3 Mexico C
4 Swiss N
5 China C
6 Czech N
7 Egypt C
8 Spanish N
9 Brazil C
10 Turkey C
11 Greek N
12 French N
13 Germany C
14 Russia C
15 Argentinian N
16 Portugal C

**2**
1 Poland
2 Brazilian
3 Czech Republic
4 Czech
5 Polish
6 Japanese
7 Korean
8 Turkish
9 Italian
10 Chinese
11 Spain
12 Australian

### Unit 5

1 board
2 rubber
3 noticeboard
4 dictionary
5 pencil sharpener
6 notebook
7 CD player
8 chair
9 table/desk
10 folder

### Unit 6

1 sentence
2 adverb
3 preposition
4 phrase
5 regular
6 article
7 pronoun
8 word
9 adjective
10 singular
11 irregular
12 plural

### Unit 7

1 Wrong.
2 *Spelling* is how you write something, and *pronunciation* is how you say something.
3 *Your own answer.*
4 /ɪk'splen/
5 It's the opposite of *right* or *correct*.
6 No, that's wrong.
7 A frying pan.
8 S-T-A-M-P.

## People

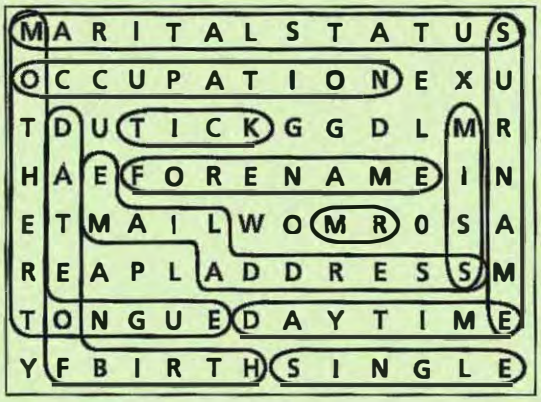
### Unit 8

1 name
2 you come
3 from
4 exactly
5 I have
6 postcode
7 do
8 'm/am
9 are you
10 how old



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 9




## Unit 10

1

2 1 My brother is eighteen years old.
2 I was born in 1990.
3 My sister is younger than me.
4 His parents are divorced.
5 There are five of us in my family.
6 She is older than her brother.
7 We spend a lot of time together.
8 Who is the youngest in the family?

## Unit 11

1 Using your hands: push, pick something up, hold, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down
Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb

2 1 door
2 a wall
3 a radio
4 a bicycle
5 a bicyde
6 a bag
7 a pencil
8 a tree
9 a book
10 a bed

## Unit 12

1 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 B 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A

2 1 arm
2 neck
3 hand
4 foot
5 bottom
6 nose

## Unit 13

1 *Possible answers*
1 He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middle-aged.
2 She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/young person.
3 He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
4 She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.

2 2 a child
3 a teenager
4 in your mid-twenties
5 in your early thirties
6 in your late thirties
7 middle-aged
8 in your early sixties
9 elderly

## Unit 14

1 Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable
Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible
Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

2 1 lazy
2 shy
3 shared
4 fun
5 intelligent
6 on my own
7 funny
8 organized

## Unit 15

1 1 went
2 married
3 relationship
4 get
5 had
6 together
7 up
8 get
9 couple

2 1 get
2 become
3 is
4 see
5 give
6 become
7 get
8 is

## Unit 16

1 1 excited
2 hungry
3 surprised
4 embarrassed
5 worried
6 tired
7 scared
8 nervous
9 matter
10 thirsty

2 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N 9 N 10 P



www.hellooteacher.ir

# Everyday life

## Unit 17

**1** 1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
6 I talk to my parents every evening.
7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
8 What time do you get to work in the morning?

**2** 1 j 2 i 3 e 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 k 10 g

## Unit 18

**1** 1 socks
2 hat
3 gloves
4 boots
5 watch
6 tie
7 jumper
8 tights
9 T-shirt
10 belt

**2** 1 yellow
2 green
3 purple
4 pink
5 brown
6 red
7 orange
8 grey
9 pale/light blue
10 dark blue

**3** 1 a scarf
2 a pair of jeans OR some jeans
3 some ties
4 a pair of trousers OR some trousers
5 some shirts
6 a jacket
7 a pair of trainers OR some trainers
8 a pair of sandals OR some sandals

## Unit 19

**1** 1 take
2 loose
3 cheap
4 size
5 try
6 changing
7 pay
8 horrible
9 cash desk
10 medium
11 help
12 wrong
13 casual
14 assistant
15 leave
16 need

**2** 1 looking
2 take
3 nice
4 on
5 room
6 look
7 too
8 size
9 lovely/nice
10 them
11 pay
12 cash

## Unit 20

**1** 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

**2** 1 Lottery
2 sold
3 bought
4 cost
5 price
6 saved
7 paid
8 in
9 earn
10 paid
11 bills
12 fare

## Unit 21

**1** 1 a bit
2 a lot of
3 a lot
4 a bit of
5 a bit
6 a lot of

**2**

| Across | Down |
|---|---|
| 2 blows | 1 lot |
| 5 ice | 3 storm |
| 8 humid | 4 windy |
| 9 snow | 6 shower |
| 11 freezing | 7 thunder |
| 12 heavy | 10 shines |
| 13 dry | 11 foggy |

## Unit 22

**1**

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| T | M | X | E | A | R | Z | H | O | S |
| B | A | C | K | A | C | H | E | J | O |
| Q | S | O | I | D | O | Y | A | M | R |
| R | I | F | L | U | L | Y | D | Z | E |
| U | C | J | A | H | D | E | A | K | T |
| I | K | W | E | S | B | I | C | R | H |
| T | O | O | T | H | A | C | H | E | R |
| A | S | V | E | C | E | G | E | L | O |
| F | H | U | R | T | S | D | E | M | A |
| R | S | K | E | V | W | E | L | L | T |

1 I've got a **headache.**
2 I've got a **sore throat.**
3 I've got **toothache.**
4 I've got **backache.**
5 I've got **flu.**
6 I feel **sick.**
7 I don't feel **well.**
8 My arm **hurts.**
9 I've got a pain in my ear.

## Unit 23

1 something
2 Try/Take
3 tablets
4 often
5 take
6 Take
7 could
8 box
9 medicine



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Food and drink

### Unit 24

Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow
Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham
Fish: tuna, salmon
Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

### Unit 25

1 *Possible answers*
red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli, strawberry
yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon
orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango
white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower
green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette

### Unit 26

1 *Possible answers*
Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter
Carton: orange juice, milk
Box: eggs, matches, chocolates
Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine
Jar: jam, olives
Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 *Possible answers*
1 Could I have some sugar, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any sugar?
4 Anything else?
5 That's it, thanks.
6 How much (sugar) would you like?

### Unit 27

1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.
2 W Is that to eat here or take away?
3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.
4 W Fine. Anything else?
5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.
6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.
7 W Have a seat.

### Unit 28

1 1 fork, spoon
2 main course, dessert
3 fried OR roast OR boiled
4 medium, well done
5 pepper
6 vinegar
7 white
8 sparkling

2 1 W Are you ready to **order**?
C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.
W Right. And for your **main** course?
C Fillet **steak** with chips.
2 W Do you want red wine or **white** wine?
C Red **wine**, please.
W OK. Is that a **bottle** or just a glass?
3 At the end of the meal.
C Could I have the **bill**, please?
W Yes, of **course**.

## Getting around

### Unit 29

1 **Does** this bus go to The National Museum?
2 How many **stops** is it to the railway station?
3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4 How long does it take to get to the centre?
5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?
6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?
7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8 Do the buses run **every** ten minutes?
9 How long does it take to the centre?
10 How often do the buses run?

### Unit 30

1 1 platform
2 fast
3 miss
4 reserve
5 timetable
6 journey
7 carriage
8 ticket
9 fare

The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 1 next train
2 direct
3 change
4 leave
5 get to
6 platform

### Unit 31

1 1 The bank is on the right.
2 How do I get to the river?
3 Go along here and turn left.
4 Go straight **on** and turn right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Yes, it's **on** the corner of this street.



www.hellooteacher.ir

**2** 1 The bank is opposite ~~of~~ the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep ~~to~~ going.
3 Is there a post office near ~~from~~ here?
4 It's on ~~the~~ your left. OR It's on the ~~your~~ left.
5 Turn ~~to~~ left and go straight on.
6 It's the third turning on the right ~~side~~.

### Unit 32

**1** 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F 10 T

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | motorway | 5 | lane |
| 2 | speed limit | 6 | traffic jams |
| 3 | overtake | 7 | rush hour |
| 4 | accident | 8 | take |

### Unit 33

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 'no parking' | 5 | 'sale' |
| 2 | 'entrance' OR 'way in' | 6 | out of order |
| 3 | 'no vacancies' | 7 | 'no exit' |
| 4 | 'please do not disturb' | 8 | 'no smoking' |

## Places

### Unit 34

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | north | 6 | capital |
| 2 | south | 7 | river |
| 3 | coast; coast | 8 | mountain |
| 4 | enormous | 9 | beach |
| 5 | border | 10 | famous |

### Unit 35

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | a modern city | 5 | there's nothing to do |
| 2 | over a million | 6 | a quiet street |
| 3 | north-east | 7 | clean |
| 4 | dangerous | 8 | fact |

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | of | 7 | on |
| 2 | population | 8 | famous |
| 3 | historic | 9 | Statue |
| 4 | palace | 10 | Square |
| 5 | place | 11 | Park |
| 6 | city | 12 | cosmopolitan |

### Unit 36

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | valley | 5 | grass |
| 2 | healthy | 6 | path |
| 3 | boat | 7 | lake |
| 4 | farmer | 8 | alone |

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | horse | 4 | lonely |
| 2 | grow | 5 | own |
| 3 | crops | 6 | countryside |

### Unit 37

**1**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | shopping centre |
| 2 | newsagent's |
| 3 | chemist's |
| 4 | hypermarket, supermarket |
| 5 | baker's |
| 6 | bookshop |
| 7 | butcher's |
| 8 | department store |
| 9 | music shop |

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | queue | 6 | stalls |
| 2 | shopping | 7 | indoors |
| 3 | convenient | 8 | basket |
| 4 | prefer | 9 | get |
| 5 | market | 10 | checkout |

The word in the grey squares is 'supermarket'.

### Unit 38

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | bathroom | 5 | garage |
| 2 | kitchen | 6 | lift |
| 3 | bedroom | 7 | garden |
| 4 | study | 8 | home |

**2** 1 f 2 b 3 a 4 g 5 i 6 h 7 c 8 e

### Unit 39

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | dishwasher, sink | 5 | cupboard |
| 2 | washing machine | 6 | fridge |
| 3 | bin | 7 | freezer |
| 4 | microwave | 8 | oven |

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | put | 4 | Do, empty |
| 2 | Put, turn | 5 | cook |
| 3 | turn, out | | |

### Unit 40

**1** 8edroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
8athroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet

**2**
1 put on OR take off, make-up OR tissues
2 have, a razor OR an electric razor
3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
4 do OR brush, a brush OR a comb
5 have, soap



www.hellooteacher.ir

### Unit 41

**1** 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

## Study and work

### Unit 42

**1** 1 biology
2 history
3 literature
4 physics
5 maths/music
6 art
7 geography
8 chemistry
9 design and technology
10 modern languages

**2** 1 j 2 a 3 g 4 e 5 i 6 b 7 f 8 h 9 d

**3** 1 badly
2 failed
3 state
4 terrible/bad
5 nursery
6 best

### Unit 43

**1** 1 science
2 lasts
3 terms
4 do/write
5 again
6 degree
7 research
8 PhD OR Doctor of Philosophy

**2** People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician
Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics
Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

### Unit 44

*Possible answers*
1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
4 retired, unemployed
5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
6 a businessman, a businesswoman

### Unit 45

**1** 1 j 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 c 6 i 7 e 8 d 9 f

**2** 1 in
2 time
3 a
4 spend
5 earn/get
6 colleagues

### Unit 46

**1** 1 laptop
2 keyboard
3 mouse mat
4 memory stick
5 backup copy
6 hard drive
7 printout
8 webcam

**2** 1 copy
2 screen
3 cut
4 mouse
5 save
6 print
7 paste
The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

### Unit 47

**1** chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail

**2** 1 attachment
2 message
3 online
4 delete
5 fast
6 send
7 broadband
8 internet
9 receive
10 use
11 visit

## Hobbies and interests

### Unit 48

**1** 1 I love it, It's my favourite thing, It's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
2 I quite enjoy it, It's quite enjoyable
3 I think it's OK
4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
5 I really hate it

**2** 1 interested
2 on
3 driving
4 to
5 boring
6 quite likes


www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 49

**1** 1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
3 football, rugby, ice hockey. volleyball, basketball
4 a) tennis b) ice hockey

**2** 1 matches
2 drew
3 lost
4 scored
5 goals
6 top

## Unit 50

**1** 1 favourite, go
2 does
3 repairs
4 instrument
5 classical
6 do, spend

**2** 1 spending
2 going
3 games
4 play
5 arranging

## Unit 51

**1** Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar
Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello

**2** *Possible answers*
1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
7 'Beautiful liar' by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

## Unit 52

**1** 1 war, violent
2 comedy, funny
3 horror, frightening
4 thriller, exciting
5 love, romantic

**2** 1 about
2 in
3 stars
4 actor
5 reviews
6 director
7 see

## Unit 53

**1** I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

**2** 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 a

# Holidays

## Unit 54

**1** 1 arrange
2 currency
3 hire
4 go abroad
5 holiday
6 book
7 pack
8 flight
9 accommodation

## Unit 55

**1** 1 h 2 a 3 d 4 j 5 g 6 f 7 i 8 k 9 b 10 c

**2** 1 stayed
2 suite
3 facilities
4 staff
5 delicious
6 night
7 parking
8 book

## Unit 56

**1** 1 i 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 b 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 c

**2** 1 trolley
2 ticket
3 scales
4 flight
5 delayed
6 got
7 fastened
8 landed
9 collected
10 went/walked

## Unit 57

**1** ... We flew to Marseille ...
**2** ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
**3** ... holiday resort by the sea ...
**4** ... We rented an apartment ...
**5** ... we went for a walk ...
**6** ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
**7** ... an hour or so ...
**8** ... was perfect for the whole week ...

## Unit 58

**1** We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
**2** Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
**3** We always get lost in a new place.
**4** She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
**5** Did you visit the museum? (NOT ~~at the museum~~)
**6** There were lots of typical tourists.
**7** There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
**8** Have you got a guidebook about London, please?



www.hellooteacher.ir

### Unit 59

**1** 1 post office
2 postcode
3 postman/ postwoman
4 postbox
5 postcards
6 put, put
7 per cent
8 parcel
9 currency
10 cash machine
11 change
12 commission
13 charge, charge

**2** 1 send
2 envelope/letter/parcel
3 deliver
4 exchange rate
5 into
6 bureau, change

## Social English

### Unit 60

**1** 1 5 2 D 3 5 4 D 5 5 6 5 7 5 8 5 9 D 10 5

**2** 1 hope to see you again
2 how are you?
3 not bad
4 how do you do?
5 shake hands
6 see you soon
7 nice to meet you
8 hi there
9 see you later

### Unit 61

1 happy birthday
2 have a good weekend
3 congratulations
4 good luck
5 well done
6 welcome home
7 have a good holiday
8 Happy New Year

### Unit 62

**1** 1 How many?
2 Why?
3 How far?
4 How often?
5 Where?
6 How long?
7 Whose?
8 Which?
9 Who?

**2** 1 How
2 do
3 does
4 often
5 long
6 kind of

**3** *Answers from a South Korean person*
▶ I have a problem with speaking fluently and pronunciation.
1 I've got one brother.
2 I work at a travel agency.
3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.
4 More than ten hours a week.
5 For ten years.
6 I don't like playing games, but I like watching football.

### Unit 63

**1** 1 you, I
2 I, I
3 you
4 you
5 I
6 I
7 I
8 you
9 you

**2** no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

### Unit 64

**1** A Would you **like** to have lunch tomorrow? OR Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?
B I'm afraid ~~but~~ I can't. OR I'm **sorry** but I can't.

**2** A **Would** you like to go skiing this weekend? OR Do you **want** to go skiing this weekend?
B Yes, that **sounds** fun! OR That **would be** fun.

**3** A Would you like to **come** round here for a drink tonight?
B Yes, **I'd** love to, but I'm busy.

**4** A Do you want **to** come round for a meal at the weekend?
B **I'm** sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

### Unit 65

1 shall
2 maybe
3 could
4 sure
5 about
6 idea
7 Let

### Unit 66

1 Would you **like** a sandwich? Do you **want** a drink? OR **Do** you want a sandwich? **Would** you like a drink?
2 Do you **need a hand**? Do you want some **help**? OR Do you need **some** help? Do you want **a hand**?
3 No, I'm **fine**, thanks. No, don't **worry**.
4 Thanks a **lot**. Thank you **very** much.
5 Let me pay for the coffees. **Shall** I do that for you?
6 That's **very** kind of you. Thank you very **much**.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 67

*Possible answers*

1 A I'm sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
B Never mind. OR It doesn't matter. OR Don't worry.
2 A I'm sorry I'm late.
B That's OK. OR Don't worry.
3 A I'm really sorry, I've broken a cup.
B That's OK. OR It doesn't matter.
4 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
B Sure, no problem.

## Unit 68

1 opinion
2 excellent
3 disagree
4 prefer
5 personally
6 a waste of

## Unit 69

**1** 1 ring/call, at the moment
2 speaking
3 ring/phone
4 just a moment
5 sent me a text

**2** 1 B Is that Cheryl?
2 A Yes, speaking.
3 B Hi. It's Keira.
4 A Hello, Keira. How are you?
5 B I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
6 A Yes. Just a moment - I'll get her.
7 B Thanks.

# Language

## Unit 70

**1** 1 narrow
2 dead
3 noisy
4 rich
5 asleep

**2** 1 helpful
2 common
3 useless
4 strange
5 noisy
6 unnecessary
7 clear
8 annoying

The word in grey is 'necessary'.

## Unit 71

**1** 1 We couldn't play the match with **only** ten players.
2 He lives in Italy, but **still** speaks English most of the time.
3 The food is **absolutely** fantastic in that restaurant.
4 Max didn't like the film but **I** thought it was **quite** good.
5 The last film was good, but this is **even** better.
6 My English is getting **a bit** better.

**2** *Possible answers*

1 winter
2 awful
3 slow
4 16
5 tired
6 nice

## Unit 72

| Across | Down |
|---|---|
| 1 been | 1 went |
| 4 read | 2 seen |
| 6 took | 3 bought |
| 9 put | 5 done |
| 11 found | 7 known |
| 13 slept | 8 ran |
| 14 sent | 10 thought |
| 15 forgot | 12 left |
| | 13 sat |
| | 14 spent |

## Unit 73

**1** 1 I grew up in a village.
2 Why don't you sit down?
3 I must find out their address.
4 She fell over in the street.
5 Did you go out last night?
6 Could you turn on the light? OR Could you turn the light on?
7 Look it up in your dictionary.
8 Could I try them on?

**2** 1 gave up
2 going up
3 go back
4 take off
5 get on (well)
6 carry on

## Unit 74

In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century
At: three o'clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight
On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

## Unit 75

**1** 1 last week
2 two days ago
3 yesterday afternoon
4 last night
5 this evening
6 tomorrow morning
7 tomorrow evening
8 next Monday
9 in ten days' time

**2** 1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I **found an apartment** OR **found somewhere to live**.
2 I met a Spanish man after I **got a job in (the south of) Portugal**.
3 I've lived in the house I bought since I **got married**.
4 I've lived in Portugal for **five years**.
5 Soon I'm going to **have a baby**.
6 At the moment we're **preparing a room for the baby**.



www.hellooteacher.ir

## Unit 76

**1** 1 over
2 past
3 near
4 above
5 down
6 across
7 next to
8 into
9 out of
10 opposite
11 between
12 through

**2** 1 near, above, next to, opposite
2 past, across, into, out of, through
('near' and 'next to' are also possible)

**3** In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom
At: school, home, a football match, work
On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

## Unit 77

**1** 1 g 2 i 3 e 4 h 5 f 6 d 7 a 8 b

**2** 1 because of
2 to
3 also
4 because
5 so
6 as well

## Unit 78

**1** 1 When you're travelling on a long flight, always wear comfortable clothes.
2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it's quiet.
3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
4 When you get off, don't leave anything on the plane.
5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.

**2** 1 first of all
2 while
3 Then OR After that
4 After that or Then
5 finally
6 if

## Unit 79

**1** 1 have
2 a
3 Did you have
4 Have
5 didn't
6 time
7 a rest
8 was, had

**2** 1 We had a **break** for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
2 We had something **to** eat at the beach.
3 My sister**'s/has** got blonde hair.
4 I was hot, so I had a **shower/bath** before dinner.
5 We had a **terrible/bad** day at work. I hate my job!
6 Have a lovely **holiday/time** in the Caribbean!
7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't **have** any money.
8 On Sunday, we just had a **rest** and did nothing.

## Unit 80

**1** arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8, receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5

**2** *Answers from a Hungarian person*
1 No, I'm happy in my current job.
2 Yes, I get very tired when it's hot.
3 I get about one or two messages a day.
4 No.
5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
8 I got home at about ten o'clock last night.


www.hellooteacher.ir

# Spotlight boxes


| Unit | Title of spotlight box | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | *about* | 14 |
| 3A | Capital letters | 16 |
| 3B | Saying and writing dates | 17 |
| 4 | People from a country | 18 |
| 8 | *information* | 26 |
| 10B | *How old are you?* | 29 |
| 11A | Irregular verbs | 30 |
| 13A | *thin, fat, ugly* | 33 |
| 13C | Other phrases for age | 35 |
| 14A | *What's ... like?* | 36 |
| 14B | *really* | 37 |
| 15A | *relationship* | 38 |
| 15B | *each other* | 39 |
| 16B | *get* + adjective | 41 |
| 17A | *usually* and *normally* | 46 |
| 17C | *every* and *all* | 48 |
| 18A | *wear* | 49 |
| 18C | Plural nouns | 50 |
| 19B | *too* and *very* | 52 |
| 19C | *I'll take it/I'll leave it* | 53 |
| 20A | Money | 54 |
| 21A | *a lot (of)/a bit (of)* | 56 |
| 22A | *be ill/sick* | 58 |
| 22B | *should* + verb | 59 |
| 23 | Asking for things in a chemist's | 60 |
| 24 | *pig* | 65 |
| 25B | *salad* | 67 |
| 26A | Uncountable nouns | 68 |
| 26B | *tin* and *can* | 69 |
| 26C | *how much* and *how many* | 70 |
| 27 | *Yes, please?* and *Yes, please.* | 71 |
| 28C | *another* or *some more* | 74 |
| 29 | *How long does it take?* | 78 |
| 30A | *last* | 80 |
| 30B | *book something in advance* | 81 |
| 31 | *Excuse me ...* | 82 |
| 35A | *place* | 91 |
| 36B | *alone* and *lonely* | 95 |
| 37A | Noun + *shop* | 96 |
| 38B | *flat, house* and *home* | 99 |
| 39B | *do* + noun | 101 |
| 40B | *have* + noun | 103 |
| 42A | *be good at something* | 109 |
| 42B | *at (the age of) ...* | 110 |
| 42C | *exam (examination)* | 111 |
| 43A | *How long does it last?* | 112 |
| 44 | *a/an* with jobs | 114 |
| 45B | *Spend time doing something* | 117 |
| 46A | *keep* | 118 |
| 48A | *like/love/hate* + *-ing* | 126 |
| 48B | *interesting/interested* | 127 |
| 49B | Irregular verbs | 129 |
| 51B | *by* | 133 |
| 52A | *What kind of ...?* | 134 |
| 53B | *watch, see, listen, hear* | 137 |
| 54 | *might* + verb | 141 |
| 55B | *That's a shame/What a shame* | 143 |
| 58 | *should* + verb | 147 |
| 60A | Introductions | 153 |
| 60B | *See you ...* | 154 |
| 61 | *cheers* | 155 |
| 62A | *whose* and *belong to* | 156 |
| 62B | *which* or *what?* | 157 |
| 63A | Being polite | 158 |
| 63B | *lend* and *borrow* | 159 |
| 64 | *Would you like to ...* or *Do you want to ...?* | 160 |
| 65 | Saying *no* | 161 |
| 66A | Saying *thank you* | 162 |
| 66B | *let me* + verb | 163 |
| 67 | *(I'm) sorry* | 164 |
| 69A | Saying phone numbers | 166 |
| 70A | Position of adjectives | 172 |
| 71B | Gradable and ungradable adjectives | 175 |
| 72B | *ever* | 177 |
| 73A | Phrasal verbs | 178 |
| 74 | *at* | 180 |
| 75B | *for* and *since* | 182 |
| 79A | *have* and *have got* | 190 |
| 80 | *get* | 192 |




www.hellooteacher.ir

# Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.


a.m. /eɪ 'em/ 2
ATM /eɪ tiː 'em/ 59
able /'eɪbl/ 51
about (= approximately) /ə'baʊt/ 1
about (= the subject is) /ə'baʊt/ 52
above /ə'bʌv/ 76
abroad /ə'brɔːd/ 54
absolutely /'æbsəluːtli/ 71
accept /ək'sept/ 66
access *as in* internet access /'ækses/ 55
accessories /ək'sesəriz/ 18
accident /'æksɪdənt/ 29
accommodation /əkɒmə'deɪʃn/ 54
account *as in* bank account /ə'kaʊnt/ 20
across /ə'krɒs/ 76
action /'ækʃn/ 52
actor /'æktə(r)/ 52
actress /'æktrəs/ 52
address /ə'dres/ 8, 9, 47, 59
adjective /'ædʒɪktɪv/ 6
adult /'ædʌlt/ 13
advance *as in* in advance /əd'vɑːns/ 30
adverb /'ædvɜːb/ 6
advert /'ædvɜːt/ 53
advertisement /əd'vɜːtɪsmənt/ 53
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 15
afraid *as in* I'm afraid /ə'freɪd/ 63, 64
afraid *as in* I'm afraid not /ə'freɪd/ 55
Africa /'æfrɪkə/ 4
after /'ɑːftə(r)/ 2, 75
after that /'ɑːftə ðæt/ 78
afternoon /ɑːftə'nuːn/ 2, 60
afterwards /'ɑːftəwədz/ 78
again /ə'gen/ 43, 60
against /ə'genst/ 49
ago /ə'gəʊ/ 75
agree, agree with someone /ə'griː/ 68
ahead *as in* go ahead /ə'hed/ 63
air conditioning /'eə kəndɪʃənɪŋ/ 55
airline /'eəlaɪn/ 45
airport /'eəpɔːt/ 56
aisle seat /'aɪl siːt/ 56
album /'ælbəm/ 51
alive /ə'laɪv/ 70
all /ɔːl/ 17, 53
all *as in* first of all /ɔːl/ 78
all *as in* that's all /ɔːl/ 26
all right /ɔːl 'raɪt/ 63, 67
almost /'ɔːlməʊst/ 2
alone /ə'ləʊn/ 36
along /ə'lɒŋ/ 31, 76
also /'ɔːlsəʊ/ 77
altogether /ɔːltə'geðə(r)/ 20
always /'ɔːlweɪz/ 17
American /ə'merɪkən/ 4
and /ænd, ənd/ 77
and *as in* and you /ænd, ənd/ 61
angry /'æŋgri/ 16
animal /'ænɪml/ 24
ankle /'æŋkl/ 12
annoying /ə'nɔɪɪŋ/ 70
another /ə'nʌðə(r)/ 28
answer the phone /ɑːnsə ðə 'fəʊn/ 45
antiseptic /ænti'septɪk/ 23
anything else? /eniθɪŋ 'els/ 26
apartment /ə'pɑːtmənt/ 57
apologize /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ 67
apple /'æpl/ 25
appointment /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 75
Arabic /'ærəbɪk/ 4
architect /'ɑːkɪtekt/ 43
architecture /'ɑːkɪtektʃə(r)/ 43
area /'eəriə/ 4, 36, 69
Argentina /ɑːdʒən'tiːnə/ 4
Argentinian /ɑːdʒən'tɪniən/ 4
arm /ɑːm/ 12
armchair /'ɑːmtʃeə(r)/ 41
arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/ 54
arranging *as in* flower arranging /ə'reɪndʒɪŋ/ 50
art /ɑːt/ 42
art gallery /ɑːt gæləri/ 58
article /'ɑːtɪkl/ 53
article *as in* (in)definite article /'ɑːtɪkl/ 7
as well /əz 'wel/ 77
Asia /'eɪʒə/ 4
asleep /ə'sliːp/ 70
at *as in* be good at /æt, ət/ 42
at (= place) /æt, ət/ 76
at (= time) /æt, ət/ 2, 74
attachment /ə'tætʃmənt/ 47
attractive /ə'træktɪv/ 13
aubergine /'əʊbəʒiːn/ 25
aunt /ɑːnt/ 10
Australasia /ɒstrə'leɪʒə/ 4
Australia /ɒ'streɪliə/ 4
Australian /ɒ'streɪliən/ 4
autumn /'ɔːtəm/ 3
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ 13




www.hellooteacher.ir

avocado /ævə'kɑːdəʊ/ 25
awake /ə'weɪk/ 70
awful /'ɔːfl/ 19

BA (Bachelor of Arts)
/biː 'eɪ (bætʃələr əv 'ɑːts)/ 43
BSc (Bachelor of Science)
/biː es 'siː (bætʃələr əv 'saɪəns)/ 43
baby /'beɪbi/ 13, 15
back /bæk/ 12
backache /'bækeɪk/ 22
backup /'bækʌp/ 46
bacon /'beɪkən/ 24
bad *as in* not bad /bæd/ 60
badly *as in* do badly /'bædli/ 42
bag /bæg/ 5, 56
baggage /'bægɪdʒ/ 56
baguette /bæ'get/ 27
baker's /'beɪkəz/ 37
balcony /'bælkəni/ 38
ball /bɔːl/ 49
banana /bə'nɑːnə/ 25
band /bænd/ 51
bank account /'bæŋk əkaʊnt/ 20
bar /bɑː(r)/ 26
basement /'beɪsmənt/ 38
basket /'bɑːskɪt/ 37
basket (used in basketball) /'bɑːskɪt/ 49
basketball /'bɑːskɪtbɔːl/ 49
bath /bɑːθ/ 40, 79
bathroom /'bɑːθruːm/ 38
battery /'bæt(ə)ri/ 69
be /biː, bi/ 16
beach /biːtʃ/ 34, 57
beans /biːnz/ 25
beard /bɪəd/ 13
beat /biːt/ 49
beautiful /'bjuːtɪfl/ 13
because /bɪ'kɒz, -kəz/ 77
because of /bɪ'kɒz, -kəz əv/ 77
become /bɪ'kʌm/ 15
bed /bed/ 17, 22
bed *as in* single bed /bed/ 40
bedroom /'bedruːm/ 38
bedside table /bedsaɪd 'teɪbl/ 40
beef /biːf/ 24
before /bɪ'fɔː(r)/ 75
beginning /bɪ'gɪnɪŋ/ 46
behind /bɪ'haɪnd/ 76
believe /bɪ'liːv/ 53
bell /bel/ 33
belong /bɪ'lɒŋ/ 62
below /bɪ'ləʊ/ 76
belt /belt/ 18
belt *as in* seat belt /belt/ 56
best /best/ 42
best friend /best 'frend/ 15
between /bɪ'twiːn/ 7
between /bɪ'twiːn/ 76
bicycle /'baɪsɪkl/ 36
bidet /'biːdeɪ/ 40
big /bɪg/ 19
bike /baɪk/ 36
bill /bɪl/ 20, 28
bin *as in* rubbish bin /bɪn/ 39
biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ 42
bird /bɜːd/ 36
birth *as in* date of birth /bɜːθ/ 9
birthday /'bɜːθdeɪ/ 3, 61
biscuits /'bɪskɪts/ 26
bit *as in* a bit, a bit of /bɪt/ 21
bitter /'bɪtə(r)/ 25
black /blæk/ 13, 18
black coffee /blæk 'kɒfi/ 27
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ 40
block of flats /blɒk əv 'flæts/ 38
blonde /blɒnd/ 13
blow /bləʊ/ 21
blue /bluː/ 18
board *n* /bɔːd/ 5
board pen /'bɔːd pen/ 5
boarding /'bɔːdɪŋ/ 56
boarding card /'bɔːdɪŋ kɑːd/ 56
boat /bəʊt/ 36
boiled /bɔɪld/ 28
boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ 16
book *v* /bʊk/ 30, 54, 55
bookshelf /'bʊkʃelf/ 41
boots /buːts/ 18
border /'bɔːdə(r)/ 34
boring /'bɔːrɪŋ/ 48
born *as in* be born /bɔːn/ 10
borrow /'bɒrəʊ/ 63
boss /bɒs/ 44
bottle /'bɒtl/ 26, 28
bottom (= part of the body) /'bɒtəm/ 12
bottom (= the lowest part) /'bɒtəm/ 59
bowl /bəʊl/ 28
box /bɒks/ 26
box *as in* letter box /bɒks/ 59
boyfriend /'bɔɪfrend/ 10, 15
Brazil /brə'zɪl/ 4
Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/ 4
bread /bred/ 26, 27
break *v* /breɪk/ 11, 67
break *n* /breɪk/ 79
breakfast /'brekfəst/ 17, 79
breeze /briːz/ 21
bridge /brɪdʒ/ 35
bring /brɪŋ/ 63
Britain /'brɪtn/ 4
broadband /'brɔːdbænd/ 47


www.hellooteacher.ir

brother /'brʌðə(r)/ 10
brother-in-law /'brʌðər ɪn lɔ:/ 10
brown /braʊn/ 13, 18, 27
brush /brʌʃ/ 40
builder /'bɪldə(r)/ 44
building /'bɪldɪŋ/ 35, 45
bureau de change /bjʊərəʊ də 'ʃɑ:nʒ/ 59
bus /bʌs/ 29
bus driver /'bʌs draɪvə(r)/ 44
bus stop /'bʌs stɒp/ 29
business studies /'bɪznəs stʌdiz/ 43
businessman /'bɪznəsmən/ 43, 44
businesswoman /'bɪznəswʊmən/ 43, 44
busy (= a lot of things happening) /'bɪzi/ 32, 35
busy (= a lot of things to do) /'bɪzi/ 64
busy (= engaged) /'bɪzi/ 69
but /bʌt, bət/ 77
butcher's /'bʊtʃəz/ 37
butter /'bʌtə(r)/ 26
buy /baɪ/ 20
by /baɪ/ 51
bye bye, bye /'baɪ baɪ, baɪ/ 60

CD /si: 'di:/ 5
CD player /si: 'di: pleɪə(r)/ 5
cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ 25
cake /keɪk/ 26
call *as in* last call /kɔ:l/ 56
call *v* /kɔ:l/ 69
call someone back /kɔl sʌmwʌn 'bæk/ 69
called /kɔ:ld/ 7
camera *as in* speed camera /'kæmərə/ 69
camping /'kæmpɪŋ/ 50
can *v* (= be able to) /kæn, kən/ 19, 66
can *n* (= container) /kæn/ 26
can *v* (= permission) /kæn, kən/ 63
can *v* (= request) /kæn, kən/ 59, 63, 69
Canada /'kænədə/ 4
Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/ 4
Cantonese /kæntə'ni:z/ 4
capital /'kæpɪtl/ 34
cappuccino /kæpə'tʃi:nəʊ/ 27
car park /'kɑ: pɑ:k/ 32
card *as in* boarding card /kɑ:d/ 56
card *as in* credit card /kɑ:d/ 19
card *as in* debit card /kɑ:d/ 20
cards /kɑ:dz/ 50
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ 41
carriage /'kærɪdʒ/ 30
carrot /'kærət/ 25
carry /'kæri/ 11
carry on (with something)
/kæri 'ɒn (wɪð sʌmθɪŋ)/ 73
carton /'kɑ:tn/ 26
cartoon /kɑ:'tu:n/ 52
cash *n* /kæʃ/ 20
cash desk /'kæʃ desk/ 19
cash machine /'kæʃ məʃi:n/ 59
cassette player /kə'set pleɪə(r)/ 5
castle /'kɑ:sl/ 35
casual /'kæʒuəl/ 19
catch /kætʃ/ 30
cathedral /kə'θi:drəl/ 35
cauliflower /'kɒlɪflaʊə(r)/ 25
ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/ 41
celebrity /sə'lebrəti/ 53
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 51
cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 51
Central America /sentrəl ə'merɪkə/ 4
central heating /sentrəl 'hi:tɪŋ/ 55
centre *as in* shopping centre /'sentə(r)/ 37
centre *as in* town centre /'sentə(r)/ 38
century /'sentʃəri/ 74
certainly /'sɜ:tnli/ 28
chair /tʃeə(r)/ 5
change *n* /tʃeɪndʒ/ 20
change *v* /tʃeɪndʒ/ 30, 59
change places /tʃeɪndʒ 'pleɪsɪz/ 63
changeable /'tʃeɪndʒəbl/ 21
changing room /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m/ 19
charge /tʃɑ:dʒ/ 59
chart *as in* singles chart /tʃɑ:t/ 51
chat /tʃæt/ 47
chatroom /'tʃætru:m/ 47
cheap /tʃi:p/ 19
check *as in* check your emails /tʃek/ 47
check-in, check-in desk
/'tʃek ɪn, 'tʃek ɪn desk/ 56
checkout /'tʃekaʊt/ 37
cheek /tʃi:k/ 12
cheers /tʃɪəz/ 61
cheese /tʃi:z/ 26
chef /ʃef/ 44
chemist /'kemɪst/ 22
chemist's /'kemɪsts/ 22, 23, 37
chemistry /'kemɪstri/ 42
cheque /tʃek/ 20
cherry /'tʃeri/ 25
chest /tʃest/ 12
chest of drawers /tʃest əv 'drɔ:z/ 40
chicken /'tʃɪkɪn/ 24
child /tʃaɪld/ 13
children /'tʃɪldrən/ 8, 13
chilli /'tʃɪli/ 25
chin /tʃɪn/ 12
China /'tʃaɪnə/ 4
Chinese /tʃaɪ'ni:z/ 4
chips /tʃɪps/ 28
chocolate /'tʃɒklət/ 26
choose /tʃu:z/ 37
Christmas /'krɪsməs/ 3
church /tʃɜ:tʃ/ 35



www.hellooteacher.ir

cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 50, 52
circle *v* /'sɜ:kl/ Starter
city /'sɪti/ 35
classical /'klæsɪkl/ 50, 51
clean *v* /kli:n/ 17, 39, 40
clean *adj* /kli:n/ 35
cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 44
clear /klɪə(r)/ 70
clever /'klevə(r)/ 14
click on something /'klɪk ɒn sʌmθɪŋ/ 46
client /'klaɪənt/ 45
climb /klaɪm/ 11
clock *as in* o'clock /klɒk/ 2, 30
close *v* /kləʊz/ 11, 62
closed *as in* flight closed /kləʊzd/ 56
closest friend /kləʊsɪst 'frend/ 15
cloud /klaʊd/ 21
cloudy /'klaʊdi/ 21
clove /kləʊv/ 25
coast /kəʊst/ 34
coat /kəʊt/ 18
code /kəʊd/ 69
coffee /'kɒfi/ 27
coffee table /'kɒfi teɪbl/ 41
coin /kɔɪn/ 20
cold *adj* /kəʊld/ 21
cold *n* /kəʊld/ 22
colleague /'kɒli:g/ 45
collect (= keep together) /kə'lekt/ 50
collect (= pick up) /kə'lekt/ 56
college /'kɒlɪdʒ/ 42
colour /'kʌlə(r)/ 13
comb /kəʊm/ 40
come from /'kʌm frɒm, frəm/ 4, 8
come round /kʌm 'raʊnd/ 17, 64
comedy /'kɒmədi/ 52
comfortable /'kʌmf(ə)təbl/ 19
commission /kə'mɪʃn/ 59
common /'kɒmən/ 70
company /'kʌmpəni/ 45
complete *v* /kəm'pli:t/ Starter
complete opposites /kəmpli:t 'ɒpəzɪts/ 14
composer /kəm'pəʊzə(r)/ 51
computer game /kəm'pju:tə geɪm/ 50
computer science /kəmpju:tə 'saɪəns/ 43
concert /'kɒnsət/ 51
conditioning *as in* air conditioning /kən'dɪʃənɪŋ/ 55
conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ 51
confusing /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ 70
congratulations /kəngrætʃu'leɪʃnz/ 61
continue (at school) /kəntɪnju: (ət 'sku:l)/ 42
convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 37
cook *v* /kʊk/ 39
cooked /kʊkt/ 25
cooker /'kʊkə(r)/ 39
cooking /'kʊkɪŋ/ 50
cool /ku:l/ 21
copy *n, v* /'kɒpi/ 46
corner /'kɔ:nə(r)/ 31
correct *v* /kə'rekt/ Starter, 7
cosmopolitan /kɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/ 35
cost *v* /kɒst/ 20
cotton wool /kɒtn 'wʊl/ 23
cough /kɒf/ 22
could (= permission) /kʊd/ 63
could (= request) /kʊd/ 7, 23, 63
could (= suggestion) /kʊd/ 64
countryside /'kʌntrisaɪd/ 36
couple (= two people in a relationship) /'kʌpl/ 15
couple *as in* a couple of minutes /'kʌpl/ 27
courgette /kʊə'ʒet/ 25
course (= of study) /kɔ:s/ 43
course (= part of a meal) /kɔ:s/ 28
court /kɔ:t/ 49
cousin /'kʌzn/ 10
cow /kaʊ/ 24
crab /kræb/ 24
crazy /'kreɪzi/ 70
cream *adj* /kri:m/ 18
cream *n* /kri:m/ 23
credit card /'kredɪt kɑ:d/ 19, 20
croissant /'kwæsɒn/ 27
crop /krɒp/ 36
cross out /krɒs 'aʊt/ Starter
crossing *as in* pedestrian crossing /'krɒsɪŋ/ 32
crowded /'kraʊdɪd/ 35
cucumber /'kju:kʌmbə(r)/ 25
cup /kʌp/ 39
cupboard /'kʌbəd/ 39
curly /'kɜ:li/ 13
currency /'kʌrənsi/ 54, 59
curtain /'kɜ:tn/ 41
cushion /'kʊʃn/ 41
customer /'kʌstəmə(r)/ 19, 23
customs /'kʌstəmz/ 56
cut (= make a wound) /kʌt/ 23
cut (= remove) /kʌt/ 46
Czech /tʃek/ 4
Czech Republic /tʃek rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 4

DVD player /di: vi: 'di: pleɪə(r)/ 41
dad /dæd/ 10
damp /dæmp/ 21
dance /dɑ:ns/ 11
dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ 35
dark /dɑ:k/ 13, 18
data /deɪtə/ 47
date /deɪt/ 3, 47, 74
date of birth /deɪt əv 'bɜ:θ/ 9
daughter /'dɔ:tə(r)/ 10
day /deɪ/ 3, 45


www.hellooteacher.ir

day *as in* have a nice day /deɪ/ 61
daytime /'deɪtaɪm/ 9
dead /ded/ 70
debit card /'debɪt kɑ:d/ 20
declare *as in* nothing to declare /dɪ'kleə(r)/ 33
definite article /defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkl/ 6
degree /dɪ'gri:/ 43
delayed /dɪ'leɪd/ 56
delete /dɪ'li:t/ 47
deli(catessen) /'deli, delɪkə'tesən/ 37
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ 55
deliver /dɪ'lɪvə(r)/ 37, 59
dentist /'dentɪst/ 44
departed /dɪ'pɑ:tɪd/ 56
department store /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:(r)/ 37
departure /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə(r)/ 56
departures /dɪ'pɑ:tʃəz/ 56
design /dɪ'zaɪn/ 45
design and technology
/dɪzaɪn ən tek'nɒlədʒi/ 42
desk /desk/ 5, 40
desk *as in* cash desk /desk/ 19
dessert /dɪ'zɜ:t/ 28
details /'di:teɪlz/ 55
diary /'daɪəri/ 75
dictionary /'dɪkʃənri/ 5
die /daɪ/ 53
difference /'dɪfrəns/ 7
different /'dɪfrənt/ Starter
dining room /'daɪnɪŋ ru:m/ 38
dinner /'dɪnə(r)/ 17, 79
direct /də'rekt, daɪ-, dɪ-/ 30
director /də'rektə(r), daɪ-, dɪ-/ 52
dirty /'dɜ:ti/ 35
disagree /dɪsə'gri:/ 68
disaster /dɪ'zɑ:stə(r)/ 53
discuss /dɪ'skʌs/ 45
dishwasher /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/ 39
disk /dɪsk/ 46
disturb *as in* please do not disturb /dɪ'stɜ:b/ 33
divorced /dɪ'vɔ:st/ 15
do *as in* do a degree, do research /du:/ 43
do *as in* do homework /du:/ 42
do *as in* do the shopping, do the ironing
/du:/ 17, 37, 39
do *as in* do your hair /du:/ 40
do *as in* How do you do? /du:/ 60
do *as in* What do you do? /du:/ 8, 17
do the ironing /du: ðɪ 'aɪənɪŋ/ 39
do the shopping /du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39
do well /du: 'wel/ 42
doctor /'dɒktə(r)/ 43
document /'dɒkjəmənt/ 46
dog /dɒg/ 36
don't worry /'dəʊnt wʌri/ 66
door *as in* front door /dɔ:(r)/ 38
double /'dʌbl/ 7
double room /'dʌbl ru:m/ 55
down *as in* go down /daʊn/ 76
download /daʊn'ləʊd/ 47, 51
downstairs /daʊn'steəz/ 38
draw /drɔ:/ 49
drawers *as in* chest of drawers /drɔ:z/ 40
drawing /'drɔ:ɪŋ/ 50
dress /dres/ 18
drink *n* /drɪŋk/ 79
drive /draɪv/ 32
driver /'draɪvə(r)/ 44
drop /drɒp/ 11
drums /drʌmz/ 51
drummer /'drʌmə(r)/ 51
dry /draɪ/ 21
duck /dʌk/ 24
during the week /djʊərɪŋ ðə 'wi:k/ 17

each /i:tʃ/ 20
each other /i:tʃ 'ʌðə(r)/ 15
ear /ɪə(r)/ 12
early *as in* early twenties /'ɜ:li/ 17
earn /ɜ:n/ 20, 45
east /i:st/ 34, 35
Easter /'i:stə(r)/ 61
economics /i:kə'nɒmɪks/ 43
economist /ɪ'kɒnəmɪst/ 43
egg /eg/ 26
Egypt /'i:dʒɪpt/ 4
Egyptian /ɪ'dʒɪpʃn/ 4
elderly /'eldəli/ 13
electric razor /ɪlektrɪk 'reɪzə(r)/ 40
else *as in* anything else? /els/ 26
email address /'i:meɪl ədres/ 9, 47
embarrassed /ɪm'bærəst/ 16
empty *adj, v* /'empti/ 39
en suite /ɒn 'swi:t/ 55
end /end/ 46
engaged /ɪn'geɪdʒd/ 69
engine *as in* search engine /'endʒɪn/ 47
engineer /endʒɪ'nɪə(r)/ 43
engineering /endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 43
England /'ɪŋgland/ 4
English /'ɪŋglɪʃ/ 4
enjoy /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ 48
enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbl/ 48
enormous /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ 34
enter /'entə(r)/ 20
entrance /'entrəns/ 33
entry *as in* no entry /'entri/ 33
envelope /'envələʊp/ 59
equipment /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/ 49
especially /ɪ'speʃəli/ 71
espresso /e'spresəʊ/ 27
essay /'eseɪ/ 43



www.hellooteacher.ir

Europe /'jʊərəp/ 4
even /'i:vn/ 71
evening /'i:vnɪŋ/ 2, 60, 75
event /ɪ'vent/ 53
ever /'evə(r)/ 72
every /'evri/ 17, 29
exactly /ɪg'zæktl'ɪ/ 8
exams /ɪg'zæmz/ 42
ex-boyfriend /eks 'bɔɪfrend/ 15
excellent /'eksələnt/ 68
exchange rate /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ reɪt/ 59
excited /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ 16
exciting /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ 52
excuse me /ɪk'skju:z mi:/ 29, 31
ex-girlfriend /eks 'gɜ:lfrend/ 15
ex-husband /eks 'hʌzbənd/ 15
exit /'eksɪt/ 33
expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ 19
explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ 7
extremely /ɪk'stri:mli/ 71
ex-wife /eks 'waɪf/ 15
eye /aɪ/ 12

face /feɪs/ 12
facilities /fə'sɪlətiz/ 55
fact /fækt/ 35
factory /'fæktəri/ 45
fail an exam /feɪl ən ɪg'zæm/ 42
fall over /fɔ:l 'əʊvə(r)/ 11, 73
false /fɔ:ls, fɒls/ Starter
family name /'fæməli neɪm/ 8
family tree /fæməli 'tri:/ 10
famous /'feɪməs/ 34, 51
fantastic /fæn'tæstɪk/ 48
far /fɑ:(r)/ 32, 62
Far East /fɑ:r 'i:st/ 4
fare /feə(r)/ 20, 30
farm /fɑ:m/ 36
farmer /'fɑ:mə(r)/ 36
fast /fɑ:st/ 30, 47
fasten /'fɑ:sn/ 56
fat /fæt/ 13
father /'fɑ:ðə(r)/ 10
favourite /'feɪvərɪt/ 48
feel /fi:l/ 16, 22
feet /fi:t/ 12
few *as in* a few /fju:/ 36
field /fi:ld/ 36
fill /fɪl/ 37
fillet /'fɪlɪt/ 28
film /fɪlm/ 17, 52
final score /faɪnl 'skɔ:(r)/ 49
finally /'faɪnəli/ 78
find /faɪnd/ 54
find out /faɪnd 'aʊt/ 53, 73
fine (= in good health) /faɪn/ 60
fine (= OK) /faɪn/ 60, 63
fingers /'fɪŋgəz/ 12
finish /'fɪnɪʃ/ 17, 63
fireplace /'faɪəpleɪs/ 41
first *adv* /fɜ:st/ 78
first *adj* /fɜ:st/ 8
first half /fɜ:st 'hɑ:f/ 49
first of all /fɜ:st əv 'ɔ:l/ 78
firstly /'fɜ:stli/ 78
fish /fɪʃ/ 24
fishing /'fɪʃɪŋ/ 50
fit /fɪt/ 19
flat *adj* /flæt/ 69
flat *n* /flæt/ 38
flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 15
flight /flaɪt/ 54, 56
flight closed /flaɪt 'kləʊzd/ 56
floor (= level of a building) /flɔ:(r)/ 38
floor (= surface you walk on) /flɔ:(r)/ 41
flower /'flaʊə(r)/ 36
flower arranging /'flaʊər əreɪndʒɪŋ/ 50
flu /flu:/ 22
fly /flaɪ/ 57
fog /fɒg/ 21
foggy /'fɒgi/ 21
folder (= for holding papers) /'fəʊldə(r)/ 5
folder (= on a computer) /'fəʊldə(r)/ 46
foot /fʊt/ 12
football /'fʊtbɔ:l/ 49
for /fɔ:(r), fə(r)/ 75
for a while /fər ə 'waɪl/ 22
forecast *as in* weather forecast /'fɔ:kɑ:st/ 53
foreign /'fɒrən/ 54
forename /'fɔ:neɪm/ 9
forget /fə'get/ 67
fork /fɔ:k/ 28
fortunately /'fɔ:tʃənətli/ 43
forward *v* /'fɔ:wəd/ 47
France /frɑ:ns/ 4
free /fri:/ 20
freezer /'fri:zə(r)/ 39
freezing /'fri:zɪŋ/ 16, 21
French /frentʃ/ 4
fresh /freʃ/ 25
fresh food /freʃ 'fu:d/ 36
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 39
fried /fraɪd/ 28
friend *as in* best/closest friend /frend/ 15
friendly /'frendli/ 14
frightened /'fraɪtnd/ 16
frightening /'fraɪtnɪŋ/ 52
from (= origin) /frɒm, frəm/ 4
from (= time) /frɒm, frəm/ 45
front door /frʌnt 'dɔ:(r)/ 38
frozen /'frəʊzn/ 25
frying pan /'fraɪɪŋ pæn/ 39


www.hellooteacher.ir

full /fʊl/ 37, 39
full-time /ˈfʊl taɪm/ 45
fun /fʌn/ 14, 48
funny /ˈfʌni/ 14, 52
furniture /ˈfɜːnɪtʃə(r)/ 41

GP (general practitioner)
/dʒiː ˈpiː, dʒenrəl prækˈtɪʃənə(r)/ 22
gallery *as in* art gallery /ˈgæləri/ 58
game /geɪm/ 49
garage /ˈgærɑːʒ, ˈgærɪdʒ/ 38
garden /ˈgɑːdn/ 38
gardening /ˈgɑːdnɪŋ/ 50
garlic /ˈgɑːlɪk/ 25
gate /geɪt/ 56
gents /dʒents/ 33
geography /dʒiˈɒgrəfi/ 42
German /ˈdʒɜːmən/ 4
Germany /ˈdʒɜːməni/ 4
get (= arrive) /get/ 30, 31, 80
get (= become) /get/ 16, 80
get (= buy) /get/ 80
get (= fetch) /get/ 69
get (= obtain) /get/ 42, 80
get (= receive) /get/ 47, 80
get (= travel by) /get/ 29, 30, 57, 80
get a grade /get ə ˈgreɪd/ 42
get a job /get ə ˈdʒɒb/ 43
get an email /get ən ˈiːmeɪl/ 47
get divorced /get dɪˈvɔːst/ 10
get dressed /get ˈdrest/ 17
get lost /get ˈlɒst/ 58
get married /get ˈmærid/ 10, 15
get off /get ˈɒf/ 11, 29, 30, 56
get on /get ˈɒn/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73
get on with someone /get ˈɒn wɪð sʌmwʌn/ 15
get to know someone /get tə ˈnəʊ sʌmwʌn/ 15
get to work /get tə ˈwɜːk/ 17
get up /get ˈʌp/ 17
girlfriend /ˈgɜːlfrend/ 10, 15
give /gɪv/ 12, 15, 72
give someone a hand /gɪv sʌmwʌn ə ˈhænd/ 66
give something up /gɪv sʌmθɪŋ ˈʌp/ 73
glass /glɑːs/ 28
glasses /ˈglɑːsɪz/ 18
gloves /glʌvz/ 18
go (= do something) /gəʊ/ 17, 22, 50
go (= move or travel) /gəʊ/ 31, 33
go ahead /gəʊ əˈhed/ 63
go and see /gəʊ ən ˈsiː/ 22
go back /gəʊ ˈbæk/ 73
go down /gəʊ ˈdaʊn/ 76
go for a walk /gəʊ fər ə ˈwɔːk/ 57
go on a (guided) tour
/gəʊ ɒn ə (gaɪdɪd) ˈtʊə(r)/ 58
go online /gəʊ ɒnˈlaɪn/ 47
go out /gəʊ ˈaʊt/ 17, 73
go out for (a meal/a drink)
/gəʊ ˈaʊt fə(r)/ 64, 73
go out with someone /gəʊ ˈaʊt wɪð sʌmwʌn/ 15
go sightseeing /gəʊ ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
go to primary school /gəʊ tə ˈpraɪməri skuːl/ 42
go up /gəʊ ˈʌp/ 73
goal /gəʊl/ 49
good afternoon /ˈgʊd ɑːftənuːn/ 60
good at something /ˈgʊd ət sʌmθɪŋ/ 42
good evening /ˈgʊd iːvnɪŋ/ 60
good-looking /gʊd ˈlʊkɪŋ/ 13
good luck /ˈgʊd lʌk/ 61
good morning /ˈgʊd mɔːnɪŋ/ 60
good to meet you /gʊd tə ˈmiːt juː/ 60
goodbye /gʊdˈbaɪ/ 60
goodnight /gʊdˈnaɪt/ 60, 61
grade /greɪd/ 42
graduate *n* /ˈgrædʒuət/ 43
graduate *v* /ˈgrædʒueɪt/ 43
grams /græmz/ 26
granddaughter /ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ 10
grandfather /ˈgrænfɑːðə(r)/ 10
grandmother /ˈgrænmʌðə(r)/ 10
grandson /ˈgrænsʌn/ 10
grapes /greɪps/ 25
grass /grɑːs/ 36
great /greɪt/ 55, 64, 65
Great Britain /ˈgreɪt brɪtn/ 4
Greece /griːs/ 4
Greek /griːk/ 4
green /griːn/ 18
grey /greɪ/ 13, 18
grilled /grɪld/ 28
ground floor /graʊnd ˈflɔː(r)/ 38
group /gruːp/ 51
grow /grəʊ/ 36
grow up /grəʊ ˈʌp/ 73
guests /gests/ 55
guide /gaɪd/ 58
guidebook /ˈgaɪdbʊk/ 58
guitar /gɪˈtɑː(r)/ 50, 51
gym /dʒɪm/ 17, 50, 55

hair /heə(r)/ 12, 40
hairdresser /ˈheədresə(r)/ 44
half /hɑːf/ 26, 49
half past /ˈhɑːf pɑːst/ 2
half price /hɑːf ˈpraɪs/ 20
half-time /hɑːf ˈtaɪm/ 49
ham /hæm/ 24
hand (= part of the body) /hænd/ 12
hand *as in* give someone a hand /hænd/ 66
hand luggage /ˈhænd lʌgɪdʒ/ 56
handbag /ˈhændbæg/ 18
hands *as in* shake hands /hændz/ 60



www.hellooteacher.ir

happen /'hæpən/ 53
happy /'hæpi/ 16
happy birthday /hæpi 'bɜ:θdeɪ/ 61
happy Christmas /hæpi 'krɪsməs/ 61
happy New Year /hæpi nju: 'jɪə(r)/ 61
hard *adv* /hɑ:d/ 42
hard copy /hɑ:d 'kɒpi/ 46
hard drive /hɑ:d 'draɪv/ 46
hardly ever /hɑ:dli 'evə(r)/ 17
hardworking /hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ/ 14
hat /hæt/ 18
hate /heɪt/ 48
have /hæv, həv/ 79
have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69
have (= eat/drink) /hæv/ 28
have *used in* greetings /hæv/ 61
have a baby /hæv ə 'beɪbi/ 15
have a seat /hæv ə 'si:t/ 27
have got /hæv 'gɒt/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80
have got to /hæv 'gɒt tu:, tə/ 60
have to /'hæf tu:, tə/ 45
head /hed/ 12
headache /'hedeɪk/ 22
healthy /'helθi/ 36
hear /hɪə(r)/ 53
heating *as in* central heating /'hi:tɪŋ/ 55
heavy /'hevi/ 21
height /haɪt/ 13
hello /he'ləʊ/ 60
help /help/ 19, 66
helpful /'helpfl/ 55, 70
hi, hi there /haɪ, 'haɪ ðeə(r)/ 60
high /haɪ/ 34, 45
hill /hɪl/ 36
hire /'haɪə(r)/ 54
historic /hɪ'stɒrɪk/ 35
history /'hɪst(ə)ri/ 42
hob /hɒb/ 39
hobby /'hɒbi/ 50
hockey *as in* ice hockey /'hɒki/ 49
hold /həʊld/ 11
holiday /'hɒlədeɪ/ 54, 61, 79
home /həʊm/ 38
homework /'həʊmwɜ:k/ 39, 42
hope /həʊp/ 60
horrible /'hɒrəbl/ 14, 19
horror /'hɒrə(r)/ 52
horse /hɔ:s/ 36
hospital /'hɒspɪtl/ 45
hot /hɒt/ 21
hours /'aʊəz/ 45
house /haʊs/ 38
househusband /'haʊshʌzbənd/ 44
housewife /'haʊswaɪf/ 44
How about you? /haʊ əbaʊt 'ju:/ 62
How are things? /haʊ ə 'θɪŋz/ 60
How are you? /haʊ ə 'ju:/ 60
How do you do? /haʊ də jə 'du:/ 60
how far /'haʊ fɑ:(r)/ 32, 62
how long (= length) /'haʊ lɒŋ/ 13
how long (= time) /'haʊ lɒŋ/ 29, 62
how many /'haʊ meni/ 26, 62
how much /'haʊ mʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
how often /'haʊ ɒfn, ɒftən/ 62
how old /'haʊ əʊld/ 8, 10
however /haʊ'evə(r)/ 77
humid /'hju:mɪd/ 21
hundred /'hʌndrəd/ 1
Hungarian /hʌŋ'geərɪən/ 4
Hungary /'hʌŋgəri/ 4
hungry /'hʌŋgri/ 16
hurt /hɜ:t/ 22
husband /'hʌzbənd/ 10
hypermarket /'haɪpəmɑ:kɪt/ 37

ICT (information communication technology) /aɪ si: 'ti: (ɪnfəmeɪʃn kəmju:nɪkeɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi)/ 42
IT (information technology) /aɪ 'ti: (ɪnfəmeɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi)/ 42
ice /aɪs/ 21
ice cream /aɪs 'kri:m/ 28
ice hockey /'aɪs hɒki/ 49
icon /'aɪkɒn/ 46
icy /'aɪsi/ 21
I'd like /aɪd 'laɪk/ 26, 27
I'd like to /aɪd 'laɪk tu:, tə/ 55
I'd love to /aɪd 'lʌv tu:, tə/ 64
idea /aɪ'dɪə/ 65
if /ɪf/ 78
ill *as in* be/feel ill /ɪl/ 16, 22
I'll leave it/them /aɪl 'li:v ɪt, ðəm/ 19
I'm afraid /aɪm ə'freɪd/ 55, 63, 64
I'm afraid not /aɪm əfreɪd 'nɒt/ 55
impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbl/ 70
in (= place) /ɪn/ 76
in (= taking part) /ɪn/ 52
in (= time) /ɪn/ 2, 74
in *as in* Who's in it? /ɪn/ 52
in a minute /ɪn ə 'mɪnɪt/ 75
in advance /ɪn əd'vɑ:ns/ 30
in front of /ɪn 'frʌnt əv/ 76
in love /ɪn 'lʌv/ 16
in (my twenties, etc.) /ɪn (maɪ 'twentiz)/ 13
in order to /ɪn 'ɔ:də tə/ 77
in the north /ɪn ðə 'nɔ:θ/ 34
in the paper /ɪn ðə 'peɪpə(r)/ 53
inbox /'ɪnbɒks/ 47
included *as in* included in the price /ɪn'klu:dɪd/ 55
indefinite article /ɪndefɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkl/ 6
India /'ɪndiə/ 4



www.hellooteacher.ir

Indian /'ɪndiən/ 4
indoors /ɪn'dɔ:z/ 37
industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 35
information /ɪnfə'meɪʃn/ 8
inland /ɪn'lænd/ 34
inside /ɪn'saɪd/ 38
instrument *as in* musical instrument /'ɪnstrəmənt/ 50
insurance /ɪn'ʃʊərəns/ 54
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ 14
interested /'ɪntrəstɪd/ 48
interesting /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/ 35, 48
internet /'ɪntənet/ 47
internet access /'ɪntənet ækses/ 55
into /'ɪntu:, 'ɪntə/ 59, 76, 77
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/ 64
Ireland /'aɪələnd/ 4
ironing /'aɪənɪŋ/ 39
irregular /ɪ'regjələ(r)/ 6
irritating /'ɪrɪteɪtɪŋ/ 70
Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 4
Italy /'ɪtəli/ 4

jacket /'dʒækɪt/ 18
jam /dʒæm/ 26
Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 4
Japanese /dʒæpə'ni:z/ 4
jar /dʒɑ:(r)/ 26
jeans /dʒi:nz/ 18
job /dʒɒb/ 8, 42
journalism /'dʒɜ:nəlɪzm/ 43
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/ 43
journey /'dʒɜ:ni/ 30, 61, 79
juice *as in* orange juice /dʒu:s/ 27
jump /dʒʌmp/ 11
jumper /'dʒʌmpə(r)/ 18
junction /'dʒʌŋkʃn/ 32
junk /dʒʌŋk/ 47
just *as in* just keep going /dʒʌst/ 31
just a moment /'dʒʌst ə məʊmənt/ 69
just after /'dʒʌst ɑ:ftə(r)/ 2
just over /'dʒʌst əʊvə(r)/ 26, 35
just under /'dʒʌst ʌndə(r)/ 26, 35

keen *as in* keen on something /ki:n/ 48
keep (= put/store) /ki:p/ 46
keep going /ki:p 'gəʊɪŋ/ 31
keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ 46
kilo /'ki:ləʊ/ 26
kilometres /kɪl'ɒmi:təz, kɪ'lɒmɪtəz/ 31, 34
kind *adj* /kaɪnd/ 14
kind *as in* that's very kind of you /kaɪnd/ 66
kind *as in* What kind...? /kaɪnd/ 52, 62
kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/ 38
knee /ni:/ 12
knife /naɪf/ 28
know /nəʊ/ 7, 31
know *as in* get to know /nəʊ/ 15
Korean /kə'ri:ən/ 4

ladies /leɪdɪz/ 33
lake /leɪk/ 36
lamb /læm/ 24
lamp /læmp/ 41
land /lænd/ 56
language /læŋgwɪdʒ/ 4
lane /leɪn/ 32
laptop /'læptɒp/ 46
large /lɑ:dʒ/ 19
last *adj* /lɑ:st/ 30
last *v* /lɑ:st/ 43
last night, last week, last year, etc. /lɑ:st 'naɪt, 'wi:k, 'jɪə(r)/ 75
last stop /lɑ:st 'stɒp/ 29
late *as in* I get up late /leɪt/ 17
late *as in* Sorry I'm late /leɪt/ 67
late (fifties) /leɪt ('fɪftiz)/ 13
later *as in* See you later /'leɪtə(r)/ 60, 75
laugh /lɑ:f/ 14
law /lɔ:/ 43
lawyer /'lɔ:jə(r)/ 43
lazy /'leɪzi/ 14
lead *v* /li:d/ 49
lead singer /li:d 'sɪŋə(r)/ 51
league /li:g/ 49
leave *as in* I'll leave it/them /li:v/ 19
leave *v* (of a train) /li:v/ 30, 42
leave home /li:v 'həʊm/ 17
leave school /li:v 'sku:l/ 42
left /left/ 31
leg /leg/ 12, 22
lemon /'lemən/ 25
lend /lend/ 63
length *as in* medium-length /leŋθ/ 13
lesson /'lesn/ 42
let *as in* let me /let/ 66
let's /lets/ 65
letter /'letə(r)/ 59
letter box /'letə bɒks/ 59
lettuce /'letɪs/ 25
level /'levl/ 9
library /'laɪbrəri/ 43
lie /laɪ/ 57
lie down /laɪ 'daʊn/ 11, 22, 73
lift *n* /lɪft/ 38
lift *as in* give someone a lift /lɪft/ 66
light *adj* /laɪt/ 13, 18
light *n* /laɪt/ 41
lightning /'laɪtnɪŋ/ 21
like *v* /laɪk/ 48
like *as in* What's he/she/it like? /laɪk/ 14, 23, 62
like *as in* would like /laɪk/ 26, 27, 28, 55, 64


www.hellooteacher.ir

limit *as in* speed limit /'lɪmɪt/ 32
line /laɪn/ 68
lip /lɪp/ 12
listen to /'lɪsn tə/ 50, 53
literature /'lɪtrətʃə(r)/ 42
litre /'li:tə(r)/ 26
little /'lɪtl/ 19
little *as in* a little /'lɪtl/ 71
living room /'lɪvɪŋ ru:m/ 38
location /ləʊ'keɪʃn/ 35
lonely /'ləʊnli/ 36
long *adj* /lɒŋ/ 13, 19
long *as in* How long...? /lɒŋ/ 29, 62
long *as in* a metre long /lɒŋ/ 29
long hours /lɒŋ 'aʊəz/ 45
look /lʊk/ 19
look after /lʊk 'ɑ:ftə/ 36
look round /lʊk 'raʊnd/ 58
look something up /lʊk sʌmθɪŋ 'ʌp/ 73
loose /lu:s/ 19
lorry driver /'lɒri draɪvə(r)/ 44
lose /lu:z/ 49, 67
lot *as in* a lot, a lot of /lɒt/ 21
lots *as in* lots to do /lɒts/ 35
lottery /'lɒtəri/ 20
love /lʌv/ 48
love story /'lʌv stɔ:ri/ 52
lovely /'lʌvli/ 19, 61
low *as in* low wages /ləʊ/ 45
luck *as in* good luck /lʌk/ 61
luggage /'lʌgɪdʒ/ 56
lunch /lʌntʃ/ 79

MA (Master of Arts) /em 'eɪ (mɑ:stər əv ɑ:ts)/ 43
MP3 player /em pi: 'θri: pleɪə(r)/ 47
Mr /'mɪstə(r)/ 9
Mrs /'mɪsɪz/ 9
Ms /məz/ 9
MSc (Master of Science)
/em es 'si: (mɑ:stər əv 'saɪəns)/ 43
machine *as in* cash machine /mə'ʃi:n/ 59
machine *as in* washing machine /mə'ʃi:n/ 39
mad /mæd/ 70
magazine /mægə'zi:n/ 53
main course /'meɪn kɔ:s/ 28
main road /meɪn 'rəʊd/ 32
major /'meɪdʒə(r)/ 34
make (= perform an action) /meɪk/ 45
make (= produce) /meɪk/ 39, 46
make-up /'meɪk ʌp/ 40
manager /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ 43
Mandarin /'mændərɪn/ 4
mango /'mæŋgəʊ/ 25
many *as in* how many /'meni/ 26, 61
map /mæp/ 58
marital status /'mærɪtl steɪtəs/ 9
mark /mɑ:k/ 42
market /'mɑ:kɪt/ 35, 37
married /'mærid/ 8
married *as in* get married /mærid/ 10, 15
match *n* (= game) /mætʃ/ 49
matches *n* (= to start a fire) /'mætʃɪz/ 26
maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 42
matter *as in* it doesn't matter /'mætə(r)/ 67
matter *as in* What's the matter?
/'mætə(r)/ 16, 22
maybe /'meɪbi/ 65
meal /mi:l/ 28, 64
mean /mi:n/ 7
meaning /'mi:nɪŋ/ 7
meat /mi:t/ 24
media /'mi:diə/ 53
medicine (= subject of study) /'medsn/ 43
medicine (e.g. aspirin) /'medsn, 'medɪsɪn/ 23
medium (= size) /'mi:diəm/ 19
medium (= steak) /'mi:diəm/ 28
medium-length /'mi:diəm leŋθ/ 13
medium-sized /'mi:diəm saɪzd/ 35
meet (= come together) /mi:t/ 45
meet (= for the first time) /mi:t/ 15, 60
meet *as in* nice/good to meet you /mi:t/ 60
meeting /'mi:tɪŋ/ 45
melon /'melən/ 25
memory stick /'meməri stɪk/ 46
menu /'menju:/ 28
merry Christmas /meri 'krɪsməs/ 61
message /'mesɪdʒ/ 47
message *as in* text message /'mesɪdʒ/ 69
Mexican /'meksɪkən/ 4
Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/ 4
microwave /'maɪkrəweɪv/ 39
midday /mɪd'deɪ/ 2
middle /'mɪdl/ 46
middle-aged /mɪdl 'eɪdʒd/ 13
Middle East /mɪdl 'i:st/ 4
midnight /'mɪdnaɪt/ 2
might /maɪt/ 54
mile /maɪl/ 35
miles an hour /maɪlz ən 'aʊə(r)/ 32
milk /mɪlk/ 26, 27
million /'mɪljən/ 1
mind *as in* Do you mind if...? /maɪnd/ 63
mind *as in* never mind /maɪnd/ 55, 67
mineral water /'mɪnərəl wɔ:tə(r)/ 28
minibar /'mɪnɪbɑ:(r)/ 55
mirror /'mɪrə(r)/ 40
miss *v* /mɪs/ 30
Miss /mɪs/ 9
missing /'mɪsɪŋ/ Starter
mistake /mɪ'steɪk/ Starter
mixed salad /mɪkst 'sæləd/ 28
mobile number /'məʊbaɪl nʌmbə(r)/ 69


www.hellooteacher.ir

modern /'mɒdn/ 35, 38
modern languages /mɒdn 'læŋgwɪdʒɪz/ 42
moment *as in* at the moment /'məʊmənt/ 69, 75
moment *as in* just a moment /'məʊmənt/ 69
monitor /'mɒnɪtə(r)/ 46
month /mʌnθ/ 3
more *as in* some more /mɔ:(r)/ 28
morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 2
morning *as in* good morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 60
mosque /mɒsk/ 35
most /məʊst/ 53
mother /'mʌðə(r)/ 10
mother tongue /mʌðə 'tʌŋ/ 9
motorway /'məʊtəweɪ/ 32
mountain /'maʊntən/ 34
mouse /maʊs/ 46
mouse mat /'maʊs mæt/ 46
moustache /mə'stɑ:ʃ/ 13
mouth /maʊθ/ 12
move /mu:v/ 46
movie /'mu:vi/ 52
much *as in* how much /mʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
much *as in* nothing much /mʌtʃ/ 53
mum /mʌm/ 10
museum /mju:'zi:əm/ 35, 58
mushroom /'mʌʃru:m/ 25
mnsic /'mju:zɪk/ 42, 50
musical /'mju:zɪkl/ 50
mussels /'mʌslz/ 24
must /məst/ 60

name *as in* family name, first name /neɪm/ 8
napkin /'næpkɪn/ 28
narrow /'nærəʊ/ 70
nationality /næʃə'nælɪti/ 4
near /nɪə(r)/ 29, 76
nearest /'nɪərɪst/ 62
nearly /'nɪəli/ 2
necessary /'nesəsəri/ 70
neck /nek/ 12
need /ni:d/ 19, 23, 66
neighbours /'neɪbəz/ 38
nephew /'nefju:/ 10
nervous /'nɜ:vəs/ 16
net /net/ 49
never /'nevə(r)/ 17
never mind /'nevə maɪnd/ 55, 67
New Year /nju: 'jɪə(r)/ 61
New Year's Day /nju: jɪəz 'deɪ/ 3
news /nju:z/ 53
newsagent's /'nju:zeɪdʒənts/ 37
newspaper /'nju:speɪpə(r)/ 53
next (of a train) /nekst/ 30
next stop /'nekst stɒp/ 29
next to /'nekst tu:, tə/ 76
next week /nekst 'wi:k/ 75
nice /naɪs/ 14, 19, 79
nice *as in* have a nice day/evening /naɪs/ 61
nice to meet you /naɪs tə 'mi:t ju:/ 60
niece /ni:s/ 10
night (= saying goodnight) /naɪt/ 60
night *as in* a night /naɪt/ 2
night *as in* €60 a night /naɪt/ 55
night *as in* last night /naɪt/ 75
nightlife /'naɪtlaɪf/ 35
nil /nɪl/ 49
no entry /nəʊ 'entri/ 33
no exit /nəʊ 'eksɪt/ 33
no parking /nəʊ 'pɑ:kɪŋ/ 33
no problem /nəʊ 'prɒbləm/ 63
no smoking /nəʊ 'sməʊkɪŋ/ 33
noisy /'nɔɪzi/ 70
none /nʌn/ 53
noodles /'nu:dlz/ 26
normally /'nɔ:məli/ 17
north /nɔ:θ/ 34, 35
North America /nɔ:θ ə'merɪkə/ 4
north-east /nɔ:θ 'i:st/ 35
north-west /nɔ:θ 'west/ 35
Northern Ireland /nɔ:ðən 'aɪələnd/ 4
nose /nəʊz/ 12
not bad /nɒt 'bæd/ 60
notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ 5
notes /nəʊts/ 20, 56
nothing *as in* there's nothing to do /'nʌθɪŋ/ 35
nothing much /nʌθɪŋ 'mʌtʃ/ 53
nothing to declare /nʌθɪŋ tə dɪ'kleə(r)/ 33
noticeboard /'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d/ 5
noun /naʊn/ 6
number *as in* phone number /'nʌmbə(r)/ 69
number *as in* PIN number /'nʌmbə(r)/ 20
number *as in* wrong number /'nʌmbə(r)/ 69
number 1 (in the singles chart) /nʌmbə 'wʌn/ 51
nurse /nɜ:s/ 44
nursery school /'nɜ:səri sku:l/ 42

occasionally /ə'keɪʒ(ə)nəli/ 17
occupation /ɒkju'peɪʃn/ 9
o'clock (of time) /ə'klɒk/ 2
o'clock (of a train) /ə'klɒk/ 30
odd /ɒd/ 70
of course /əv 'kɔ:s/ 28, 63
offer /'ɒfə(r)/ 66
office *as in* post office /'ɒfɪs/ 59
office *as in* ticket office /'ɒfɪs/ 30
officer *as in* police officer /'ɒfɪsə(r)/ 44
often /'ɒfn, ɒftən/ 17
often *as in* how often /'ɒfn, 'ɒftən/ 62
oil /ɔɪl/ 28
old /əʊld/ 8, 10
olive oil /ɒlɪv 'ɔɪl/ 26
olives /'ɒlɪvz/ 26


www.hellooteacher.ir

on (= preposition of place) /ɒn/ 76
on (= preposition of time) /ɒn/ 74
on a river /ɒn ə 'rɪvə(r)/ 35
on holiday /ɒn 'hɒlədeɪ, -di/ 54
on my own /ɒn maɪ 'əʊn/ 14
on the coast /ɒn ðə 'kəʊst/ 34, 35
on the first floor /ɒn də fɜ:st 'flɔ:(r)/ 38
on the internet /ɒn ðɪ: 'ɪntənet/ 47
on the phone /ɒn ðə 'fəʊn/ 69
on time /ɒn 'taɪm/ 56
on TV/on the radio
/ɒn ti: 'vi:, ɒn ðə 'reɪdiəʊ/ 53
on *as in* What's on? /ɒn/ 52
once /wʌns/ 17
onion /'ʌnjən/ 25
online /ɒn'laɪn, 'ɒnlaɪn / 20, 47
only *adj* /'əʊnli/ 70
only *adv* /'əʊnli/ 71
open /'əʊpən/ 11, 46, 62
opera singer /'ɒprə sɪŋə(r)/ 51
opinion /ə'pɪnjən/ 35, 53, 68
opposite *n* /'ɒpəzɪt/ Starter, 7
opposite *prep* /'ɒpəzɪt/ 31, 76
opposites *as in* complete opposites /'ɒpəzɪts/ 14
or so *as in* for an hour or so /ɔ: 'səʊ/ 57
orange *adj* /'ɒrɪndʒ/ 18
orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/ 25
orange juice /'ɒrɪndʒ dʒu:s/ 27
orchestra /'ɔ:kɪstrə/ 51
order /'ɔ:də(r)/ 27, 28
order *as in* in order to /'ɔ:də(r)/ 77
order *as in* out of order /'ɔ:də(r)/ 29
organize /'ɔ:gənaɪz/ 45
organized /'ɔ:gənaɪzd/ 14
other *as in* each other /'ʌðə(r)/ 15
out of /'aʊt əv/ 76
out of order /aʊt əv 'ɔ:də(r)/ 33
outdoors /aʊt'dɔ:z/ 37
outside *adv* /aʊt'saɪd/ 38
outside *prep* /'aʊtsaɪd/ 29
oven /'ʌvn/ 39
over (= above/higher than something)
/'əʊvə(r)/ 76
over (= more than a number, price, etc.)
/'əʊvə(r)/ 26, 35
overtake /əʊvə'teɪk/ 32
overweight /əʊvə'weɪt/ 13
own *v* /əʊn/ 36
own *as in* on my own /əʊn/ 14

PC (personal computer)
/pi: 'si: (pɜ:sənl kəm'pju:tə)/ 46
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)
/pi: eɪtʃ 'di: (dɒktər əv fɪ'lɒsəfi)/ 43
p.m. /pi: 'em/ 2
pack /pæk/ 54
packet /'pækɪt/ 26
pain /peɪn/ 22
pair /peə(r)/ 18
palace /'pælɪs/ 35
pale /peɪl/ 18
pan *as in* frying pan /pæn/ 39
paper (= newspaper) /'peɪpə(r)/ 53
paper *as in* piece of paper /'peɪpə(r)/ 5
paper shop /'peɪpə ʃɒp/ 37
parcel /'pɑ:sl/ 59
parents /'peərənts/ 10
park *n* /pɑ:k/ 35
park *v* /pɑ:k/ 38
park *as in* car park /pɑ:k/ 32
parking /'pɑ:kɪŋ/ 38, 55
part-time *adj* /'pɑ:t taɪm/ 45
participle *as in* past participle
/pɑ:'tɪsɪpl, 'pɑ:tɪsɪpl / 6
particularly /pə'tɪkjələli/ 71
partner /'pɑ:tnə(r)/ 15
party /'pɑ:ti/ 64
pass an exam /pɑ:s ən ɪg'zæm/ 42
passenger /'pæsɪndʒə(r)/ 30, 56
passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/ 54
passport control /pɑ:spɔ:t kən'trəʊl/ 56
past /pɑ:st/ 76
past *as in* five past six /pɑ:st/ 2
past participle /pɑ:st pɑ:'tɪsɪpl, pɑ:st 'pɑ:tɪsɪpl/ 6
pasta /'pæstə/ 26
paste /peɪst/ 46
path /pɑ:θ/ 36
pavement /'peɪvmənt/ 32
pay /peɪ/ 19
PE (physical education) /pi: 'i: (fɪzɪkl
edʒu'keɪʃn)/ 42
peace /pi:s/ 53
peach /pi:tʃ/ 25
pear /peə(r)/ 25
peas /pi:z/ 25
pedestrian crossing /pədestriən 'krɒsɪŋ/ 32
pen /pen/ 5
pen *as in* board pen /pen/ 5
pencil /'pensl/ 5
pencil sharpener /'pensl ʃɑ:pnə(r)/ 5
pepper (= spice) /'pepə(r)/ 28
pepper (= vegetable) /'pepə(r)/ 25
per cent /pə 'sent/ 59
perfect /'pɜ:fɪkt/ 57
perform /pə'fɔ:m/ 51
perfume /'pɜ:fju:m/ 40
perhaps /pə'hæps/ 54, 65
person /'pɜ:sn/ 13
personally /'pɜ:sənəli/ 68
petrol station /'petrəl steɪʃn/ 32
pharmacy /'fɑ:məsi/ 22
phone *n, v* /fəʊn/ 69


www.hellooteacher.ir

phone call /'fəʊn kɔ:l/ 45
phone number /'fəʊn nʌmbə(r)/ 69
phone someone back /fəʊn sʌmwʌn 'bæk/ 69
photos /'fəʊtəʊz/ 58
phrase /freɪz/ 6
physics /'fɪzɪks/ 42
pianist /'pɪənɪst/ 51
piano /pi'ænəʊ/ 51
pick up /pɪk 'ʌp/ 11
picture /'pɪktʃə(r)/ 41
piece /pi:s/ 5, 26, 41
pig /pɪg/ 24
pilot /'paɪlət/ 44
PIN (personal identification number) /pɪn (pɜ:sənl aɪdentɪfɪ'keɪʃn nʌmbə)/ 20
pineapple /'paɪnæpl/ 25
pink /pɪŋk/ 18
pitch /pɪtʃ/ 49
place /pleɪs/ 35, 49
places *as in* change places /'pleɪsɪz/ 63
plane /pleɪn/ 56
plaster /'plɑ:stə(r)/ 23
plate /pleɪt/ 28
platform /'plætfɔ:m/ 30
play /pleɪ/ 17, 50
player *as in* cassette player, CD player /'pleɪə(r)/ 5
player *as in* DVD player /'pleɪə(r)/ 41
player *as in* MP3 player /'pleɪə(r)/ 47
pleasant /'plez(ə)nt/ 14, 21
please /pli:z/ 26, 27, 59, 63, 66, 69
please do not disturb /pli:z du: nɒt dɪ'stɜ:b/ 33
plural noun /plʊərəl 'naʊn/ 6
points /pɔɪnts/ 49
Poland /'pəʊlənd/ 4
police officer /pə'li:s ɒfɪsə(r)/ 44
Polish /'pəʊlɪʃ/ 4
polite /pə'laɪt/ 67
politician /pɒlə'tɪʃn/ 43
politics /'pɒlətɪks/ 43
polluted /pə'lu:tɪd/ 35
poor /pʊə(r)/ 70
popular /'pɒpjələ(r)/ 34, 50
population /pɒpjə'leɪʃn/ 35
pork /pɔ:k/ 24
Portugal /'pɔ:tʃʊgl/ 4
Portuguese /pɔ:tʃʊ'gi:z/ 4
possible /'pɒsəbl/ 70
possibly /'pɒsəbli/ 63
post *v* /pəʊst/ 59
post office /'pəʊst ɒfɪs/ 59
postbox /'pəʊstbɒks/ 59
postcard /'pəʊstkɑ:d/ 59
postcode /'pəʊstkəʊd/ 8, 59
postman /'pəʊstmən/ 59
postwoman /'pəʊstwʊmən/ 59
potato /pə'teɪtəʊ/ 25
prawns /prɔ:nz/ 24
prefer /prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ 37, 48, 65, 68
preposition /prepə'zɪʃn/ 6
price /praɪs/ 20, 55
primary school /'praɪmərɪ sku:l/ 42
print /prɪnt/ 46
print something out /prɪnt sʌmθɪŋ 'aʊt/ 46
printer /'prɪntə(r)/ 46
printout /'prɪntaʊt/ 46
private school /'praɪvət sku:l/ 42
problem *as in* no problem /'prɒbləm/ 63
programme /'prəʊgræm/ 53
pronoun /'prəʊnaʊn/ 6
pronounce /prə'naʊns/ 7
psychologist /saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst/ 43
psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/ 43
public transport /pʌblɪk 'trænspɔ:t/ 36
puck /pʌk/ 49
pull /pʊl/ 11
pupil /'pju:pl/ 42
purple /'pɜ:pl/ 18
push /pʊʃ/ 11
put (= place) /pʊt/ 59
put in /pʊt 'ɪn/ 20
put something away /pʊt sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ/ 39
put something down /pʊt sʌmθɪŋ 'daʊn/ 11
put something on /pʊt sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒn/ 40, 73

quarter (past/to) /'kwɔ:tə (pɑ:st/tu:)/ 2
queue /kju:/ 37
queue here /kju: 'hɪə(r)/ 29
quick /kwɪk/ 47
quiet (= about a person) /'kwaɪət/ 14
quiet (= not busy) /'kwaɪət/ 32, 35
quiet (= not noisy) /'kwaɪət/ 70
quite /kwaɪt/ 48, 71

racket /'rækɪt/ 49
radiator /'reɪdieɪtə(r)/ 41
radio /'reɪdiəʊ/ 53
railway station /'reɪlweɪ steɪʃn/ 31
rain *n, v* /reɪn/ 21
raincoat /'reɪnkəʊt/ 18
rare /reə(r)/ 28
rarely /'reəli/ 17
raw /rɔ:/ 25
razor /'reɪzə(r)/ 40
RE (religious education) /ɑ:r 'i: (rɪlɪdʒəs edʒu'keɪʃn)/ 42
read /ri:d/ 50
ready /'redi/ 28
really /'ri:əli/ 14, 48, 67, 71
receipt /rɪ'si:t/ 20
receive /rɪ'si:v/ 47
reclaim *as in* baggage reclaim /'ri:kleɪm/ 56


www.hellooteacher.ir

recommend /rekə'mend/ 55, 62
red /red/ 18,
refuse /rɪ'fju:z/ 66
regular /'regjələ(r)/ 6
relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 15
relative /'relətɪv/ 10
relax /rɪ'læks/ 57
relaxed /rɪ'lækst/ 14
remember /rɪ'membə(r)/ 7, 67
rent /rent/ 57
repair /rɪ'peə(r)/ 50
reply /rɪ'plaɪ/ 47
report *n* /rɪ'pɔ:t/ 45
report *v* /rɪ'pɔ:t/ 53
reporter /rɪ'pɔ:tə(r)/ 43, 53
research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'rɪ:sɜ:tʃ/ 43
reserve /rɪ'zɜ:v/ 30
resort /rɪ'zɔ:t/ 57
rest *as in* have a rest /rest/ 79
results /rɪ'zʌlts/ 42
retired /rɪ'taɪəd/ 44
return /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 30
review /rɪ'vju:/ 52
rice /raɪs/ 26
rich /rɪtʃ/ 70
ride /raɪd/ 11, 36
right (= correct) /raɪt/ 7
right (= not left) /raɪt/ 31
right (= OK) /raɪt/ 55
ring *v* (of a bell) /rɪŋ/ 29
ring *v* (= phone) /rɪŋ/ 69
ring someone back /rɪŋ sʌmwʌn 'bæk/ 69
rink /rɪŋk/ 49
ripe /raɪp/ 26
river /'rɪvə(r)/ 34
road *as in* main road /rəʊd/ 32
road sign /'rəʊd saɪn/ 32
roast /rəʊst/ 28
roll /rəʊl/ 27
romantic /rəʊ'mæntɪk/ 52
room service /'ru:m sɜ:vɪs/ 55
roundabout /'raʊndəbaʊt/ 32
route /ru:t/ 29
rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 5
rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 38
rubbish bin /'rʌbɪʃ bɪn/ 39
rude /ru:d/ 67
rug /rʌg/ 41
rugby /'rʌgbi/ 49
ruler /'ru:lə(r)/ 5
run *n* /rʌn/ 79
run *v* /rʌn/ 11, 29
rush hour /'rʌʃ aʊə(r)/ 32
Russia /'rʌʃə/ 4
Russian /'rʌʃn/ 4

sad /sæd/ 16
safe /seɪf/ 35
salad *as in* mixed salad /'sæləd/ 28
salary /'sælərɪ/ 45
sale /seɪl/ 33
salmon /'sæmən/ 24
salt /sɔ:lt, sɒlt/ 28
same /seɪm/ Starter
same *as in* the same to you /seɪm/ 61
sandals /'sændlz/ 18
sandwich /'sænwɪtʃ, 'sænwɪdʒ/ 27
satellite TV /'sætəlaɪt ti: 'vi:/ 55
sauce /sɔ:s/ 28
saucepan /'sɔ:spæn/ 39
saucer /'sɔ:sə(r)/ 39
Saudi /'saʊdi/ 4
Saudi Arabia /saʊdi ə'reɪbiə/ 4
sausages /'sɒsədʒɪz/ 24
save (= not waste) /seɪv/ 20
save (= store) /seɪv/ 46
say /seɪ/ 7
scales /skeɪlz/ 56, 59
scared /skeəd/ 16
scarf /skɑ:f/ 18
school /sku:l/ 42
score *n, v* /skɔ:(r)/ 49
Scotland /'skɒtlənd/ 4
screen /skri:n/ 46
sea /si:/ 57
seafood /'si:fu:d/ 24
search engine /'sɜ:tʃ endʒɪn/ 47
season /'si:zn/ 3
seat /si:t/ 27, 30
seat belt /'si:t belt/ 56
secondary school /'sekəndri sku:l/ 42
secretary /'sekrət(ə)ri/ 44
see (= meet or visit) /si:/ 15, 60
see (= watch) /si:/ 17, 52, 53
See you later /si: ju: 'leɪtə(r)/ 60, 75
self-employed /self ɪm'plɔɪd/ 44
sell /sel/ 20
send /send/ 45, 47, 59, 69
serious /'sɪərɪəs/ 14
service *as in* room service /'sɜ:vɪs/ 55
set /set/ 49
shake hands /ʃeɪk 'hændz/ 60
shall I? (= offer) /'ʃæl aɪ, ʃəl 'aɪ/ 66
shall we? (= suggestion) /'ʃæl wi:, ʃəl 'wi:/ 65
shame /ʃeɪm/ 55
shampoo /ʃæm'pu:/ 40
share /ʃeə(r)/ 14
sharpener *as in* pencil sharpener /'ʃɑ:pnə(r)/ 5
shave /ʃeɪv/ 40
sheep /ʃi:p/ 24
sheet /ʃi:t/ 40
shelf /ʃelf/ 39


www.hellooteacher.ir

shirt /ʃɜːt/ 18
shoe /ʃuː/ 18
shooting /'ʃuːtɪŋ/ 50
shop /ʃɒp/ 37
shop assistant /'ʃɒp əsɪstənt/ 19, 44
shopping *as in* do the shopping /'ʃɒpɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39
shopping centre /'ʃɒpɪŋ sentə(r)/ 37
short /ʃɔːt/ 13, 19
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 57
should /ʃʊd/ 22, 58
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ 12
shower *n* (in the bathroom) /'ʃaʊə(r)/ 17, 40, 55
shower *n* (= rain) /'ʃaʊə(r)/ 21
shut /ʃʌt/ 11, 62
shy /ʃaɪ/ 14
sick /sɪk/ 22
sightseeing /'saɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
sign *v* /saɪn/ 59
sign *as in* road sign /saɪn/ 32
signature /'sɪgnətʃə(r)/ 9
since /sɪns/ 75
sing /sɪŋ/ 50
singer /'sɪŋə(r)/ 50, 51
single *n* (= song) /'sɪŋgl/ 51
single *n* (= ticket) /'sɪŋgl/ 30
single *adj* (= for one) /'sɪŋgl/ 40, 55
single *adj* (= not married) /'sɪŋgl/ 8
singles chart /'sɪŋglz tʃɑːt/ 51
singular noun /sɪŋgjələ 'naʊn/ 6
sink /sɪŋk/ 39
sister /'sɪstə(r)/ 10
sister-in-law /'sɪstər ɪn lɔː/ 10
sit down /sɪt 'daʊn/ 11, 73
size /saɪz/ 19, 35
skiing /'skiːɪŋ/ 50
skirt /skɜːt/ 18
sky /skaɪ/ 36
sleep /sliːp/ 17, 61
slim /slɪm/ 13
slow /sləʊ/ 30, 47
small /smɔːl/ 19
smart /smɑːt/ 19
smoking *as in* no smoking /'smәʊkɪŋ/ 33
snow *n, v* /snəʊ/ 21
so /səʊ/ 77
so *as in* an hour or so /səʊ/ 57
soap /səʊp/ 40
soap (= soap opera) /səʊp/ 53
sociable /'səʊʃəbl/ 14
sock /sɒk/ 18
sofa /'səʊfə/ 41
software engineer /'sɒftweər endʒɪnɪə(r)/ 43
soldier /'səʊldʒə(r)/ 44
some /sʌm, səm/ 53
some more /səm 'mɔː(r)/ 28
something /'sʌmθɪŋ/ 23
sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/ 17
son /sʌn/ 10
song /sɒŋ/ 50
soon /suːn/ 60, 75
sore /sɔː(r)/ 22
sorry /'sɒri/ 63, 64, 67
sounds /saʊndz/ 64
soup /suːp/ 28
south /saʊθ/ 34, 35
South Korea /saʊθ kə'riːə/ 4
south-east /saʊθ 'iːst/ 35
south-west /saʊθ 'west/ 35
soy sauce /sɔɪ 'sɔːs/ 28
Spain /speɪn/ 4
Spanish /'spænɪʃ/ 4
sparkling /'spɑːklɪŋ/ 28
speak /spiːk/ 69
speaker /'spiːkə(r)/ 46
speaking /'spiːkɪŋ/ 69
speed camera /'spiːd kæm(ə)rə/ 32
speed limit /'spiːd lɪmɪt/ 32
spell /spel/ 7
spend (money) /spend (mʌni)/ 20
spend (time) /spend (taɪm)/ 10, 45, 50
split up /splɪt 'ʌp/ 15
spoon /spuːn/ 28
sporty /'spɔːti/ 14
spring /sprɪŋ/ 3
square /skweə(r)/ 35
squid /skwɪd/ 24
staff /stɑːf/ 55
stairs /steəz/ 38
stalls /stɔːlz/ 37
stamp /stæmp/ 59
stand up /stænd 'ʌp/ 11, 73
star /stɑː(r)/ 52
start /stɑːt/ 42
starter /'stɑːtə(r)/ 28
state school /'steɪt skuːl/ 42
station *as in* petrol station /'steɪʃn/ 32
station *as in* railway station /'steɪʃn/ 31
statue /'stætʃuː/ 35
status *as in* marital status /'steɪtəs/ 9
stay (= live for a short period) *v, n* /steɪ/ 55
stay at school /steɪ ət 'skuːl/ 42
stay in bed /steɪ ɪn 'bed/ 22
steak /steɪk/ 28
steps /steps/ 38
stick /stɪk/ 49
stick *as in* memory stick /stɪk/ 46
still *adj* /stɪl/ 28
still *adv* /stɪl/ 71
stomach /'stʌmək/ 12
stomach-ache /'stʌmək eɪk/ 22
stop *as in* bus stop, last stop /stɒp/ 29


www.hellooteacher.ir

store *as in* department store /stɔ:(r)/ 37
storm /stɔ:m/ 21
story *as in* love story /'stɔ:ri/ 52
straight *adj* /streɪt/ 13
straight *as in* straight on /streɪt/ 31
strange /streɪndʒ/ 70
strawberry /'strɔ:b(ə)ri/ 25
strong /strɒŋ/ 70
study /'stʌdi/ 38
studies *as in* business studies /'stʌdiz/ 43
stupid /'stju:pɪd/ 14
subject /'sʌbdʒɪkt/ 42
sugar /'ʃʊgə(r)/ 26
suggestion /sə'dʒestʃn/ 65
suit /su:t/ 18
suitcase /'su:(t)keɪs/ 54, 56
summer /'sʌmə(r)/ 3
sun /sʌn/ 21
sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ 57
sunglasses /'sʌnglɑ:sɪz/ 18
sunny /'sʌni/ 21
sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ 21
supermarket /'su:pəmɑ:kɪt/ 37
sure *adj* /ʃʊə(r)/ 7, 65, 68
sure *adv* /ʃʊə(r)/ 28, 63
surname /'sɜ:neɪm/ 9
surprised /sə'praɪzd/ 16
sweater /'swetə(r)/ 18
sweet /swi:t/ 25
swim *n* /swɪm/ 79
Swiss /swɪs/ 4
Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/ 4

TV /ti: 'vi:/ 41, 53
table (= furniture) /'teɪbl/ 5
table (= list of facts/words) /'teɪbl/ Starter, 49
table tennis /'teɪbl tenɪs/ 50
tablet /'tæblət/ 23
take (= buy) /teɪk/ 19
take (= carry) /teɪk/ 63
take (= have a certain size) /teɪk/ 19
take (= use a form of transport) /teɪk/ 30, 32, 57
take (a tablet/medicine) /teɪk/ 23
take an exam /teɪk ən ɪg'zæm/ 42
take away /teɪk ə'weɪ/ 27
take off (= leave the ground)
/teɪk 'ɒf, 'teɪk ɒf / 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teɪk 'ɒf/ 40, 73
take out, take something out
/teɪk 'aʊt, teɪk sʌmθɪŋ 'aʊt/ 39
take photos /teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz/ 58
take the first turning /teɪk ðə fɜ:st 'tɜ:nɪŋ/ 31
tall /tɔ:l/ 13
tap /tæp/ 39
tart /tɑ:t/ 28
taste /teɪst/ 25
taxi driver /'tæksi draɪvə(r)/ 44
tea /ti:/ 27
teacher /'ti:tʃə(r)/ 44
team /ti:m/ 49
technology *as in* design and technology
/tek'nɒlədʒi/ 42
technology *as in* IT, ICT /tek'nɒlədʒi/ 42
teenager /'ti:neɪdʒə(r)/ 13
teens /ti:nz/ 13
teeth /ti:θ/ 17, 40
television /'telɪvɪʒn, telɪ'vɪʒn / 41
temperature /'temprətʃə(r)/ 22
temple /'templ/ 35
tennis /'tenɪs/ 17, 49
tennis *as in* table tennis /'tenɪs/ 50
term /tɜ:m/ 43
terminal /'tɜ:mɪnl/ 56
terrible /'terəbl/ 36, 42, 79
text *v, n* /tekst/ 69
Thai /taɪ/ 4
Thailand /'taɪlænd/ 4
thank you /'θæŋk ju:/ 66
thanks /θæŋks/ 26, 31, 60, 61, 66
that's all /ðæts 'ɔ:l/ 26
the news /ðə 'nju:z/ 53
the same to you /ðə seɪm tə 'ju:/ 61
then /ðen/ 78
then *as in* See you then /ðen/ 60
thin /θɪn/ 13
think /θɪŋk/ 48, 68
third /θɜ:d/ 3
thirsty /'θɜ:sti/ 16
this evening, this weekend, etc.
/ðɪs 'i:vnɪŋ, ðɪs wi:k'end/ 75
this is (used when introducing someone)
/'ðɪs ɪz/ 60
this is (used on the phone) /'ðɪs ɪz/ 69
thousand /'θaʊzənd/ 1
thriller /'θrɪlə(r)/ 52
throat /θrəʊt/ 22
through /θru:/ 76
thumb /θʌm/ 12
thunder /'θʌndə(r)/ 21
tick /tɪk/ Starter, 9
ticket /'tɪkɪt/ 30, 56
ticket office /'tɪkɪt ɒfɪs/ 30
tidy /'taɪdi/ 14
tie /taɪ/ 18
tight /taɪt/ 19
tights /taɪts/ 18
time /taɪm/ 2, 61
time *as in* half-time /taɪm/ 49
time *as in* have a nice time /taɪm/ 79
time *as in* in (ten days') time /taɪm/ 75
timetable /'taɪmteɪbl/ 29, 30
tin /tɪn/ 25, 26


www.hellooteacher.ir

tired /'taɪəd/ 16
tissue /'tɪʃu:/ 23, 40
toasted sandwich
/təʊstɪd 'sænwɪtʃ, 'sænwɪdʒ/ 27
toe /təʊ/ 12
together /tə'geðə(r)/ 10, 15
toilet /'tɔɪlət/ 33, 40
tomato /tə'mɑ:təʊ/ 25
tomorrow /tə'mɒrəʊ/ 75
tongue *as in* mother tongue /tʌŋ/ 9
too (= also) /tu:/ 61, 77
too (= more than is good) /tu:/ 19
tooth /tu:θ/ 12
toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ 22
toothbrush /'tu:θbrʌʃ/ 40
toothpaste /'tu:θpeɪst/ 40
top (= clothes) /tɒp/ 18
top (= highest part) /tɒp/ 38, 49
touch /tʌtʃ/ 11
tour /tʊə(r)/ 58
tourist /'tʊərɪst/ 55
towel /'taʊəl/ 40
town /taʊn/ 35
town centre /taʊn 'sentə(r)/ 38
traffic /'træfɪk/ 32
traffic jam /'træfɪk dʒæm/ 32
traffic light /'træfɪk laɪt/ 32
train /treɪn/ 30
train driver /'treɪn draɪvə(r)/ 44
trainers /'treɪnəz/ 18
transport *as in* public transport /'trænspɔ:t/ 36
travel insurance /'trævl ɪnʃʊərəns/ 54
traveller's cheque /trævələz 'tʃek/ 59
travelling /'trævəlɪŋ/ 50
tree /tri:/ 36
tree *as in* family tree /tri:/ 10
trolley /'trɒli/ 37, 56
trousers /'traʊzəz/ 18
true /tru:/ Starter
try /traɪ/ 23
try on /'traɪ ɒn/ 19, 73
T-shirt /'ti: ʃɜ:t/ 18
tuna /'tju:nə/ 24
Turkey /'tɜ:ki/ 4
Turkish /'tɜ:kɪʃ/ 4
turn something off /tɜ:n sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒf/ 39
turn something on /tɜ:n sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒn/ 11, 39, 73
turning /'tɜ:nɪŋ/ 31
twice /twaɪs/ 17
twin room /'twɪn ru:m/ 55
type /taɪp/ 45
typical /'tɪpɪkl/ 58

UK (United Kingdom) /ju: 'keɪ/ 4
USA (United States of America) /ju: es 'eɪ/ 4
ugly /'ʌgli/ 13
umbrella /ʌm'brelə/ 18
unable /ʌn'eɪbl/ 51
uncle /'ʌŋkl/ 10
uncomfortable /ʌn'kʌmf(ə)təbl/ 19
under (= less than) /'ʌndə(r)/ 26, 35
under (= position) /'ʌndə(r)/ 76
undergraduate /ʌndə'grædʒuət/ 43
underline /ʌndə'laɪn/ Starter
unemployed /ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 44
unfortunately /ʌn'fɔ:tʃənətli/ 43
unfriendly /ʌn'frendli/ 14
unhappy /ʌn'hæpi/ 16
uniform /'ju:nɪfɔ:m/ 42
United Kingdom (UK) /junaɪtɪd 'kɪŋdəm/ 4
United States of America (USA) /junaɪtɪd steɪts ə
v ə'merɪkə/ 4
university /ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/ 42
unnecessary /ʌn'nesəsəri/ 70
untidy /ʌn'taɪdi/ 14
until /ʌn'tɪl/ 42, 75
unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/ 70
up /ʌp/ 76
upset /ʌp'set/ 16
upstairs /ʌp'steəz/ 38
use /ju:z/ 40, 47
useful /'ju:sfl/ 70
useless /'ju:sləs/ 70
usually /'ju:ʒuəli/ 17
utility room /ju:'tɪləti ru:m/ 38

vacancies *as in* no vacancies /'veɪkənsɪz/ 33
valley /'væli/ 36
various /'veərɪəs/ 50
verb /vɜ:b/ 6
very /'veri/ 19, 48, 60, 66
vet /vet/ 44
views /vju:z/ 38
village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ 35
vinegar /'vɪnɪgə(r)/ 28
violent /'vaɪələnt/ 52
violin /vaɪə'lɪn/ 51
violinist /vaɪə'lɪnɪst/ 51
visa /'vi:zə/ 54
visit /'vɪzɪt/ 47, 58
volleyball /'vɒlibɔ:l/ 49

wages /'weɪdʒɪz/ 45
waist /weɪst/ 12
wait /weɪt/ 30
wake up /weɪk 'ʌp/ 73
Wales /weɪlz/ 4
walk *n* /wɔ:k/ 17, 57, 79
walk *v* /wɔ:k/ 6, 11
wall /wɔ:l/ 41
want /wɒnt/ 64, 66
war /wɔ:(r)/ 53



www.hellooteacher.ir

war film /'wɔ: fɪlm/ 52
wardrobe /'wɔ:drəʊb/ 40
wash *n* /wɒʃ/ 40, 79
wash *v* /wɒʃ/ 40
washbasin /'wɒʃbeɪsn/ 40
washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ məʃi:n/ 39
washing-up /wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ 39
waste /weɪst/ 68
watch *n* /wɒtʃ/ 18
watch *v* /wɒtʃ/ 50, 53
water *as in* mineral water /'wɔ:tə(r)/ 28
wavy /'weɪvi/ 13
way /weɪ/ 31, 70
way in /weɪ 'ɪn/ 33
way out /weɪ 'aʊt/ 33
weak /wi:k/ 70
wear /weə(r)/ 18, 40
weather forecast /'weðə fɔ:kɑ:st/ 53
web address /'web ədres/ 47
webcam /'webkæm/ 46
website /'websaɪt/ 47
week /wi:k/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday /'wi:kdeɪ/ 17
weekend /wi:k'end/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weigh /weɪ/ 13
weight /weɪt/ 13
welcome /'welkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well *as in* as well /wel/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wel 'dʌn/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time) /wel 'dʌn/ 28
well known /wel 'nəʊn/ 51
west /west/ 34, 35
wet /wet/ 21
what (used in questions) /wɒt/ 21, 27
what about? /'wɒt əbaʊt/ 65
what's on? (= happening) /wɒts 'ɒn/ 52
what's the matter? /wɒts ðə 'mætə(r)/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wen/ 62
when (= the time something happened) /wen/ 78
where /weə(r)/ 62
where are you from? /weər ə ju: 'frɒm/ 4
whereabouts /'weərəbaʊts/ 8
which /wɪtʃ/ 62
while /waɪl/ 78
while *as in* for a while /waɪl/ 22
white /waɪt/ 18, 27, 28
who /hu:/ 62
whose /hu:z/ 62
why /waɪ/ 62
wide /waɪd/ 70
wife /waɪf/ 10
win (= be best or first) /wɪn/ 49
win (money) /wɪn/ 20
wind /wɪnd/ 21
window /'wɪndəʊ/ 41
window seat /'wɪndəʊ si:t/ 56
windy /'wɪndi/ 21
wine /waɪn/ 28
winter /'wɪntə(r)/ 3
wonderful /'wʌndəfl/ 36, 48
wood /wʊd/ 36
wool *as in* cotton wool /wʊl/ 23
word /wɜ:d/ 6
work *n* /wɜ:k/ 17
work *v* /wɜ:k/ 42, 45
worried /'wʌrid/ 16
worry *as in* don't worry /wʌ i/ 66
worst /wɜ:st/ 42
worth /wɜ:θ/ 62
wrist /rɪst/ 12
write /raɪt/ 43, 59
wrong (= causing problems) /rɒŋ/ 62
wrong (= not right) /rɒŋ/ Starter, 7, 19
wrong number /rɒŋ 'nʌmbə(r)/ 69

year /jɪə(r)/ 3, 45
yellow /'jeləʊ/ 18
yes, please /'jes pli:z, jes 'pli:z/ 27, 66
yesterday /'jestədeɪ/ 75
you too /ju: 'tu:/ 61
young /jʌŋ/ 13

zero /'zɪərəʊ/ 69


www.hellooteacher.ir

Basic

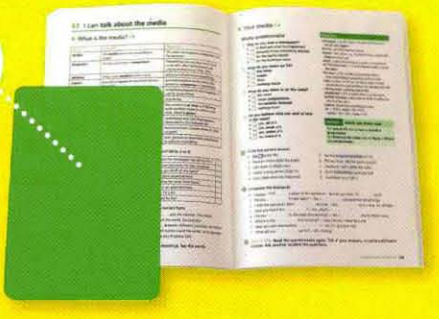
# Oxford **Word Skills**

## Learn and practise English vocabulary

**Basic**: for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

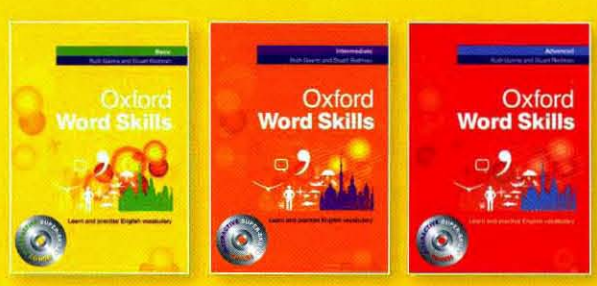
Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills




OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

CEF
B1
A2
A1

OXFORD ENGLISH
ISBN 978-0-19-462003-1
9 780194 620031

www.hellooteacher.ir